

GRAMMAIRE  
DES  
GRAMMAIRES



EX LIBRIS

*Ethel Canfield*

L. J. White

Can't Let In

Woodstock  
Out

Sept 24 1877





For the use of Colleges, Schools, and Private Students.

---

NEW  
GRAMMAR OF FRENCH GRAMMARS:

COMPRISING THE SUBSTANCE OF

ALL THE MOST APPROVED FRENCH GRAMMARS EXTANT,

BUT MORE ESPECIALLY OF THE STANDARD WORK,

“GRAMMAIRE DES GRAMMAIRES,”

SANCTIONED BY THE FRENCH ACADEMY AND THE UNIVERSITY OF PARIS.

WITH NUMEROUS EXERCISES AND EXAMPLES

ILLUSTRATIVE OF EVERY RULE.

BY

DR V. DE FIVAS, M.A., F.E.I.S.

MEMBER OF THE GRAMMATICAL SOCIETY OF PARIS, ETC.

THIRTY-EIGHTH EDITION.

TORONTO: COPP, CLARK, & CO.,  
18 AND 19 KING STREET, EAST.

LONDON: LOCKWOOD & CO.,  
7 STATIONERS' HALL COURT.

1874.

L. J. W. - c

## P R E F A C E.

---

“Grammar, as the master-key of the human mind, is the first object in the cultivation of the understanding.”—  
(*The Linguist.*)

“Presque partout, deux hommes d'esprit, de nation diverse, qui se rencontrent, s'accordent à parler français.”—  
(*Préf. du. Dict. de l'Acad. franç.*)

---

WE read, in a recent London publication, that there are about one hundred French Grammars for the use of English students. But, *How many of these exhibit the orthography and rules of the language as they are fixed at the present day?* It is the impossibility of satisfactorily answering this question, that first suggested to me the idea of producing a work which, without being a mere compilation, should embody the substance of the latest decisions of the French Academy, with the most lucid and concise rules of the best modern French Grammarians. The single fact of the French Academy having lately published a new edition of their Dictionary, entirely revised and greatly enlarged, shows in an obvious point of view the call that is made for a new and improved French Grammar.

My plan, in this publication, has been to give everything useful, and nothing superfluous.\* I have studied to make the

---

\* Some Grammarians devote fifty pages to the declensions of nouns and pronouns, while the French language has no declension.† Many encroach on the province of the Teacher, and encumber their pages by giving a repetition of all the conjugations interrogatively and negatively, when one, as a model, is quite sufficient. Others, give elaborate treatises on pronunciation, which can never be properly learned from books, and are quite unnecessary, since a good French Teacher can now be found in every town and village of the United Kingdom, from whom more knowledge of pronunciation will be obtained in one lesson than in one year from all the books ever published on this subject.

† La Langue française n'a point, et ne peut avoir, de déclinaisons; on doit purger nos Grammaires de tout ce fatras, de toutes ces superfluités qui sont plus propres à nuire qu'à servir à l'intelligence de la Langue.

DEMANDRE, *Dict. de l'Elocution française.*

definitions at once clear and precise, that they may be readily understood and easily retained. When I judged it necessary, I have also presented the rules in a new light, in order to adapt them to the capacity of youthful students. I have further endeavoured to arrange and distribute the matter, so as to embrace, within a narrow compass, much more information than is usually found in grammatical class-books. Indeed, there is not a useful Rule or Observation in the largest grammar in print that is not to be found in this.

The *Exercises* illustrate everything that can be reduced to rules in the French language. This branch of the work has, for several years, engaged my special attention. The phraseology is all founded on the highest French classical authorities; and it has been my study throughout to introduce a moral precept, an historical or a geographical fact, or a conversational phrase; and thus to impart useful information along with grammatical rules.

The present Edition of this Grammar has been carefully revised, and a considerable number of words and remarks introduced that are not to be found in any other Grammar. I have also had the advantage of being able to avail myself of the criticisms that the learned Authors of the "*Grammaire Nationale*" have made on the "*Grammaire des Grammaires*," and of the answers to those criticisms by M. Lemaire, Professor of Rhetoric at the College Louis-le-Grand, in Paris. "Tout homme qui veut bien écrire," says VOLTAIRE, "doit corriger ses ouvrages toute sa vie."

LONDON, July 1860.

---

*The following are a few of the numerous Literary Notices of this Work:—*

"At once the simplest and most complete Grammar of the French Language. To the Pupil, the effect is almost as if he looked into a map, so well-defined is the course of study as explained by M. de Fivas."—(*Literary Gazette.*)

"This Grammar is the most systematic and distinct that we have seen:—the work is simple in its arrangement; clear and precise in its definitions; and the Exercises under each head, most appropriate and useful."—(*Chronicle.*)

"Its precision and conciseness are admirable. We cordially recommend it to Teachers and Students. Its excellence cannot fail to secure it an established reputation."—(*Standard.*)

"This Grammar is the cheapest, most concise, philosophical, and satisfactory which has come under our notice."—(*Edinburgh Journal.*)

"The distinguishing features of this work are, its embodiment of the latest changes and modifications of the French Language. In the writing and arrangement of the work, M. de Fivas has displayed great skill."—(*Scotsman.*)

"This is an excellent book—lucid and comprehensive. It contains the latest improvements made by the French Academicians."—(*Gateshead Observer.*)

"In this work everything is plain and clear to the most obtuse understanding; the Exercises are excellent, being individually easily understood, and consecutively so arranged as to carry the pupil step by step to a thorough acquaintance with the language.—One of the best recommendations of this well-written Grammar is, that it is framed on the orthography and practice of the language at the present day, which we do not believe to be the case with 5 out of the 100 at present in use."—(*Tyne Mercury.*)

"This is, beyond comparison, the best French Grammar we have ever met with. It contains everything necessary to a thorough knowledge of the language."—(*Dublin Monitor.*)

*From Professor MARCEL.*—"J'ai parcouru votre dernier ouvrage 'Grammaire des Grammaires,' et, frappé de sa clarté et de sa concision, je lui ai reconnu sous ce rapport une grande supériorité sur les autres grammaires, aussi me suis-je empressé de la recommander à tous ceux qui désirent se pénétrer des vrais principes de notre langue."

*From Professor VOGUE.*—"J'ai lu avec un vif intérêt votre Grammaire française. Je me suis convaincu de son mérite et de son utilité. Je ne manquerai pas de la recommander comme claire, exacte, et complète."

*From Professor DUMAS.*—"Votre ouvrage bien que peu volumineux est clair et complet. Je ne recommanderai certainement jamais d'autre grammaire."

*From Professor DUVAL.*—"J'approuve beaucoup votre ouvrage et je me propose d'en faire usage: il est déjà entre les mains de plusieurs de mes élèves."

*From Professor MESSIEUX.*—"Je me décide à donner la préférence à votre grammaire, ayant le mérite d'être mieux arrangée, plus claire, et plus correcte que celle dont je me sers."

*From Professor DE CANDOLE.*—"J'ai cherché du mal dans votre ouvrage, mais je n'en ai pas trouvé; je me suis fait critique, j'y ai perdu ma peine, car tout était juste, vrai. Vous avez retranché bien des inutilités dans le commencement, et dans la syntaxe que j'ai parcourue avec soin vous avez franchement abordé les difficultés et fait admirablement sentir les délicatesses de notre langue."

# EXPLANATION OF THE ABBREVIATIONS AND MARKS USED IN THE EXERCISES.

m. <i>stands for</i> masculine.	ind-2 <i>stands for</i> imperfect.
f. . . . . feminine.	ind-3 . . . . . preterite definite.
sing. or s. . . singular.	ind-4 . . . . . preterite indefinite.
pl. . . . . plural.	ind-5 . . . . . preterite anterior.
h m. . . . . h mute.	ind-6 . . . . . pluperfect.
h asp. . . . . h aspirate.	ind-7 . . . . . future absolute.
art. . . . . article.	ind-8 . . . . . future anterior.
pr. or prep. preposition.	cond-1 . . . . . conditional present.
pron. . . . . pronoun.	cond-2 . . . . . conditional past.
inf-1. . . . . present of the infinitive.	imp. . . . . imperative.
inf-2. . . . . infinitive past. [tive.	subj-1. . . . . present of the subjunctive.
inf-3. . . . . participle present.	subj-2. . . . . imperfect.
inf-4. . . . . participle past.	subj-3. . . . . preterite.
ind-1 . . . . . present of the indicative.	subj-4. . . . . pluperfect.

ACAD. for *Académie française* (French Academy), a learned Society, a literary Parliament, the highest authority on the French language.

The small figures 1, 2, 3, point out the order of the French construction when it differs from the English.—The larger figures 32, 47, etc. refer to the rule with that number, and which the student will do well to consult in cases of doubt.

\* The asterisk, or little star, denotes that the English word under which it is placed, is to be omitted in French.

— The line placed under an English word indicates that it is the same in French.

( ) When several English words are included within a parenthesis, they must be translated by the French word or words placed under them.

The English words printed in *italics*, are those to which the rules prefixed must be applied.

The substantives are generally given in the singular, the adjectives in the masculine singular, and the verbs in the present of the infinitive, the student being expected to put them in their proper gender, number, tense, and person.

N.B.—The student should make himself well acquainted with the use of the *Apostrophe*, page 9—with the *Contraction* of the article, p. 14—and, with the *General rule* for the place of personal pronouns, p. 237. The knowledge of these points will greatly facilitate his studies.

# GRAMMAR

OF

## FRENCH GRAMMARS.

---

Bien parler annonce la bonne éducation ;  
 Bien écrire annonce de l'esprit.

---

### INTRODUCTION.

1. GRAMMAR is the art which teaches to speak and write a language correctly.

To speak and to write, we make use of *words*.

Words are composed of one or more *syllables* ; and syllables are composed of one or more *letters*.

2. The French Alphabet contains 25 letters, viz. :

A B C D E F G H I J K L M

*Names*:—ah bay say day a eff \*jay ash e \*jee kah ell emm

N O P Q R S T U V X Y Z.

enn o pay ku† err ess tay ut vay eeks eegrec zaid.

[*Appellation usuelle*:— A B C D E F G H I J K L M  
 a bé cé dé é effe gé ache i ji ka elle emme

N O P Q R S T U V X Y Z.

enne o pé ku erre esse té u vé iks igrec zède.]

—Académie française.]

3. Letters are divided into *vowels* and *consonants*. The vowels are A, E, I, O, U, and Y, which sometimes has the sound of one *i*, and sometimes of two. All the other letters are consonants.

The French make use of the W only in words borrowed from other languages ; as, *Washington*, *whist*.

---

\*j has here the sound of s in *pleasure*.

† The sound of u must be learned from the Teacher ; unless you know how to pronounce u in the Scotch words *gude* (good), or *schule* (school).

## OF ACCENTS AND OTHER MARKS.

4. THE orthographical signs used in the French language are,—the *accents*, the *apostrophe*, the *hyphen*, the *diæresis*, the *cedilla*, the *parenthesis*, and the different marks of *punctuation*.

## OF THE ACCENTS.

5. *Accents* are small marks placed upon vowels, either to point out their true pronunciation, or to distinguish the meaning of one word from that of another which is spelt alike, but has a different meaning.—Ex. *pêche*, peach; *péché*, sin; *pêcher*, to fish; *pécher*, to sin.

6. There are three accents in French,—the *acute*, the *grave*, and the *circumflex*.

7. The *acute* accent (') is never used but over the vowel *e*, as in *vérité*, truth; *été*, summer; *café*, coffee.

8. The *grave* accent (`) is used over the vowels *a*, *e*, *u*, as in *voilà*, there is; *père*, father; *règle*, rule; *où*, where. It is placed—

Over the preposition *à*, to, in order to distinguish it from the third person singular of the verb *avoir*, *il a*, he has;

Over the adverb *là*, there, to distinguish it from the article *la*, the, or the pronoun *la*, her, it;

Over the adverb or pronoun *où*, (where, in which, to which), to distinguish it from the conjunction *ou*, or;

Over the preposition *dès*, from, since, to distinguish it from the compound article *des*, of the, some.

9. The *circumflex* accent (^) is used with any of the vowels, the sound of which it always lengthens; as in *âge*, age; *tête*, head; *épître*, epistle; *dôme*, cupola; *flûte*, flute; *apôtre*, apostle. It is placed—

Over the adjective *sûr*, sure, to distinguish it from the preposition *sur*, upon;

Over the adjective *mûr*, ripe, to distinguish it from the substantive *mur*, wall;



Over *dû*, participle past of *devoir*, to owe, to distinguish it from the compound article *du*, of the, some; but the accent is only used in the singular masculine of the participle, as there can be no mistake in the feminine singular, nor in the plural of either gender;

Over *tû*, participle past of *taire*, to be silent, to distinguish it from the pronoun *tu*, thou;

Over *crû*, past participle of *croître*, to grow, to distinguish it from *cru*, past participle of *croire*, to believe.

### OF THE APOSTROPHE.

10. The *Apostrophe* is a small mark in the form of a comma ('), which is placed over the line between two letters, to point out the elision or suppression of a vowel at the end of a word before another word beginning with a vowel, or *h* mute, as in *l'âme*, the soul; *l'homme*, the man; *s'il*, if he; instead of *la âme*, *le homme*, *si il*.

A, E, I, are the only vowels liable to be thus cut off.

11. The A is suppressed only in *la*, article or pronoun.

12. The elision of the E occurs, not only in the masculine article and pronoun *le*, but also in the monosyllables *je*, *me*, *te*, *se*, *ce*, *de*, *ne*, *que*; and, moreover—

(1.) In *jusque*, before *à*, *au*, *aux*, *ici*; as, *jusqu'à Rome*.

(2.) In *lorsque*, *puisque*, and *quoique*, before *il*, *ils*, *elle*, *elles*, *on*, *un*, *une*, or a word with which these conjunctions are immediately connected; as—*Lorsqu'ils viendront*.—*Puisqu'ainsi est*.—*Puisqu'il le veut*.—*Quoiqu'elle soit*.

(3.) In *quelque*, before *un*, *une*; as, *quelqu'un*, *quelqu'une*; and also in *quel qu'il soit*, *quelle qu'elle soit*. But we write *quelque autre*; *quelque historien*.

(4.) In *presque*, in the compound word *presqu'île*, peninsula; and likewise in *grande*, in the words *grand'mère* and *grand'tante*.

We also say and write:—*La grand'messe*.—*Avoir grand'faim*.—*Faire grand'chère*.—*C'est grand'pitié*.—*Il eut grand'peur*.—*Ce n'est pas grand'chose*.

13. The I is cut off only in the conjunction *si* (if) before the pronoun *il* and its plural *ils*, but never before *elle* or *elles*, nor any other word whatever.

14. But no elision of the *a* or *e* takes place in *le, la, de, ce, que*, before *oui, huit, huitaine, huitième, onze*, and *onzième*; neither in the pronouns *le* or *la*, after a verb in the imperative mood, nor in the adverb *là*: so we say, *le oui et le non; le huit ou le onze du mois; menez-le à Paris; ira-t-il là avec vous?*

15. The final *e* of the preposition *entre* is retained before the pronouns *eux, elles*, and before *autres*; and is only retrenched when *entre* forms a compound word with another word beginning with a vowel; as—*entr'acte, entr'ouvrir, s'entr'accuser, s'entr'aider*.

### OF THE HYPHEN.

16. The *Hyphen* (in French, *tiret* or *trait d'union*) is a short horizontal line, thus —, which is used principally in connecting compound words, and between a verb and a pronoun, when a question is asked, as in *arc-en-ciel*, rainbow; *chef-d'œuvre*, master-piece; *parlez-vous?* do you speak? *avez-vous?* have you?

### OF THE DIÆRESIS.

17. The *Diæresis* (in French, *tréma* or *diérèse*) is a mark of two points, thus .., put over the vowels *e, i, u*, to intimate that they form a distinct syllable from the vowels that precede them, as in the words *ciguë*, hemlock; *Moïse*, Moses; *Saül*, Saul; which are pronounced *Ci-gu-e, Mo-ise, Sa-ul*.

### OF THE CEDILLA.

18. The *Cedilla* is a small mark placed under the letter *C*, to indicate that it is to be pronounced like *S*, before the vowels *a, o, u*, as in *Français*, French; *garçon*, boy; *maçon*, mason; *reçu*, received.

The signs of punctuation, and all other marks and characters, are the same in French as in English.

## OF NUMBER.

19. There are two numbers in French ; the *singular* and the *plural*. The singular denotes one person or thing ; the plural denotes more than one.

## OF CASES.

20. The French language has no *Cases*, properly so called, and consequently no declensions. The French express by prepositions, and especially by *de* (of or from), and *à* (to or at), the relations which the Greeks and the Romans indicated by the change of the different terminations of their nouns.

## OF GENDER.

21. The French language has only two genders, the *masculine* and the *feminine*. The gender of *animate* or *living* beings presents no difficulty, as all males are *masculine*, and all females are *feminine* ; but it is only by practice that one can learn the gender of *inanimate* objects, and of animals whose names are the same for the male and female, such as *éléphant*, elephant ; *buffle*, buffalo ; *cygne*, swan ; *perdrix*, partridge ; *baleine*, whale ; *truite*, trout ; *saumon*, salmon.

It is not possible to give general and precise rules by means of which one may, on every occasion, distinguish the gender of a noun from its mere aspect. Several Grammarians, however, have given treatises on the genders ; but those treatises are extremely incomplete ; some of their rules are vague, and above all liable to numberless exceptions. The truth is, the perfect knowledge of the gender of substantives can only be the work of time. It is by reading with attention, and by having recourse, in cases of doubt, to a dictionary, that one will insensibly acquire a complete knowledge of the genders. Nevertheless in cases of doubt, and in the absence of a

dictionary, it may be of some practical utility to know that about nine tenths of the nouns ending in *e* not accented are feminine; the final *e* mute being, in French, the distinctive mark of the feminine gender.

The French call the termination in *e* mute, a feminine termination; any other is called masculine. This distinction arises probably from the circumstance that most nouns of the feminine gender end with an *e* mute; thus, *la table, la rue, la plante, la tête, la fenêtre, la chambre, la plume, l'encre*.

22. Names of *states, empires, kingdoms, and provinces* are of the gender which their terminations indicate; thus: *Danèmarck, Piémont, Tyrol, Portugal*, etc., are masculine; but: *Angleterre, Irlande, Ecosse, France, Espagne, Italie, Suisse, Belgique, Hollande, Allemagne, Prusse*, etc. which end in *e* mute, are feminine. *Le Hanovre, le Bengale, le Mexique*, and perhaps a few more, are exceptions.

23. The preceding rule is applicable to towns; every name of a town ending with an *e* mute is generally feminine, any other termination is masculine; thus: *Rome, Mantoue, Toulouse, Marseille*, are feminine; but: *Paris, Lyon, Rouen, Toulon, Amsterdam*, are masculine. *Jérusalem* is feminine; *Londres* is masculine. So we say, *Londres est florissant; Marseille est florissante*.

But, when one is uncertain of the gender of a town, the best way to get out of the difficulty is to put the word *ville* before the name of the town, and say: *la ville de Bruxelles, la ville de Lisbonne*, etc.

24. To the student who understands Latin, it may not be unimportant to know, that of nouns derived from that language, those from feminine nouns are mostly feminine, and those from masculine or neuter nouns, masculine; as *foi* from *fides*, *loi* from *lex*, *fourmi* from *formica*, *génie* from *genius*, *collège* from *collegium*, *poème* from *poëma*, *incendie* from *incendium*, *fleuve* from *fluvius*, &c.

The gender of Nouns has been generally marked, in the Exercises throughout this work, in order to facilitate the acquirement of this part of French Grammar.

# PART I.

25. There are, in French, as in English, nine sorts of words, usually called PARTS OF SPEECH; namely,

1. ARTICLE.	4. PRONOUN.	7. PREPOSITION.
2. SUBSTANTIVE <i>or</i> NOUN.	5. VERB.	8. CONJUNCTION.
3. ADJECTIVE.	6. ADVERB.	9. INTERJECTION.

## CHAPTER I.

### OF THE ARTICLE.

26. The *Article* is a word placed before a noun, to point it out, and to show the extent of its meaning.

The French article is *le, la, les*, the.

As the French language has borrowed much from the Latin, there is every reason to think that we have formed our *le* and our *la* from the pronoun *ille, illa, illud*. From the last syllable of the masculine word *ille*, we have made *le*; and from the last syllable of the feminine *illa*, we have made *la*; it is thus also that from the first syllable of that word, we have made our pronoun *il* (he), which we use with verbs, as likewise from the feminine *illa* we have made *elle* (she).

We use *le* before substantives masculine in the singular; *la* before substantives feminine, also in the singular; and, as the letter *s*, in the French language, is the sign of the plural when it is added to the singular, we have formed *les* from the singular *le*. *Les* serves equally for both genders.

When *le* or *la* comes before a noun beginning with a vowel or *h* mute, the *e* or *a* is cut off, and an apostrophe is put instead of the letter omitted. (See page 9.)

27. From the foregoing remarks it follows that the learner is to translate the English article

<i>The, by</i>	{	<i>le</i> before a noun masculine singular. <i>la</i> before a noun feminine singular. <i>l'</i> before a noun, either masculine or feminine singular, beginning with a vowel or <i>h</i> mute. <i>les</i> before any noun in the plural.
----------------	---	--

<i>A or an is translated by:</i>	{	<i>un</i> before a noun masculine. <i>une</i> before a noun feminine.
----------------------------------	---	--

28. The English prepositions *to* and *at* are generally rendered in French by *à*; and *of* and *from* by *de*, or *d'* if the word begins with a vowel or an *h* mute.

### EXERCISE I.

*The father.* — *The mother.* — *The children.* — *The brother.* —  
*père m.*      *mère f.*      *enfants pl.*      *frère m.*

*The sister.* — *The uncle.* — *The aunt.* — *The relations.* — *A son.* —  
*sœur f.*      *oncle m.*      *tante f.*      *parents pl.*      *fils m.*

*A daughter.* — *The man.* —      *The women.* — *A boy.* —  
*filles f.*      *homme h.m.*      *femmes pl.*      *garçon m.*

*The day.* — *The night.* — *The sun.*      — *The moon.* — *The*  
*jour m.*      *nuit f.*      *soleil m.*      *lune f.*

*stars.* — *A history.* — *The school.* — *A book.* — *The page.*  
*étoiles pl.*      *histoire f.*      *école f.*      *livre m.*      *page f.*

### 29. CONTRACTION OF THE ARTICLE.

Whenever the prepositions *à* (*to* or *at*) or *de* (*of* or *from*) precede the article *le* before a noun masculine singular, beginning with a consonant or *h* aspirate, *à le* is contracted into *au*, and *de le* into *du*; and before plural nouns of either gender, *à les* is changed into *aux*, and *de les* into *des*.

*A* and *de* are not contracted with *le* before nouns which begin with a vowel or *h* mute, but then the article suffers elision.

Nor are *à* and *de* ever contracted with *la*.

The learner will therefore translate

<i>To the,</i> or <i>at the,</i> by	{	<i>au</i> { before a noun masculine singular, beginning with a consonant, or <i>h</i> aspirate. <i>à la</i> { before a noun feminine singular, beginning with a consonant, or <i>h</i> aspirate. <i>à l'</i> { before a noun masculine or feminine, in the singular, beginning with a vowel, or <i>h</i> mute. <i>aux</i> { before any noun in the plural.
--	---	--

Of the, or from the, by { *du* { before a noun masculine singular, beginning with a consonant, or *h* aspirate.  
                               { *dela* { before a noun feminine singular, beginning with a consonant, or *h* aspirate.  
                               { *de l'* { before a noun masculine or feminine, in the singular, beginning with a vowel, or *h* mute.  
                               { *des* { before any noun in the plural.

To a, to an, { *à un* before a noun masculine.  
 at a, at an, { *à une* before a noun feminine.  
 are translated by

Of or from a { *d' un* before a noun masculine.  
 or an, by { *d' une* before a noun feminine.

## EXERCISE II.

To the king.—To the queen.—To the hero.—To the scholars.—  
*roi m. reine f. héros h asp. écoliers pl.*

Of the master.—Of the house.—Of the church.—Of the coat.—  
*maître m. maison f. église f. habit h m.*

Of the curtains.—To a dictionary.—Of a grammar.—To a pen.—  
*rideaux pl. dictionnaire m. grammaire f. plume f.*

Of a penknife.—At the hotel.—From the garden.—To the  
*canif m. hôtel h m. jardin m.*

town.—Of the harp.—To a watch.—From a clock.—  
*ville f. harpe f. h asp. montref. horloge f.*

Of the ladies.—At an inn.—From a village to a town.  
*dames pl. auberge f. — m.*

## GENERAL RULES ON THE ARTICLE.

30.—I. The article must always agree in gender and number with its noun.

31.—II. The article and the prepositions *à* and *de*, whether contracted or not, are generally repeated in French before every noun, although often omitted in English.

## EXAMPLE.

*Le lis est le symbole de la candeur,  
 de l'innocence, et de la pureté.*

*The lily is the emblem of candour,  
 innocence, and purity.*

## EXERCISE III.

The lion is the king of animals.—The fox is the  
*— m. est roi m. art. animaux pl. renard m.*

emblem of cunning.—The rose is the queen of flowers.—  
*emblème m. art. ruse f. — f. reine f. art. fleurs pl.*

Idleness is the mother of all vices. — The love of  
 art.  *paresse f. mère f. de tous art. — pl. amour m.*

life is natural to man. — She (is learning)  
 art.  *vie f. naturel art. homme h m. Elle apprend*

drawing, music, and dancing. — I write to the  
 art.  *dessin m. art. musique f. et art. danse f. J'écris*

nephew and the niece. — The Creator of heaven and  
 *neveu m. pr. nièce f. Créateur m. art. ciel m.*

earth. — The vigour of mind and body.  
 pr. art.  *terre f. vigueur f. art. esprit m. pr. art. corps m.*

32.—III. OF THE ARTICLE *du, de la, de l', des*, USED IN A PARTITIVE SENSE, *i. e.* implying a part, not the whole.

*Du* for the masculine, *de la* for the feminine, *de l'* before a vowel or *h* mute, *des* for the plural, answering to the English words SOME or ANY, expressed or understood, must be repeated before every noun in French.

#### EXAMPLES.

Envoyez-nous <i>du</i> pain, <i>de la</i> viande,		Send us some bread, meat, and
et <i>des</i> pommes de terre.		potatoes.
Avez-vous <i>de la</i> monnaie?		Have you got any change?

#### EXERCISE IV.

Give me *some* paper, ink, and pens. — Take  
*Donnez-moi papier m. encre f. et plumes pl. Prenez*

*some* tea or coffee. — Put in *some* sugar and cream. —  
*thé m. ou café m. Mettez-y sucre m. crème f.*

Offer him *some* cheese, eggs, butter, and milk. —  
*Offrez-lui fromage m. œufs pl. beurre m. lait m.*

Drink *some* wine, *some* beer, or *some* water. — Eat  
*Buvez vin m. bière f. eau f. Mangez*

*some* hash. — Bring me *some* oil, mustard,  
*hachis m. h asp. Apportez-moi huile h m. moutarde f.*

pepper, and salt. — Have you got *any* money? — Has she *any*  
*poivre m. sel m. Avez-vous argent m. A-t-elle*

wool or thread? — Is there *any* ripe fruit in the garden?  
*laine f. fil m. Y a-t-il <sup>2</sup>mûr <sup>1</sup>—m. dans jardin m.*

Yes; there are apricots, peaches, pears, and apples.  
*Oui il y a abricots, pêches, poires, pommes.*



## CHAPTER II.

## OF THE SUBSTANTIVE OR NOUN.

33. A *Substantive* or *Noun* is the name of any person or thing that exists, or of which we have any notion; as, *Alexandre*, Alexander; *Londres*, London; *homme*, man; *maison*, house; *vertu*, virtue.

Substantives are either *proper* or *common*.

The substantive *proper*, or *proper name*, is the name appropriated to one person, or one thing only; as, *Calvin*, *Milton*, *France*, *Paris*, *Dublin*.

The *common* noun is that which belongs to persons, or things of the same kind; as, *homme*, man; *arbre*, tree; which appellation equally suits all men, all trees.

Among common nouns, we must distinguish the *collective nouns*; so called, because, although used in the singular number, they present to the mind the idea of several persons or things.

Collective nouns are divided into *general* and *partitive*. The former express a whole body; as, *armée*, army; *forêt*, forest. The latter express only a partial number; as, *multitude*, multitude; *quantité*, quantity.

## OF THE FORMATION OF THE PLURAL OF FRENCH SUBSTANTIVES.

## GENERAL RULE.

34. THE plural of Substantives, either masculine or feminine, is formed by adding an *s* to the singular; as,

le père,	<i>the father.</i>	les pères,	<i>the fathers.</i>
la mère,	<i>the mother.</i>	les mères,	<i>the mothers.</i>
l'enfant,	<i>the child.</i>	les enfants,*	<i>the children.'</i>
le moment,	<i>the moment.</i>	les moments,*	<i>the moments.</i>

\* It was formerly a general practice, and it is still retained by some, to leave out the *t* in the plural of nouns and adjectives ending in *ant* and *ent*, but at the present day the adjective *tout* (all) is the only word in which the French Academy drops the *t* in the plural masculine; as,

Tous les parents.  
Tous les habitants.—(*Académie*.)

*All the relations.*  
*All the inhabitants.*

To *tout* might be added *gent*, plural *gens*; but *gent* singular is only used in familiar poetry; as, *la gent marécageuse*, the marshy tribe.

## EXCEPTIONS TO THE GENERAL RULE.

35. EXCEPTION I.—Nouns ending in *s*, *x*, or *z*, in the singular, remain the same in the plural ; as,

le lis,	<i>the lily.</i>	les lis,	<i>the lilies.</i>
la voix,	<i>the voice.</i>	les voix,	<i>the voices.</i>
le nez,	<i>the nose.</i>	les nez,	<i>the noses.</i>

## EXERCISE V.

The *trees* of their *orchards*. — The *flowers* of our *gardens*. —  
*arbre leurs verger fleur nos jardin*  
 The *palaces* of the *kings*. — Buy me four *pounds* of *walnuts*.  
*palais roi Achetez-moi quatre livre noix*  
 — The *fashions* of the *French*. — The *crosses* of the *knights*. —  
*mode Français croix chevalier*  
 The *laws* of those *countries*. — The *movements* of the *armies*. —  
*loi ces pays mouvement armée*  
 The *spoons* and *forks* are on the table. — He has  
*cuiller et art. fourchette sont sur — f. Il a*  
 three *sons* and two *daughters*. — The *lilies* of the *fields*.  
*trois fils deux fille champ*

36. EXCEPTION II.—Nouns ending in *au*, *eu*, *œu*, or *ou*, take an *x* instead of an *s* in the plural ; as,

chapeau,	<i>hat.</i>	chapeaux,	<i>hats.</i>
jeu,	<i>game.</i>	jeux,	<i>games.</i>
vœu,	<i>vow.</i>	vœux,	<i>vows.</i>
bijou,	<i>jewel.</i>	bijoux,	<i>jewels.</i>
hibou,	<i>owl.</i>	hiboux,	<i>owls.</i>

37. The following nouns in *ou*, conform to the general rule, taking an *s* in the plural :

clou,	<i>nail.</i>	licou,	<i>halter.</i>
coucou,	<i>cuckoo.</i>	sou,	<i>penny.</i>
filou,	<i>pickpocket.</i>	trou,	<i>hole.</i>
fou,	<i>fool.</i>	verrou,	<i>bolt.</i>

## EXERCISE VI.

A fleet of twenty *ships*. — The *boats* of the *sailors*. —  
*flotte f. vingt vaisseau bateau matelot*  
 He (found himself) between two *fires*. — *Owls* are  
*Il se trouva entre deux feu art. sont des*  
*nocturnal birds*. — The *knives* are on the *sideboard*. —  
*2nocturnes 1oiseau couteau sur buffet m.*  
 (There are) many *pickpockets* in *London* and *Paris*. —  
*Il y a beaucoup de filou à Londres et à —*

Fill up those *holes*. — Give him six *pence*. — Our doors  
*Remplissez ces* *Donnez-lui* — *sou* *Nos porte*  
 have *bolts*.—He has sold the *pictures* and the *jewels*.  
*ont 32 verrou* *vendu* *tableau*

38. EXCEPTION III.—Most nouns ending in *al* or *ail* in the singular, form their plural by changing the final *al* or *ail* into *aux*; as,

canal,	<i>canal.</i>		canaux,	<i>canals.</i>
hôpital,	<i>hospital.</i>		hôpitaux,	<i>hospitals.</i>
travail,	<i>work.</i>		travaux,	<i>works.</i>

39. The following nouns in *al* and *ail* take an *s* in the plural:

attirail,	<i>apparatus,</i>	<i>imple-</i>		éventail,	<i>fan.</i>
bal,	<i>ball.</i>	<i>[ments.</i>		gouvernail,	<i>helm, rudder.</i>
carnaval,	<i>carnival.</i>			portail,	<i>portal.</i>
détail,	<i>detail, particulars.</i>			régail,	<i>treat.</i>

40. AÏEUL, CIEL, ŒIL, have two plurals.

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Meaning.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
<i>aïeul</i> {	<i>grandfather,</i>	<i>aïeuls.</i>
	<i>ancestor, forefather,</i>	<i>aïeux.</i>
<i>ciel</i> {	<i>sky, heaven,</i>	<i>cieux.</i>
	<i>sky in a picture; or, tester of a bed,</i>	<i>ciels.</i>
<i>œil</i> eye,	- - - - -	<i>yeux.</i>

(*œil-de-bœuf*, bull's-eye, (architectural term), makes in the plural, *œils-de-bœuf*.)

*Bétail*, subst. masc. sing., and *Bestiaux*, subst. masc. pl., are synonymous, both meaning *cattle*.

## EXERCISE VII.

The *horses* of the *generals*. — The *marshals* of France. —  
*cheval* *général* *maréchal* —

The English *admirals*. — These *corals* are beautiful. — The *balls*  
<sup>2</sup>*anglais* <sup>1</sup>*amiral* *Ces corail sont superbes.* *bal*

of the nobility. — He sells *fans*. — Our Saviour  
*noblessef.* *Il vend 32 éventail* *Notre Sauveur*

ascended into *heaven* in presence of his disciples. — Open  
*monta à art. ciel pl. en présence de ses* — *Ouvrez*

your *eyes*. — She has the portraits of her two *grandfathers*.  
<sup>\*</sup> *art. œil Elle a* — *ses deux*

— His *forefathers* have filled high stations.  
*ont rempli de grandes charges.*

## CHAPTER III.

## OF THE ADJECTIVE.

41. AN *Adjective* is a word which expresses some quality or distinction ascribed to a substantive.

Adjective, from the Latin *adjectus*, signifies *added to*.

A word is known to be an adjective, when it can be properly joined with the word *personne*, person; or *chose*, thing. Thus, *fidèle*, faithful, and *agréable*, agreeable, are adjectives, because we can say, *une personne fidèle*, a faithful person; *une chose agréable*, an agreeable thing.

In English, the adjectives never vary on account of gender and number, but in French they change their termination, in order to agree, in gender and number, with the nouns or pronouns to which they relate.

## OF THE FORMATION OF THE FEMININE OF ADJECTIVES.

## GENERAL RULE.

42. The feminine of adjectives is formed by adding an *e* mute to the masculine singular; as,

<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>		<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	
prudent,	prudente,	<i>prudent.</i>	joli,	jolie,	<i>pretty.</i>
grand,	grande,	<i>great.</i>	âgé,	âgée,	<i>old, aged.</i>
court,	courte,	<i>short.</i>	petit,	petite,	<i>little, small.</i>

## EXCEPTIONS.

43. EXCEPTION I.—Adjectives ending in *e* mute (that is, *e* not accented), remain the same in the feminine; as,

un jeune garçon, a young boy. | une jeune fille, a young girl.

## EXERCISE VIII.

Their house is *small*, but it is very *pretty*. —  
*Leur maison f. est mais elle est très*

That street is *narrow* and *dark*. — The meat is *cold*; the  
*Cette rue f. étroit et obscur viande f. froid*

water is *hot*. — This pear (is not) *ripe*. — Avoid  
*eau f. chaud Cette poire f. n'est pas mûr Evitez*

*bad* company. — That girl is very *cunning*. — She  
 art. *mauvais* *compagnie* f. *fille* f. *rusé* Elle  
 has a *black* gown and a *red* scarf. — The *eldest* sister  
 a <sup>2</sup>*noir* <sup>1</sup>*robe* f. <sup>2</sup>*rouge* <sup>1</sup>*écharpe* f. <sup>2</sup>*ainé* <sup>1</sup>*sœur*  
 is a model of *filial* piety. — (She is) a *clever* woman.  
*modèle* m. <sup>2</sup> <sup>1</sup>*piété* f. C'est *habile* *femme*.

44. EXCEPTION II.—Adjectives ending in *f* change that letter into *ve* for the feminine ; as,

Masc.	Fem.	Masc.	Fem.
actif, active, <i>active</i> .		neuf, neuve, <i>new</i> .	
bref, brève, <i>brief, short</i> .		vif, vive, <i>lively</i> .	

45. EXCEPTION III.—Adjectives ending in *x* change the *x* into *se* ; as,

Masc.	Fem.	Masc.	Fem.
heureux, heureuse, <i>happy</i> .		paresseux, paresseuse, <i>idle</i> .	
jaloux, jalouse, <i>jealous</i> .		vertueux, vertueuse, <i>virtuous</i> .	

46. The following in *x* form their feminine thus :

Masc.	Fem.	Masc.	Fem.
doux, douce, <i>sweet, mild</i> .		roux, rousse, <i>red</i> .	
faux, fausse, <i>false</i> .		vieux, vieille, <i>old</i> .	

### EXERCISE IX.

Is she *attentive*? — Catherine de Médicis was *ambitious*,  
*Est-elle attentif* — — — — — *était ambitieux*  
*imperious*, and *superstitious* ; she was a *native* of Florence. —  
*impérieux et superstitieux* \* *natif de* —

Joshua (brought down) the walls of the *proud* Jericho. —  
*Josué fit tomber* . *mur* *orgueilleux Jéricho* f.

The Italian language is *sweet* and *harmonious*. — That  
<sup>2</sup>*italienne* <sup>1</sup>*langue* f. *doux* *harmonieux* Cette  
 news is *false*. — The new tower is in the *old* town.  
*nouvelle* f. *faux* <sup>2</sup>*neuf* <sup>1</sup>*tour* f. *dans* *vieux ville* f.

47. EXCEPTION IV.—Adjectives ending in *el*, *eil*, *ien*,  
 on, and *et*, form their feminine by doubling the last con-  
 sonant, and adding an *e* mute after it ; as,

Masc.	Fem.	Masc.	Fem.
cruel, cruelle, <i>cruel</i> .		chrétien, chrétienne, <i>Christian</i> .	
pareil, pareille, <i>similar</i> .		bon, bonne, <i>good</i> .	
ancien, ancienne, <i>ancient</i> .		net, nette, <i>clean</i> .	

Prêt, *ready*, makes *prête* in the feminine.

48. The following adjectives in *et* and *er* follow the *general rule*, but take a grave accent over the *e* before the final *t* or *r* in the feminine :

<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	
complet,	complète,	<i>complete.</i>
incomplet,	incomplète,	<i>incomplete.</i>
discret,	discrète,	<i>discreet.</i>
indiscret,	indiscrète,	<i>indiscreet.</i>
inquiet,	inquiète,	<i>uneasy.</i>
secret,	secrète,	<i>secret.</i>
cher,	chère,	<i>dear.</i>
fier,	fière,	<i>proud.</i>
premier,	première,	<i>first.</i>
dernier,	dernière,	<i>last.</i>

## EXERCISE X.

The soul is *immortal*.—I (am reading) *ancient history*.—  
*âme f. est immortel Je lis art.<sup>2</sup>ancien<sup>1</sup>histoire f. hm.*  
 We are in the nineteenth century of the *Christian*  
*Nous sommes dans dix-neuvième siècle m. chrétien*  
*era.*—She (is not) pretty, but she is good.—That poor  
*ère f. Elle n'est pas joli mais est Cette pauvre*  
 woman is *dumb*.—Are you ready, my dear sister?—Your  
*femme muet Etes-vous ma sœur? Votre*  
 mother is very *uneasy*.—That person is extremely *indiscreet*.  
*mère très personne f. extrêmement*

49. EXCEPTION V.—Adjectives ending in *eur*, formed from a participle present by the change of *ant* into *eur*, make *euse* in the feminine ; as,

<i>Participle.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	
<i>connaissant,</i>	<i>connaisseur,</i>	<i>connaisseuse,</i>	<i>knowing, a judge.</i>
<i>flattant,</i>	<i>flatteur,</i>	<i>flatteuse,</i>	<i>flattering, a flatterer.</i>
<i>mentant,</i>	<i>menteur,</i>	<i>menteuse,</i>	<i>lying, a liar.</i>
<i>trompant,</i>	<i>trompeur,</i>	<i>trompeuse,</i>	<i>deceiving, deceitful.</i>

OBSERVATION.—Words of this sort are real adjectives, though for the most part used as substantives. About a hundred of them follow this rule.

50. The following must be excepted, as they form their feminine by changing *eur* into *eresse* :

<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	
demandeur,	demanderesse,	<i>a plaintiff.</i>
défendeur,	défenderesse,	<i>a defendant.</i>
enchanteur,	enchanteresse,	<i>enchanting.</i>
pécheur,	pécheresse,	<i>a sinner.</i>
vengeur,	vengeresse,	<i>avenging, an avenger.</i>

51. *Inventeur*, inventor; *inspecteur*, inspector; *persécuteur*, persecutor, make, in the feminine, *inventrice*, *inspectrice*, and *persécutrice*.

52. As to the adjectives, or rather nouns used adjectively, ending in *teur*, which, though derived from verbs, are not formed from a participle present, by the change of *ant* into *eur*, they change *teur* into *trice* for the feminine; as,

<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	
accusateur,	accusatrice,	<i>an accuser.</i>
bienfaiteur,	bienfaitrice,	<i>a benefactor, a benefactress.</i>
conducteur,	conductrice,	<i>a conductor, a conductress.</i>
instituteur,	institutrice,	<i>a schoolmaster, a governess.</i>

Upwards of fifty nouns follow this rule.

Those who know Latin will see that most nouns ending in *teur* and *trice* are derived from the Latin words in *tor* and *trix*; as, *accusator*, *accusatrix*, etc.

53. Adjectives ending in *eur*, not derived from verbs, and conveying an idea of *opposition* or *comparison*, follow the general rule of taking an *e* mute in the feminine; as,

<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>
antérieur,	antérieure, <i>anterior.</i>	majeur,	majeure, <i>major.</i>
citérieur,	citérieure, <i>citerior.</i>	mineur,	mineure, <i>minor.</i>
extérieur,	extérieure, <i>exterior.</i>	postérieur,	postérieure, <i>posterior.</i>
intérieur,	intérieure, <i>interior.</i>	supérieur,	supérieure, <i>superior.</i>
inférieur,	inférieure, <i>inferior.</i>	ultérieur,	ultérieure, <i>ulterior.</i>
meilleur,	meilleure, <i>better.</i>		

54. *Empereur*, emperor; *ambassadeur*, ambassador; *gouverneur*, governor; *serviteur*, servant, make in the feminine *impératrice*, *ambassadrice*, *gouvernante*, *servante*.

*Chasseur*, hunter, has two feminines—*chasseuse* in prose, and *chasseresse* in poetry.

*Chanteur*, singer, has also two feminines—*chanteuse* and *cantatrice*. The latter is used in speaking of an eminent professional female vocalist.

55. Words expressing *professions*, *trades*, &c., usually followed by men, have no feminine, even when exercised by women; as,

graveur,	<i>an engraver.</i>	imprimeur,	<i>a printer.</i>
sculpteur,	<i>a sculptor.</i>	docteur,	<i>a doctor.</i>

professeur,	<i>a professor.</i>	traducteur,	<i>a translator.</i>
auteur,	<i>an author.</i>	&c.	&c.

## EXAMPLES.

Mademoiselle de Schurman, née à Cologne en 1606, était <i>peintre, graveur, sculpteur, géomètre.</i> —(DICT. DE BIOGRAPHIE.)	Mademoiselle de Schurman, born at Cologne in 1606, was a painter, an engraver, a sculptor, and a geometrian.
Madame de Staël est <i>un</i> de nos plus grands <i>écrivains.</i> —(BOISTE.)	Madame de Staël is one of our greatest writers.
Une femme <i>auteur.</i> —(ACAD.)	A female author.
Madame Deshoulières était <i>un poëte</i> aimable.—(ACAD.)	Madame Deshoulières was an amiable poetess.

~~est~~ *Poëtesse*, s. f. (a female poet) is a word seldom used.—(ACAD.)

## EXERCISE XI.

She is a great *talker* and a great *laugher*. — Is she  
*C'est grand parleur* *rieur* *Est-elle*  
*quarrelsome?*—Joan of Arc was the *avenger* of France.—  
*querelleur* *Jeanne d'Arc fut vengeur* art. — f.  
 She is the *benefactress* of the poor. — She is a good *actress*,  
*C'est bienfaiteur* *pauvre pl.* *bon acteur*  
 and a celebrated *singer*.—Minerva was the *protectress* of the  
*célèbre* *Minerve était protecteur*  
 fine arts. —The city of Troy was in Asia *Minor*.—  
*beaux-arts.* *ville f.* *Troie dans art.* *Asie f.* *Mineur*  
 (There is) a *superior* power.—That is a *flattering* promise.  
*Il y a* <sup>2</sup>*supérieur* <sup>1</sup>*puissance f.* *C'* <sup>2</sup> <sup>1</sup>*promesse f.*

56. There are seven adjectives ending in *c* which form their feminine thus :

<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>		<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>
blanc,	blanche,	<i>white.</i>	public,	publique, <i>public.</i>
caduc,	caduque,	<i>infirm.</i>	sec,	sèche, <i>dry.</i>
franc,	franche,	<i>frank, open.</i>	turc,	turque, <i>Turkish.</i>
grec,	grecque,	<i>Greek, Grecian.</i>		

57. The six following terminations in *s* take *se* in the feminine :

<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>		<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	
bas,	basse,	<i>low.</i>	gras,	grasse,	<i>fat.</i>
épais,	épaisse,	<i>thick.</i>	gros,	grosse,	<i>big.</i>
exprès,	expresse,	<i>express.</i>	las,	lasse,	<i>tired.</i>



58. The following adjectives form their feminine irregularly :

<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>		<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	
beau,	belle,*	<i>fine.</i>	long,	longue,	<i>long.</i>
bénin,	bénigne,	<i>benign.</i>	malin,	maligne,	<i>malignant</i>
favori,	favorite,	<i>favourite.</i>	mou,	molle,*	<i>soft.</i>
fou,	folle,*	<i>foolish.</i>	nouveau,	nouvelle,*	<i>new.</i>
frais,	fraîche,	<i>fresh.</i>	nul,	nulle,	<i>null.</i>
gentil,	gentille,	<i>genteel.</i>	sot,	sotte,	<i>silly.</i>
jumeau,	jumelle,	<i>twin.</i>	traître,	traîtresse,	<i>treacherous</i>

\* REMARK.—The feminines, *belle, folle, molle, nouvelle*, are formed from the masculines, *bel, fol, mol, nouvel*, which are used before a vowel, or *h* mute.

## EXERCISE XII.

(Here is) a *handsome white* gown.—His *public* life is  
*Voici beau* <sup>2</sup>*blanc* <sup>1</sup>*robe f.* Sa <sup>2</sup>*public* <sup>1</sup>*vie f. est*  
 irreproachable. — This table is too *low*. — This board is  
*irréprochable. Cette* — *f. trop bas* *planche f.*  
 too *long* and too *thick*. — This soup is too *fat*. — It is  
*long épais soupe f. gras C'est*  
 a *new* discovery. — Have you seen my *favourite* flower,  
*nouveau découverte f. Avez-vous vu ma* <sup>2</sup>*favori* <sup>1</sup>*fleur f.*  
 the rose, so *fresh* and so sweet? — That is a *fine* tree.  
 — *f. si frais* <sup>2</sup>*doux* *Voilà* *arbre m.*

## PLURAL OF FRENCH ADJECTIVES.

### GENERAL RULE.

59. Adjectives form their plural, like substantives, by the simple addition of an *s* to the singular; as,

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>	
grand, <i>masc.</i>	grands,	} <i>great.</i>
grande, <i>fem.</i>	grandes,	
savant, <i>masc.</i>	savants,	} <i>learned.</i>
savante, <i>fem.</i>	savantes,	

This rule is without any exceptions for the feminine, but the masculine has the three following :

60.—EXCEPTION I. Adjectives ending in *s* or *x* do not change their termination in the plural masculine; as, *gras*, fat; *gros*, big; *heureux*, happy.

61.—EXCEPTION II. Adjectives ending in *au* take *x* in the plural masculine; as, *beau*, handsome; *nouveau*, new; plural, *beaux*, *nouveaux*.

62.—EXCEPTION III. Adjectives ending in *al* change this termination into *aux* for the plural masculine; as, *égal*, equal; *moral*, moral; plural, *égaux*, *moraux*.

A few adjectives ending in *al* follow the general rule, and take *s* in the plural, and others have no plural masculine; but these are adjectives seldom used.

63. *Tout*, all, is the only adjective that changes *t* into *s* for the plur. masc., but it makes *toutes* in the plur. fem.

### EXERCISE XIII.

Give some *entertaining* books to those *pretty little* girls.  
*Donnez* <sup>2</sup>*amusant* <sup>1</sup>*livre* m. *ces* <sup>1</sup>*joli* <sup>1</sup>*petit* *filles*  
 —He has *powerful* enemies, but their efforts (will be)  
*Il a de puissant ennemi* m. *mais leurs* — m. *seront*  
*vain* and *useless*.—These chickens are *big* and *fat*, but those  
*vain et inutile* *Ces poulet* m. *sont gros* *gras*  
 partridges are very *lean*. — All the *general* officers were  
*perdreux* f. *très maigre* *Tout* <sup>2</sup>*général* <sup>1</sup>*officier* *étaient*  
*present*. — The *old* and the *new* soldiers did won-  
*présent* *vieux* *soldat* *furent* 32 mer-  
 ders.—I agree to *all* those conditions, they are reasonable.  
*veille Je consens* *ces* — f. *elles* *raisonnable*

### OF THE DEGREES OF COMPARISON.

64. There are three degrees of comparison; the *Positive*, the *Comparative*, and the *Superlative*.

The *Positive* is the adjective itself, merely expressing the quality of an object, without any comparison; as,

Un enfant *sage* et *studieux*. | A well-behaved and studious child.

### EXERCISE XIV.

She is *satisfied* with her lot. — Merit is *modest*. —  
*Elle est content* *de son sort*. art. *mérite* m. *modeste*.

Socrates and Plato were two *great* philosophers.—  
*Socrate* *Platon* *étaient* *deux* *grand* *philosophe*

Virgil had a *fine* and *delicate* taste.—The style of  
*Virgile avait* <sup>2</sup>*fin* <sup>3</sup>*et* <sup>4</sup>*délicat* <sup>1</sup>*goût* m. — m.

Fenelon is *harmonious*.—The Alps are *high* and *steep*.—  
 — *est harmonieux*. Alpes f. pl. sont *haut* *escarpé*

The city of Rome is *full* of *ancient* and *modern* monuments.  
 ville f. — *rempli* <sup>2</sup>*ancien* <sup>3</sup>*et* <sup>4</sup>*moderne* <sup>1</sup>— m.

65. The *Comparative Degree* expresses a comparison between two or more objects. There are three sorts of comparatives, viz. of *superiority*, *inferiority*, and *equality*.

The comparative of *superiority* is formed by putting the adverb *plus*, more, before the adjective, and the conjunction *que*, than, after it; as,

Athènes a été *plus* illustre *que*  
 Lacédémone.

Athens was more *illustrious*  
 than Lacedæmon.

N.B.—The comparative degree is often formed in English by adding *r* or *er* to the positive; as, *wise*, *wiser*; *great*, *greater*; and as these letters stand for the adverb *more*, they must be rendered in French by its corresponding adverb *plus*; thus, *wiser*, plus sage; *greater*, plus grand.

*Plus* must be repeated before every adjective.

#### EXERCISE XV.

Virtue is more precious than riches. — He is  
 art. vertu f. est précieux art. richesses pl. Il  
 happier than a king. — He is more fortunate than wise. — It is  
 content roi. heureux sage. Il  
 more noble to forgive than to (avenge one's self). —  
 — de pardonner de se venger.

The simplicity of nature is more pleasing than all the  
 simplicité f. art. — f. agréable tout  
 embellishments of art. — London is more populous  
 ornement m. art. — Londres m. peuplé  
 than Paris, but France is larger and more populous than  
 — mais art. — f. grand et

England. — The Thames is deeper than the Seine.  
 art. Angleterre. Tamise f. profond — f.

66. The comparative of *inferiority* is formed by placing the adverb *moins*, less, before the adjective, and *que*, than, after it; as,

L'Afrique est moins peuplée que l'Europe. | Africa is less populous than Europe.

*Moins* is to be repeated before every adjective.

The comparative of *inferiority* may also be formed by putting the verb in the negative, with *si*, *so*, before the adjective, and *que*, *as*, after it; as,

L'Afrique n'est pas *si* peuplée *que* l'Europe. | *Africa is not so populous as Europe*

### EXERCISE XVI.

Death is *less* fatal *than* the pleasures which attack  
art. mort f. est funeste plaisir qui attaquent

virtue.—He is *less* polite and obliging *than* his brother.—  
art. vertu f. Il poli obligeant son frère.

She is *less* amiable *than* her sister.—Cæsar (was not) *less* brave  
Elle aimable sa sœur. César n'était pas —

*than* Alexander.—They are *less* happy *than* you think.—He  
Alexandre. Ils heureux vous ne pensez.

(is not) *so* rich *as* his brother-in-law.—His family is much  
n'est pas riche beau-frère. Sa famille f. bien

*less* numerous *than* ours.—He is *less* rich *than* you.  
nombreux la nôtre.

67. The comparative of *equality* is formed by placing the adverb *aussi*, *as*, before the adjective, and *que*, *as*, after it; as,

Aristide était *aussi* vaillant *que* juste. | *Aristides was as valiant as just.*

*Aussi* must be repeated before every adjective.

### EXERCISE XVII.

Is he *as* clever, and *as* docile *as* his cousin?—He is *as*  
Est-il habile — son — m. Il est

tall *as* you.—Your niece is *as* pretty *as* that girl.—She is  
grand vous. Votre nièce joli cette fille.

*as* good *as* beautiful.—Socrates was *as* valiant *as* wise.  
beau Socrate était vaillant sage.

—Cicero was *as* pious *as* eloquent.—It is *as* easy to do  
Cicéron pieux éloquent. Il aisé de faire

good *as* to do evil.—History is *as* useful *as*  
art. bien m. art. mal m. art. histoire h m. utile

agreeable.—This house is *as* large *as* yours.  
agréable. Cette maison f. grand la vôtre.

68. The *Superlative Degree* expresses the quality in the highest or lowest degree. There are two sorts of superlatives, the *relative* and the *absolute*.

The superlative *relative* expresses a relation or comparison with another object; it is formed by putting the article *le*, *la*, *les*, before the comparative.

## EXAMPLES.

Le chien est l'animal *le plus* fidèle.  
Ce sont les hommes *les plus* sages  
de l'assemblée.—(ACAD.)

The dog *is* the most faithful animal.  
They are the wisest men in the as-  
sembly.

The superlative *relative* may also be formed by placing before the comparative one of the possessive adjectives, *mon, ma, mes, my; ton, ta, tes, thy; son, sa, ses, his* or *her; notre, nos, our; votre, vos, your; leur, leurs, their.*

## EXAMPLES.

*Mon plus* puissant protecteur.  
*Votre plus* grand ennemi.

My most powerful protector.  
Your greatest enemy.

## EXERCISE XVIII.

Gold is the purest, the most precious, the most ductile,  
art. or m. *est pur, précieux,* —  
and, after platina, the heaviest of all metals.—  
*après art. platine m. pesant tout art. métal m.*  
The least excusable of all errors is that which is  
—— art. *erreur f. celle qui*

wilful.—The elephant is the strongest of all animals.—  
*volontaire. éléphant m. fort art. animal m.*

I prefer my house to the finest palace. — Our greatest  
*Je préfère ma maison beau palais m. Nos grand*  
interests. — Your most cruel enemies. — My prettiest rings.  
*intérêt m. Vos cruel ennemi m. Mes bague f.*

69. The superlative *absolute* does not imply any relation to another object, but merely expresses the quality in the highest or lowest degree; it is formed by putting before the adjective one of these words, *très,\* fort,† bien*, very; *extrêmement*, extremely; *infiniment*, infinitely; *excessivement*, excessively; or any other adverb expressing a very high degree.

## EXERCISE XIX.

Mr and Mrs Fox are very happy. They are both very  
*heureux. tous deux*  
capricious.—Dublin is a very large and very fine city.—That  
*capricieux. — est grand beau ville f. Cette*  
lady is very charitable.—He is a very unfortunate man.—He  
*dame — C'est 2 3malheureux 1homme Il*

\* *Très*, from the Greek *τρίς*, thrice; *très-heureux*, thrice happy.

† *Fort*, abbreviation of *fortement*, strongly.

(is not) *very* clever. — This soup is *very* hot. — The  
*n'est pas habile. Cette soupe f. chaud*  
 tea and the sugar are *very* bad. — That work  
*thé m. sucre m. mauvais. Cet ouvrage m.*  
 is *very* much esteemed by the learned. — Madame Dacier  
 \* *estimé de savant m. pl. — —*  
 was *extremely* learned. — God is *infinitely* just.  
*était savant Dieu juste.*

70. The adjectives, *bon*, *mauvais*, and *petit*, and the adverbs, *bien*, *mal*, and *peu*, form their degrees in the following manner :

	Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
Adjectives.	<i>bon, good.</i>	<i>meilleur, better.</i>	<i>le meilleur, the best.</i>
	<i>mauvais, bad.</i>	<i>pire, worse.</i>	<i>le pire, the worst.</i>
	<i>petit, little.</i>	<i>moindre, less.</i>	<i>le moindre, the least.</i>
Adverbs.	<i>bien, well.</i>	<i>mieux, better.</i>	<i>le mieux, the best.</i>
	<i>mal, badly.</i>	<i>pis, worse.</i>	<i>le pis, the worst.</i>
	<i>peu, little.</i>	<i>moins, less.</i>	<i>le moins, the least.</i>

*Plus mauvais, plus petit, plus mal*, are also used, but never *plus bon, plus bien, plus peu*.

## EXERCISE XX.

That wine is *good*, but this is *better*. — Lend me  
*Ce vin m. est mais celui-ci Prêtez-moi*  
 the best book in your library. — He writes *well*, but his  
*livre m. de votre bibliothèque. Il écrit sa*  
 sister writes still *better*. — The life of a slave is *worse*  
*sœur encore vie f. esclave m.*  
 than death itself. — He was a *little better*, but he is  
*que art. mort f. même. se portait mais \*est*  
 now *worse* than ever. — She speaks *little*. — Speak *less*. —  
*maintenant que jamais. parle Parlez*  
 (It is) his *least* misfortune. — The remedy is *worse* than  
*C'est son malheur m. remède m. est*  
 the disease. — Temperance is *the best* doctor.  
*mal m. art. tempérance f. médecin m.*

There are some adjectives which have neither comparatives nor superlatives, because the qualities which they express are in themselves the highest degree of perfection, worth, etc.; such are *éternel*, *immortel* *suprême*, etc.

## OF NUMERAL ADJECTIVES.

71. The Adjectives of Number are divided into *Cardinal* and *Ordinal*.

The *Cardinal* numbers are used to count and express the quantity or number of persons or things.

The *Ordinal* numbers mark the order or rank which persons or things hold with regard to one another.

All numeral adjectives are of both genders, with the exception of *un*, *premier*, and *second*, which take an *e* in the feminine.

## CARDINAL NUMBERS.

- 1 Un.
- 2 Deux.
- 3 Trois.
- 4 Quatre.
- 5 Cinq.
- 6 Six.
- 7 Sept.
- 8 Huit.
- 9 Neuf.
- 10 Dix.
- 11 Onze.
- 12 Douze.
- 13 Treize.
- 14 Quatorze.
- 15 Quinze.
- 16 Seize.
- 17 Dix-sept.
- 18 Dix-huit.
- 19 Dix-neuf.
- 20 Vingt.
- 21 Vingt et un.
- 22 Vingt-deux.
- 23 Vingt-trois.
- 24 Vingt-quatre.
- 25 Vingt-cinq.
- 26 Vingt-six.
- 27 Vingt-sept.
- 28 Vingt-huit.
- 29 Vingt-neuf.
- 30 Trente.

## ORDINAL NUMBERS.

- 1<sup>st</sup> Premier.
- 2<sup>d</sup> Second, *or* Deuxième.
- 3<sup>d</sup> Troisième.
- 4<sup>th</sup> Quatrième.
- 5<sup>th</sup> Cinquième.
- 6<sup>th</sup> Sixième.
- 7<sup>th</sup> Septième.
- 8<sup>th</sup> Huitième.
- 9<sup>th</sup> Neuvième.
- 10<sup>th</sup> Dixième.
- 11<sup>th</sup> Onzième.
- 12<sup>th</sup> Douzième.
- 13<sup>th</sup> Treizième.
- 14<sup>th</sup> Quatorzième.
- 15<sup>th</sup> Quinzième.
- 16<sup>th</sup> Seizième.
- 17<sup>th</sup> Dix-septième.
- 18<sup>th</sup> Dix-huitième.
- 19<sup>th</sup> Dix-neuvième.
- 20<sup>th</sup> Vingtième.
- 21<sup>st</sup> Vingt et unième.
- 22<sup>d</sup> Vingt-deuxième.
- 23<sup>d</sup> Vingt-troisième.
- 24<sup>th</sup> Vingt-quatrième.
- 25<sup>th</sup> Vingt-cinquième.
- 26<sup>th</sup> Vingt-sixième.
- 27<sup>th</sup> Vingt-septième.
- 28<sup>th</sup> Vingt-huitième.
- 29<sup>th</sup> Vingt-neuvième.
- 30<sup>th</sup> Trentième.

## CARDINAL NUMBERS.

- 31 Trente et un.
- 32 Trente-deux.
- 33 Trente-trois.
- 34 Trente-quatre.
- 35 Trente-cinq.
- 36 Trente-six.
- 37 Trente-sept.
- 38 Trente-huit.
- 39 Trente-neuf.
- 40 Quarante.
- 41 Quarante et un.
- 42 Quarante-deux.
- 43 Quarante-trois.
- 44 Quarante-quatre.
- 45 Quarante-cinq.
- 46 Quarante-six.
- 47 Quarante-sept.
- 48 Quarante-huit.
- 49 Quarante-neuf.
- 50 Cinquante.
- 51 Cinquante et un.
- 52 Cinquante-deux.
- 53 Cinquante-trois.
- 54 Cinquante-quatre.
- 55 Cinquante-cinq.
- 56 Cinquante-six.
- 57 Cinquante-sept.
- 58 Cinquante-huit.
- 59 Cinquante-neuf.
- 60 Soixante.
- 61 Soixante et un.\*
- 62 Soixante-deux.
- 63 Soixante-trois.
- 64 Soixante-quatre.
- 65 Soixante-cinq.
- 66 Soixante-six.
- 67 Soixante-sept.
- 68 Soixante-huit.
- 69 Soixante-neuf.
- 70 Soixante et dix.\*
- 71 Soixante et onze.
- 72 Soixante-douze.

## ORDINAL NUMBERS.

- 31<sup>st</sup> Trente et unième.
- 32<sup>d</sup> Trente-deuxième.
- 33<sup>d</sup> Trente-troisième.
- 34<sup>th</sup> Trente-quatrième.
- 35<sup>th</sup> Trente-cinquième.
- 36<sup>th</sup> Trente-sixième.
- 37<sup>th</sup> Trente-septième.
- 38<sup>th</sup> Trente-huitième.
- 39<sup>th</sup> Trente-neuvième.
- 40<sup>th</sup> Quarantième.
- 41<sup>st</sup> Quarante et unième.
- 42<sup>d</sup> Quarante-deuxième.
- 43<sup>d</sup> Quarante-troisième.
- 44<sup>th</sup> Quarante-quatrième.
- 45<sup>th</sup> Quarante-cinquième.
- 46<sup>th</sup> Quarante-sixième.
- 47<sup>th</sup> Quarante-septième.
- 48<sup>th</sup> Quarante-huitième.
- 49<sup>th</sup> Quarante-neuvième.
- 50<sup>th</sup> Cinquantième.
- 51<sup>st</sup> Cinquante et unième.
- 52<sup>d</sup> Cinquante-deuxième.
- 53<sup>d</sup> Cinquante-troisième.
- 54<sup>th</sup> Cinquante-quatrième.
- 55<sup>th</sup> Cinquante-cinquième.
- 56<sup>th</sup> Cinquante-sixième.
- 57<sup>th</sup> Cinquante-septième.
- 58<sup>th</sup> Cinquante-huitième.
- 59<sup>th</sup> Cinquante-neuvième.
- 60<sup>th</sup> Soixantième.
- 61<sup>st</sup> Soixante et unième.
- 62<sup>d</sup> Soixante-deuxième.
- 63<sup>d</sup> Soixante-troisième.
- 64<sup>th</sup> Soixante-quatrième.
- 65<sup>th</sup> Soixante-cinquième.
- 66<sup>th</sup> Soixante-sixième.
- 67<sup>th</sup> Soixante-septième.
- 68<sup>th</sup> Soixante-huitième.
- 69<sup>th</sup> Soixante-neuvième.
- 70<sup>th</sup> Soixante et dixième.
- 71<sup>st</sup> Soixante et onzième.
- 72<sup>d</sup> Soixante-douzième.

---

\* We say also, but less frequently, and not so well for euphony, *soixante-un*, *soixante-dix*.—(FRENCH ACADEMY.)



## CARDINAL NUMBERS.

73	Soixante-treize.
74	Soixante-quatorze.
75	Soixante-quinze.
76	Soixante-seize.
77	Soixante-dix-sept.
78	Soixante-dix-huit.
79	Soixante-dix-neuf.
80	Quatre-vingts.
81	Quatre-vingt-un.
82	Quatre-vingt-deux.
83	Quatre-vingt-trois.
84	Quatre-vingt-quatre.
85	Quatre-vingt-cinq.
86	Quatre-vingt-six.
87	Quatre-vingt-sept.
88	Quatre-vingt-huit.
89	Quatre-vingt-neuf.
90	Quatre-vingt-dix.
91	Quatre-vingt-onze.
92	Quatre-vingt-douze.
93	Quatre-vingt-treize.
94	Quatre-vingt-quatorze.
95	Quatre-vingt-quinze.
96	Quatre-vingt-seize.
97	Quatre-vingt-dix-sept.
98	Quatre-vingt-dix-huit.
99	Quatre-vingt-dix-neuf.
100	Cent.
101	Cent un.
102	Cent deux.
200	Deux cents.
1000	Mille.
10,000	Dix mille.
1,000,000	Million.

## ORDINAL NUMBERS.

73 <sup>d</sup>	Soixante-treizième.
74 <sup>th</sup>	Soixante-quatorzième.
75 <sup>th</sup>	Soixante-quinzième.
76 <sup>th</sup>	Soixante-seizième.
77 <sup>th</sup>	Soixante-dix-septième.
78 <sup>th</sup>	Soixante-dix-huitième.
79 <sup>th</sup>	Soixante-dix-neuvième.
80 <sup>th</sup>	Quatre-vingtième.
81 <sup>st</sup>	Quatre-vingt-unième.
82 <sup>d</sup>	Quatre-vingt-deuxième.
83 <sup>d</sup>	Quatre-vingt-troisième.
84 <sup>th</sup>	Quatre-vingt-quatrième.
85 <sup>th</sup>	Quatre-vingt-cinquième.
86 <sup>th</sup>	Quatre-vingt-sixième.
87 <sup>th</sup>	Quatre-vingt-septième.
88 <sup>th</sup>	Quatre-vingt-huitième.
89 <sup>th</sup>	Quatre-vingt-neuvième.
90 <sup>th</sup>	Quatre-vingt-dixième.
91 <sup>st</sup>	Quatre-vingt-onzième.
92 <sup>d</sup>	Quatre-vingt-douzième.
93 <sup>d</sup>	Quatre-vingt-treizième.
94 <sup>th</sup>	Quatre-vingt-quatorzième.
95 <sup>th</sup>	Quatre-vingt-quinzième.
96 <sup>th</sup>	Quatre-vingt-seizième.
97 <sup>th</sup>	Quatre-vingt-dix-septième.
98 <sup>th</sup>	Quatre-vingt-dix-huitième.
99 <sup>th</sup>	Quatre-vingt-dix-neuvième.
100 <sup>th</sup>	Centième.
101 <sup>st</sup>	Cent-unième.
102 <sup>d</sup>	Cent-deuxième.
200 <sup>th</sup>	Deux centième.
1000 <sup>th</sup>	Millième.
10,000 <sup>th</sup>	Dix millièm.
1,000,000 <sup>th</sup>	Millionième.

Among the words which express number, there are some which are real *substantives*; these are divided into three sorts, called *collective*, *distributive*, and *proportional*.

The *collective* denotes a certain quantity or collection of things; as, *une douzaine*, a dozen; *une vingtaine*, a score; *un million*, a million.

The *distributive* expresses a part of a whole; as, *la moitié*, the half; *le quart*, the quarter.

The *proportional* denotes the progressive increase of things ; as, *le double*, the double ; *le triple*, the triple ; *le centuple*, a hundred-fold.

72. REMARKS.—I. The *ordinal* numbers, the *collective* and *distributive* nouns take an *s* in the plural ; as,

Les premières douzaines  
Les sept huitièmes.

The first dozens.  
The seven eighths.

73. II. *Vingt* and *cent* are the only *cardinal* numbers which take an *s* in the plural, that is, when preceded by another number which multiplies them ; as,

Quatre-vingts chevaux.  
Cinq cents soldats.

Eighty horses.  
Five hundred soldiers.

The preceding remark holds good when the noun is understood ; as,

Nous étions deux cents.

We were two hundred (persons.)

74. III. But, when *vingt* and *cent* are followed by another number, or used for the date of the year, they do not take an *s* ; as,

Quatre-vingt-dix chevaux.  
Cinq cent vingt soldats.  
L'an mil sept cent quatre-vingt.

Ninety horses.  
Five hundred and twenty soldiers.  
In the year one thousand seven hundred and eighty.

75. IV. *Mille*, a thousand, never takes an *s* in the plural ; but, *mille*, a mile, takes one : thus, *dix mille* is ten thousand, and *dix milles* means ten miles. In mentioning the Christian era, *mille* is abridged into *mil* ; as,

Napoléon mourut en MIL huit cent vingt et un.

Napoleon died in one THOUSAND eight hundred and twenty-one.

76. V. The French make use of the *cardinal* numbers, —1st, In mentioning all the days of the month, except the *first* : thus we say, *le deux mars*, the second of March ; *le quatre mai*, the fourth of May ; and, *le premier mai*, the first of May ; *le premier juin*, the first of June.

*Note.*—Voltaire used to say, *le deux de mars*, *le quatre de mai* ; and Racine *le deux mars*, *le quatre mai*. With regard to grammatical correctness, the first construction is certainly preferable ; but if we follow usage, which, as to language, is the rule of opinion, we must say *le deux mars*, *le quatre mai*. It is thus that our good authors almost always express themselves, as well as those persons who pique themselves on speaking purely, and who avoid every kind of affectation.

2*d*, In speaking of sovereigns; as, *Guillaume quatre*, William the fourth. The *first* of the series is excepted, for we say *Jacques premier*, *Henri premier*, and not *Jacques un*, *Henri un*; but we say indifferently, *deux* or *second*.

Henri *deux*, roi de France.

Catherine *deux*, impératrice de Russie.—(ACAD.)

François *second* succéda à Henri *second*.—(GIRARD.)

Henry the second, king of France.

Catharine the second, empress of Russia.

Francis the second succeeded Henry the second.

In speaking of the Emperor Charles V, and of Pope Sixtus V, we say *Charles-Quint*, *Sixte-Quint*.

### EXERCISE XXI.

America was discovered by Christopher Columbus, in art. *Amérique f. fut découverte par Christophe Colomb* \* the year *one thousand four hundred and ninety-two*.—We have an m.\* \* *Nous avons*

*eighty* (men of war) ready to sail, we (shall soon have) *vaisseaux de guerre prêts faire voile en aurons bientôt* two hundred.—Our troops took *five thousand* prisoners. — *Nos troupes firent prisonnier*

(It is) *four miles* from this.—Send me the *first* *two dozens*. *Il y a mille m. ici. Envoyez-moi*

—Your letter of the *fifteenth* of January (reached me) on *Votre lettre f. \* janvier m'est parvenue \** the *first* of February. — I arrived on the *second* \* *février. suis arrivé \**

### EXERCISE XXII.

*Louis the sixteenth*, *Louis the eighteenth*, and *Charles the tenth*,

were brothers.—*Francis the first*, king of France, and *étaient frère François*

*Frederick the second*, king of Prussia, were great warriors. *Frédéric Prusse, étaient de grand guerrier*

—*Louis the thirteenth* was the founder of the French Academy. *est fondateur <sup>2</sup> <sup>1</sup>Académie f.*

—*Charles the fifth*, king of France, was surnamed the wise.— *fut surnommé sage.*

Pope Sixtus *the fifth* was contemporary to Philip *the second*, art. *pape était contemporain de Philippe*

son of the emperor Charles *the fifth*.—James I. and Henry IV.

## OBSERVATIONS ON WORDS which are alike in FRENCH and ENGLISH.

77. There are many nouns and adjectives which are alike in both languages, with the exception of the difference in pronunciation, and that some require accents in French ; and there are others which differ merely in their termination.

Most words are alike in both languages, when ending in—

<i>acc, ice,</i>	as,	{ place, préface, race, trace, face, grimace, avarice, justice, injustice, service, vice, etc.
<i>ade, ude,</i>	„	{ arcade, brigade, cavalcade, sérénade, fortitude, multitude, prélude, prude, etc.
<i>ance, enc<sup>e</sup>,</i>	„	{ distance, ignorance, tempérance, éloquence, évidence, patience, silence, etc.
<i>ant, ent,</i>	„	{ constant, élégant, éléphant, instant, absent, accident, compliment, excellent, etc.
<i>ile, ule,</i>	„	{ docile, ductile, reptile, versatile, globule, bile, mule, ridicule, etc.
<i>acl,</i>	„	{ miracle, obstacle, oracle, réceptacle, spectacle, tabernacle, etc.
<i>al,</i>	„	{ cardinal, fatal, local, moral, principal, général, naval, royal, libéral, radical, etc.
<i>ble,</i>	„	{ câble, charitable, fable, table, probable, Bible, éligible, visible, noble, double, etc.
<i>g<sup>e</sup>,</i>	„	{ âge, cage, charge, image, page, rage, collège, déluge, refuge, forge, orange, siège, etc.
<i>ine,</i>	„	- doctrine, famine, héroïne, machine, etc.
<i>ion,</i>	„	{ action, éducation, instruction, légion, nation, opinion, passion, question, etc.

78. Most English words ending in *ary, ory, our, or, ous, cy, ty,* and *y,* become French by changing these terminations in the following manner :—

<i>ary</i>	-	into <i>aire,</i>	as	military,	<i>militaire.</i>
<i>ory</i>	-	„ <i>oire,</i>	„	victory,	<i>victoire.</i>
<i>our</i>	-	„ <i>eur,</i>	„	favour,	<i>faveur.</i>
<i>or</i>	-	„ <i>eur,</i>	„	doctor,	<i>docteur.</i>
<i>ous</i>	-	„ <i>eux,</i>	„	famous,	<i>fameux.</i>
<i>cy</i>	-	„ <i>ce,</i>	„	constancy,	<i>constance.</i>

*ty* (after a vowel) into *té*, as beauty, *beauté*.

y { (other than  
the preceding) } „ ie, „ fury, *furie*; modesty, *modestie*.

79. Most proper names of women and goddesses ending in *a*, become French by changing that *a* into *e* mute; as,

Julia,	<i>Julie.</i>	Minerva,	<i>Minerve.</i>
Sophia,	<i>Sophie.</i>	Diana,	<i>Diane.</i>

Sophia, *Sophie.* Diana, *Diane.*

### EXERCISE XXIII.

The sagacity of that animal is admirable. — That  
 f.                    cet                    m.                    est  
 instrument is very harmonious. — The history of the Royal  
 m.                    très                    h mu.                    2  
 Society.—The rector of an academy.—He has the approbation  
 1 f.                    f.                    a                    f.  
 of the nation.—His memory is extraordinary.—The valour of  
 f.                    Sa                    f.                    f.  
 that general is regulated by                    prudence. — His courage is  
 ce                    réglée par art.                    f.                    Son                    m.  
 invincible. — The number of stars is incalculable. —  
 nombre m.                    art. étoile

Give this nosegay to Maria or Louisa.—Flora was the  
*Donnez ce bouquet m. à ou à était*  
 goddess of flowers, and Pomona, the goddess of fruits.  
*déesse art. fleur art. —*

### EXERCISE XXIV.

The weathercock is the symbol of inconstancy.—The  
*girouette* f. *symbole* m. art.  
 prosperity of the wicked is not durable. — An ambitious  
 f. *méchants* pl. 2  
 soul is seldom capable of moderation. — It is sometimes  
 1 *âme* f. *rarement* *quelquefois*  
 difficult to distinguish the copy from the original. — The sublimity  
*difficile de distinguer* f. m. f.  
 of his sentiments is still superior to the energy of his  
*ses* m. *encore* f. *ses*  
 expressions. — Magistrates and physicians formerly rode  
 f. art. *magistrat* art. *médecin* 2 *autrefois* 1 *allaient*  
 on mules. — Thalia is the muse of comedy, Urania that  
*sur des* — f. art. f. *celle*  
 of astronomy. — The unicorn is a fabulous animal.  
 art. f. *licorne* f. 2 1

## CHAPTER IV.

## OF PRONOUNS.

80. THE word *Pronoun* is formed of the word *noun*, and of the Latin preposition *pro*, which means *for* or *instead of*.

In the French language, there are five kinds of Pronouns, viz. the *Personal*, the *Possessive*, the *Demonstrative*, the *Relative*, and the *Indefinite*.

## 81. § I. OF PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

*Personal* pronouns are used instead of the names of persons or things, to avoid the repetition of the nouns which they represent.

There are *three persons*: the first is, the person speaking; the second, the person spoken to; the third, the person or thing spoken of.

## 82. PRONOUNS OF THE FIRST PERSON.

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Examples.</i>	
<i>Subject,</i>	Je,	<i>I.</i>	<i>Je</i> donne,	<i>I</i> give.
<i>Object,</i>	{	moi,	suivez-moi,	follow me.
		{ <i>to me.</i>	écoutez-moi,	listen to me.
		{ <i>me.</i>	il <i>me</i> flatte,	he flatters me.
		{ <i>to me.</i>	il <i>me</i> parle,	he speaks to me.
<i>Plural.</i>				
<i>Subject,</i>	nous,	<i>we.</i>	<i>nous</i> donnons,	<i>we</i> give.
<i>Object,</i>	{	nous,	il <i>nous</i> voit,	he sees us.
		{ <i>us.</i>	il <i>nous</i> parle,	he speaks to us.
		{ <i>to us.</i>		

The pronouns of the *first* and *second* persons are both masculine and feminine, that is, of the same gender as the person or persons they represent.

83. PARTICULAR OBSERVATIONS.—The *Personal* Pronouns are generally placed before the verb, *except*—

(1.) When the pronouns take a preposition before them in French; as, *il parle de nous*, he speaks of us.

(2.) In interrogative sentences; as, *parlez-vous?* do you speak?

(3.) When the verb is in the first person plural, or

in either of the second persons of the Imperative, without a negative; as, *parlez-moi*, speak to me. But if the Imperative is used with a negative, the personal pronouns are placed before the verb; as, *ne me parlez pas*, do not speak to me.

## EXERCISE XXV.

*I speak French.—I have said that.—Lend me your pencil. —*  
*parle français. ai dit cela. Prêtez votre crayon m.*  
 Help me. — Believe me. — Write to me. — Do not write to me.  
*Aidez Croyez Écrivez*  
 — He hurts me. — He sees me. — This picture pleases me  
*Il blesse voit Ce tableau m. plaît*  
 more than the other. — We praise God. — He knows us. —  
*plus que autre. louons Dieu. connaît*  
 We tell him the truth, but he (will not) believe us. —  
*<sup>2</sup>disons <sup>1</sup>lui vérité f. mais ne veut pas croire*  
 He related to us the history of his misfortunes.  
*a raconté histoire h m. ses malheur*

## 84. PRONOUNS OF THE SECOND PERSON.

Singular.			Examples.	
Subject,	tu,	thou.	<i>tu es heureux,</i>	<i>thou art happy.</i>
Object,	{ toi,	<i>thee.</i>	<i>je parle pour toi,</i>	<i>I speak for thee.</i>
	{ te,	{ <i>thee.</i>	<i>Dieu te voit,</i>	<i>God sees thee.</i>
		{ <i>to thee.</i>	<i>je te parle,</i>	<i>I speak to thee.</i>
Plural.				
Subject,	vous,	you.	<i>vous chantez,</i>	<i>you sing.</i>
Object,	vous,	{ <i>you.</i>	<i>il vous connaît,</i>	<i>he knows you.</i>
		{ <i>to you.</i>	<i>je vous parle,</i>	<i>I speak to you.</i>

85. REMARK. — When, from politeness we use *vous* (you), instead of the singular *tu* (thou), the verb is put in the plural, but the adjective or participle following remains in the singular, and takes the feminine termination if we speak to a female; as,

Monsieur, vous êtes bien *bon*. | *Sir, you are very good.*  
 Madame, vous êtes bien *bonne*. | *Madam, you are very good.*

## EXERCISE XXVI.

*Thou fearest God.—He (will do) it for thee.—He praises*  
*crains Dieu. Il <sup>2</sup>fera <sup>1</sup>le pour loue*  
*thee.—He will speak to thee.—You have spoiled this book.—*  
*parlera avez gâté ce livre m.*

How troublesome *you* are!—How good *you* are!—Ladies,  
*Que* <sup>3</sup>*importun* <sup>1</sup>*m.* <sup>2</sup>*êtes* <sup>3</sup>*bon* <sup>1</sup>*f.* <sup>2</sup>*Mesdames*,  
 how amiable *you* are!—I bring *you* the newspaper.—*You*  
<sup>3</sup>*aimable* <sup>1</sup> <sup>2</sup> *apporte* *journal* *m.*  
 (are fond of) flowers; if *you* like, I will give *you* this  
*aimez* *art. fleur* *si* *voulez* *donnerai* *ce*  
 fine nosegay.—Are *you* pleased, my dear little friend?  
*beau bouquet* *m.* *Etes* *content* *ma* *48* *amie* *f.*

## 86. PRONOUNS OF THE THIRD PERSON.

	Singular.		Examples.	
Subject,	{ <i>il, m.</i>	<i>he, it.</i>	<i>il</i> donne,	<i>he gives.</i>
	{ <i>elle, f.</i>	<i>she, it.</i>	<i>elle</i> donne,	<i>she gives.</i>
Object,	{ <i>lui, m.</i>	{ <i>him.</i>	<i>Il</i> parle de <i>lui</i> ,	<i>he speaks of him.</i>
		{ <i>to him.</i>	<i>il lui</i> parle,	<i>he speaks to him.</i>
	{ <i>lui, f.</i>	<i>to her.</i>	<i>Je lui</i> parlerai,	<i>I will speak to her</i>
	{ <i>elle, f.</i>	<i>her.</i>	<i>il</i> parle d' <i>elle</i> ,	<i>he speaks of her.</i>
	Plural.			
Subject,	{ <i>ils, m.</i>	<i>they.</i>	<i>ils</i> mangent,	<i>they eat.</i>
	{ <i>elles, f.</i>	<i>they.</i>	<i>elles</i> chantent,	<i>they sing.</i>
Object,	{ <i>eux, m.</i>	<i>them.</i>	<i>venez avec eux,</i>	<i>come with them.</i>
	{ <i>elles, f.</i>	<i>them.</i>	<i>c'est pour elles,</i>	<i>it is for them.</i>
	{ <i>leur, m. &amp; f.</i>	<i>to them.</i>	<i>Je leur</i> parlerai,	<i>I will speak to them.</i>

## 87. OF THE PRONOUNS *le, la, les*.

These pronouns always accompany a *verb*, and are thus easily distinguished from the articles *le, la, les*, (see p. 14), which constantly accompany a *noun*.

### EXAMPLES.

<i>le, masc.</i>	{ <i>him,</i>	<i>je le</i> connais,	<i>I know him.</i>
	{ <i>it,</i>	{ <i>voilà un bon livre, lisez-</i>	<i>there is a good book,</i>
<i>la, fem.</i>	{ <i>her,</i>	<i>le,</i>	<i>read it.</i>
	{ <i>it,</i>	<i>je la</i> vois,	<i>I see her.</i>
<i>les, for both gend.</i>	{ <i>them,</i>	<i>vous avez la clef, don-</i>	<i>you have the key, give</i>
		<i>nez-la moi,</i>	<i>it me.</i>
		<i>vous les</i> trouverez dans	<i>you will find them in</i>
		<i>mon tiroir,</i>	<i>my drawer.</i>
		<i>il les</i> connaît,	<i>he knows them.</i>

In this phrase, *Je connais les princes et les princesses, je les vois souvent*, (I know the princes and the princesses, I see them often), the first two *les* are articles, the third is a pronoun.

These three personal pronouns, *le, la, les*, are called "Relative" by some Grammarians.



## EXERCISE XXVII.

He has done his duty. — She sings well. — I (am writing)  
*a fait son devoir. chante bien. écris*  
 to him. — What (shall I say) to her? — They speak to them.  
*Que dirai-je m. parlent*  
 — They will return with them. — (Do not come) without them.  
*f. reviendront m. Ne venez pas sans f.*  
 — They prefer the country to the town. — Prosperity  
*m. préfèrent campagnef. ville f. art. prospérité f.*  
 gets us friends and adversity tries them.  
*fait 32 ami art. éprouve*

88. OF THE PERSONAL PRONOUNS, *SE, SOI*.

*Se, soi*, Pronouns of the third person are used both for persons and things. *Se* is placed before a verb, and *soi* generally after a preposition.

## EXAMPLES.

SE,	<i>himself,</i>	<i>il se loue,</i>	<i>he praises himself.</i>
	<i>herself,</i>	<i>elle se flatte,</i>	<i>she flatters herself.</i>
	<i>itself,</i>	<i>il se détruit,</i>	<i>it destroys itself.</i>
	<i>oneself,</i>	<i>se louer,</i>	<i>to praise oneself.</i>
	<i>themselves,</i>	<i>ils or elles se flattent,</i>	<i>they flatter themselves.</i>
	<i>to himself,</i>	<i>il s'attribue,</i>	<i>he attributes to himself.</i>
SOI,	<i>to herself,</i>	<i>elle s'attribue,</i>	<i>she attributes to herself.</i>
	<i>to oneself,</i>	<i>se prescrire,</i>	<i>to prescribe to oneself.</i>
	<i>to themselves,</i>	<i>ils or elles se prescrivent,</i>	<i>they prescribe to themselves.</i>
	<i>himself,</i>	<i>chacun pour soi,</i>	<i>every one for himself.</i>
	<i>itself,</i>	<i>cela est bon en soi,</i>	<i>that is good in itself.</i>
	<i>oneself,</i>	<i>il faut songer à soi,</i>	<i>one must think of oneself.</i>
	<i>themselves,</i>	<i>{ on doit parler rarement } de soi,</i>	<i>people should seldom speak of themselves.</i>

## EXERCISE XXVIII.

He submits *himself* to your orders. — That lady praises  
*soumet vos ordre Cette dame loue*  
*herself* (too much.) — She gives *herself* (a great deal) of  
*trop. donne beaucoup*  
 trouble. — They expose *themselves* to danger. — They  
*peine. exposent art. — m.*  
 will accustom *themselves* (to it.) — (Every one) works for  
*accoutumeront 1 2y Chacun travaille pour*  
*himself.* — The loadstone attracts iron to *itself*. —  
*aimant m. attire art. fer m.*

Virtue is amiable in *itself*. — He will soon correct *himself*.  
*art. vertu f. est aimable de \* 3bientôt 2corrigerà 1*

## 89. § II. OF POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

THE *Possessive*, as well as the *Demonstrative* Pronouns, are of a mixed nature, partaking of the properties both of pronouns and adjectives; therefore some Grammarians class them among the *adjectives*; others refuse them the name of *pronouns* or *adjectives*, and place them in the rank of *articles*. Indeed, it would be difficult to state, within a moderate compass, the various opinions of Grammarians respecting this part of speech. As for us, we shall follow here the classification adopted by the French Academy, and by the most correct modern writers, and divide the Possessive Pronouns of the old Grammarians into two classes:

1st, *Possessive Adjectives*;

2d, *Possessive Pronouns*;

And, from the affinity these two kinds of words have with each other, we shall place them one after the other in separate articles.

## 90. OF POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES.

The *Possessive* adjectives denote possession or property, and are called *adjectives* rather than *pronouns*, because they do not stand *for* a noun, but, on the contrary, are always joined to a noun. They are:

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>For both genders.</i>	
mon	ma	mes	<i>my</i> <i>thy</i> <i>his, her, its</i> <i>our</i> <i>your</i> <i>their</i>
ton	ta	tes	
son	sa	ses	
notre	notre	nos	
votre	votre	vos	
leur	leur	leurs	

91. OBSERVE.—(1.) The *possessive adjectives*, as well as the preposition which may accompany them, must be repeated before every noun, and agree with it in gender and number.

92. (2.) The *possessive adjectives* always agree in French with the noun following, and never with the preceding one; that is to say, they agree with the object *possessed*, and not with the *possessor*, as in English.

93. (3.) For the sake of euphony, *mon, ton, son*, are used instead of *ma, ta, sa*, before a feminine noun beginning with a vowel or *h* mute.

## EXERCISE XXIX.

*My* father, mother, and brothers are in the country. —  
*père mère frère sont à campagne f.*  
*His* uncle, aunt, and cousins are in Wales. — I  
*oncle tante — m. sont dans le pays de Galles.*  
 have seen Paris, *its* theatres, and buildings. — Our perseverance  
*ai vu — théâtre m. édifice m. persévérance f.*  
 and *our* efforts. — Your country and your friends. — Their  
*— m. pays m. ami m.*  
 house and *their* servants. — Her son is learned. — His sister  
*maison f. domestique fils est savant. sœur*  
 is married. — My ambition, *thy* honesty, and *his* friendship.  
*mariée. — f. honnêteté f. h m. amitié f.*  
 — My brother has lost *his* pen, *his* pencil, and *his* books. —  
*a perdu . plume f. crayon m. livre m.*  
*My* mother has sold *her* house and *her* garden.  
*vendu jardin m.*

## 94. OF POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

These pronouns always relate to some noun spoken of before, with which they agree in gender and number.

The possessive pronouns are:

Singular.		Plural.		
Masc.	Fem.	Masc.	Fem.	
le mien	la mienne	les miens	les miennes	mine
le tien	la tienne	les tiens	les tiennes	thine
le sien	la sienne	les siens	les siennes	his, hers, its
				Pl. for both genders.
le nôtre	la nôtre	les nôtres		ours
le vôtre	la vôtre	les vôtres		yours
le leur	la leur	les leurs		theirs

## EXERCISE XXX.

(Here is) your hat, (don't take) mine. — His  
*Voici chapeau m. ne prenez pas*

house and mine have been burnt, but *theirs* (has not)  
*maison* f. *et* *ont été brûlées mais n'a point*  
 suffered.—Your books are better bound than *mine*. — My  
*souffert.* *livre* m. *sont reliés que*

watch (does not go) so well as *hers*.—Your garden is  
*montre* f. *ne va pas si que* *jardin* m. *est*

larger than *ours*, but our orchard is larger than *yours*.—  
*plus grand* *verger* m.

You have taken my gloves, and (I have) taken *yours*.—  
*avez pris* *gant* m. *moi j'ai*

I know your relations, but I (don't know) *theirs*.  
*connais* *parent* m. pl. *ne connais pas*

### 95. § III. OF DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

We shall divide the Demonstrative pronouns, as we have done the Possessive, into two classes :

1st, *Demonstrative Adjectives* ;

2d, *Demonstrative Pronouns*.

### 96. OF DEMONSTRATIVE ADJECTIVES.

The *Demonstrative* adjectives always precede a substantive, which they designate and point out. They are :

<i>This, or that,</i>	{	CE, before a noun masculine singular, beginning with a consonant, or <i>h</i> aspirate.
		CET, before a noun masculine singular, beginning with a vowel, or <i>h</i> mute.
		CETTE, before any feminine noun.
<i>These, or those,</i>	{	CES, before any noun in the plural, whether masculine or feminine.

97. RULE.—The Demonstrative adjectives must be repeated in French before every noun, though in English *this, that, these, those*, are frequently used before the first noun only, and understood before the others ; as,

<i>Ces hommes, ces femmes, et ces</i>		<i>These men, women, and children</i>
<i>enfants jouent.</i>		<i>are playing.</i>

### EXERCISE XXXI.

*This* picture, *that* bird, *this* doll, *these* flowers, and  
*tableau* m. *oiseau* m. *poupée* f. *fleur* et  
*those* shells are (my sister's).—Taste *this* wine.—Take  
*coquillage* sont à ma sœur. *Goûtez* *vin* m. *Prenez*  
 one of *these* biscuits.—*Those* boys and girls (are going) to  
 — m. *garçon* *fille* *vont*

school. — Give him *this* book and *that* slate. — *These*  
 art. école. Donnez-lui livre m. ardoise f.  
 cups and saucers (are not) clean.—*This* cake is for you.  
 tasse soucoupe ne sont pas propre gâteau m. pour

## 98. OF DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

These pronouns serve to point out the persons or things which they represent. They are :

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>		<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	
ce	- -	<i>this, that, it.</i>	No plural.		
celui	celle	<i>that.</i>	ceux	celles	<i>those.</i>
celui-ci	celle-ci	<i>this.</i>	ceux-ci	celles-ci	<i>these.</i>
celui-là	celle-là	<i>that.</i>	ceux-là	celles-là	<i>those.</i>
ceci	- -	<i>this.</i>	} No plural.		
cela	- -	<i>that.</i>			

CE, demonstrative *pronoun*, differs from *ce*, demonstrative *adjective*, in this, that the former is always joined to the verb *être*, to be, or followed by *qui*, or *que*; whereas the latter is always followed by a substantive. Thus, in this phrase: CE *qui me plaît*, c'EST sa modestie, what (*that which*) pleases me is his modesty, CE is a demonstrative *pronoun*; and it is a demonstrative *adjective* in the following: CE *juge est incorruptible*, that judge is incorruptible.

When *ce* does not come immediately before a substantive, it answers for both numbers and genders; as,

De toutes les vertus celle qui se fait le plus chérir, c'est l'humanité.	Of all the virtues, that which makes itself most beloved is humanity.
Ce furent les Phéniciens qui inventèrent l'écriture.—(BOSSUET.)	It was the Phœnicians who invented writing.

The French Academy remark that *ce* joined to the verb *être* generally forms a gallicism.

99. The Pronouns *celui*, *celle*, *ceux*, *celles*, always relate to a noun expressed before; as,

Voici votre livre, où est celui de votre frère?	Here is your book, where is that of your brother?
J'admire les traductions de Pope et celles de Delille.	I admire the translations of Pope and those of Delille.

100. When two or more objects have been spoken of, *celui-ci*, *celle-ci*, *ceux-ci*, *celles-ci* are used with reference to the nearest, and *celui-là*, *celle-là*, *ceux-là*, *celles-là* refer to the most distant, or first-mentioned object; as,

Voici deux pistolets, lequel choisissez-vous, *celui-ci* ou *celui-là*?

Le corps périt, l'âme est immortelle; cependant nous négligeons *celle-ci*, et nous sacrifions tout pour *celui-là*.

*Here are two pistols, which do you choose, this or that?*

*The body perishes, the soul is immortal; yet we neglect the latter, and sacrifice everything for the former.*

This last example shows also that the English words, *the former*, are likewise expressed by *celui-là*, *celle-là*, *ceux-là*, *celles-là*, and *the latter* by *celui-ci*, *celle-ci*, *ceux-ci*, *celles-ci*, according to the gender and number of the substantive to which they relate.

REMARK. — *LÀ* means *there*, and *CI* is an abbreviation of *ICI*, *here*; so that *CELUI-CI* is equivalent to *this here*, and *CELUI-LÀ*, to *that there*.

101. *Ceci*, this, and *cela*, that, are never followed by a noun, nor used with reference to a noun mentioned before; they stand for something pointed at, but not named; they have no plural, and are both masculine.

*Ceci* est bon, mais *cela* est mauvais.  
Donnez-moi *ceci*, et gardez *cela*.

*This is good, but that is bad.*  
*Give me this, and keep that.*

## EXERCISE XXXII.

*It is a misfortune.* — (Here is) your umbrella, and *that* of *est malheur* m. *Voici* *parapluie* m.

your cousin. — Bring my scissors, and *those* of my  
— m. *Apportez* *ciseaux* m. pl.

sister. — Which of these watches (will you have), *this* or  
*sœur. Laquelle* *montre* f. *voulez-vous* *ou*

*that?* — (Here are) fine pictures, buy *these* or *those*. —  
*Voici* *de beau tableau* m. *achetez*

Give *this* to (the lady) and *that* to (the gentleman). — An  
*Donnez* *madame* *monsieur*.

upright magistrate and a brave officer are equally  
<sup>2</sup>*intègre* <sup>1</sup>*magistrat* m. — *officier* m. *sont également*

estimable; *the former* makes war against domestic  
—— *fait* art. *guerre* f. *à* art. <sup>2</sup>*domestique*

enemies, *the latter* protects us against foreign enemies.  
<sup>1</sup>*ennemi* m. pl. *protège* *contre* art. <sup>2</sup>*extérieur* <sup>1</sup>

## 102. § IV. OF RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

*Relative* Pronouns are those which relate to a noun or pronoun, or phrase going before, which is thence called the *antecedent*.

The relative pronouns are : *qui, que, quoi, lequel, dont, où, en, y*.

OF *qui, que, quoi, lequel, dont*.

## 103. QUI, QUE, QUOI, are of both genders and numbers.

## EXAMPLES.

qui,	{ <i>who,</i>	{ Dieu <i>qui</i> est juste,	<i>God who is just.</i>
	{ <i>which,</i>	{ la dame <i>qui</i> parle,	<i>the lady who is speaking.</i>
		les oiseaux <i>qui</i> chantent,	<i>the birds which are singing.</i>
à <i>qui</i> ,	said of persons only,	{ <i>to whom,</i>	{ le garçon à <i>qui</i> } <i>the boy to whom</i>
		{ j'écris,	{ <i>I am writing.</i>
que,	{ <i>whom,</i>	{ l'homme <i>que</i> vous voyez,	<i>the man whom you see.</i>
	{ <i>which,</i>	{ les livres <i>que</i> vous lisez,	<i>the books which you read.</i>
quoi,	<i>what,</i>	{ voilà de <i>quoi</i> je voulais } <i>that is what I wished to</i>	
		{ vous parler,	{ <i>speak to you about.</i>

REMARK.—*Que* loses the *e* before a vowel; *qui* never changes.

104. LEQUEL is a compound of *quel*, and of the article *le*, with which it incorporates in the following manner :

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
lequel	laquelle		lesquels	lesquelles	<i>which.</i>
duquel	de laquelle		desquels	desquelles	<i>of which.</i>
auquel	à laquelle		auxquels	auxquelles	<i>to which.</i>

This pronoun is used with reference to persons and things, with which it always agrees in gender and number.

EXAMPLES of *lequel*.

lequel, <i>m. which,</i>	{ le fauteuil sur lequel je suis assis,	{ <i>the arm-chair on which I am sitting.</i>
laquelle, <i>f. which,</i>	{ c'est une raison à laquelle il n'y a point de réplique,	{ <i>it is a reason to which there can be no reply.</i>
laquelle, <i>f. which,</i>	{ c'est une de ses sœurs, mais je ne sais laquelle,	{ <i>it is one of his sisters, but I do not know which.</i>

105. *Dont* is of both genders and numbers, and is used when speaking of persons or things: it supplies the place of *duquel*, *de laquelle*, *desquels*, *desquelles*, *de quoi*, but is never used in asking a question.

*Note.*—*Dont* is never used in asking a question, that is—you never begin a question with *dont*; but, in the body of an interrogative phrase, the word is perfectly correct; as, *Où est la femme dont vous parlez?* Where is the woman of whom you speak?

#### EXAMPLES of *dont*.

<i>dont</i> ,	of which,	{ c'est une maladie dont on ne connaît pas la cause,	{ it is an illness, the cause of which is unknown.
	of whom,	{ l'homme dont vous parlez,	{ the man of whom you speak.
	whose,	{ la nature dont nous ignorons les secrets,	{ nature, whose secrets are unknown to us.

106. *Qui*, *que*, *quoi*, *lequel*, are called relative pronouns *absolute*, when they have no antecedent, and only present to the mind a vague and indeterminate idea.

In this case *qui* is employed only in speaking of persons, *que* and *quoi* in speaking of things.

*Lequel* marks a distinction, and is used in interrogative sentences, when asking which person or thing among several.

#### EXAMPLES.

<i>qui</i> ,	<i>who</i> ,	{ qui (quelle personne) est là?	{ who is there?
		{ je ne sais qui est arrivé,	{ I don't know who has arrived.
	<i>whom</i> ,	{ qui appelez-vous?	{ whom do you call?
		{ consultez qui vous voudrez,	{ consult whom you please.
<i>que</i> ,	<i>what</i> ,	{ que (quelle chose) cherchez-vous?	{ what are you seeking?
		{ je ne sais que faire,	{ I don't know what to do.
<i>quoi</i> ,	<i>what</i> ,	{ à quoi (à quelle chose) pensez-vous?	{ what are you thinking of?
		{ quoi de plus aimable que la vertu?	{ what more amiable than virtue?
<i>lequel</i> , <i>m.</i>	<i>which</i> ,	{ lequel préférez-vous?	{ which do you prefer?
		{ choisissez lequel vous voudrez,	{ choose which you please.
<i>laquelle</i> , <i>f.</i>	<i>which</i> ,	{ laquelle de ses sœurs est mariée?	{ which of his sisters is married?



107. OF THE RELATIVE PRONOUN *où*.

*Où* is a relative pronoun when used instead of *lequel*, *laquelle*, *lesquels*, *lesquelles*, preceded by a preposition. This pronoun is employed only in speaking of things, and is of both genders and numbers.

## EXAMPLES.

L'instant où nous naissons est un pas vers la mort.—(VOLTAIRE.)	<i>The instant in which we are born is a step towards death.</i>
La maison où je demeure. (ACAD.)	<i>The house in which I live.</i>
Les pays par où j'ai passé.	<i>The countries through which I have passed.</i>

## EXERCISE XXXIII.

The man *who* reasons. — The lady *whom* I see. — The sciences *to which* he applies. — Here is the gentleman — f. pl. *s'applique.* *Voici monsieur of whom* you speak. — With *whom* do you live? — *What parlez.* *Avec demeurez-vous?* (shall we do) to-day? — *Which* (do you like) best of those *ferons-nous aujourd'hui?* *aimez-vous* three pictures? — The child *to whom* everything yields *tableau m.* *enfant m.* *tout cède* is the most unhappy. — The state *in which* I find myself. *malheureux.* *état m.* *me trouve.*

108. OF THE RELATIVE PRONOUN *en*.

*En*, a pronoun of both genders and numbers, is sometimes used in speaking of persons, although it is chiefly said of things, and places: its principal function is to avoid the repetition of a word or phrase already expressed. It signifies *of him*, *of her*, *of it*, *from it*, *of them*, *some of it*, *some of them*, *any*, &c.

## EXAMPLES.

Il aime les auteurs français, il <i>en</i> parle souvent.	<i>He likes French authors, he often speaks of them.</i>
Cette maladie est dangereuse, il pourrait <i>en</i> mourir.	<i>That illness is dangerous, he might die of it.</i>
A-t-il des protecteurs? oui, il <i>en</i> a de très-puissants.	<i>Has he any protectors? yes, he has some very powerful ones.</i>
Vous parlez d'argent, <i>en</i> avez-vous? oui, j' <i>en</i> ai.	<i>You talk of money, have you any? yes, I have some.</i>

109. OF THE RELATIVE PRONOUN *y*.

*Y*, a pronoun of both genders and numbers, is sometimes employed with reference to persons, but its use is almost strictly confined to things: it corresponds to the English *to him, to her, to it, to them, in it, in them, therein, &c.*

## EXAMPLES.

Je connais cet homme, je ne m'y fie pas.	<i>I know that man, I do not trust to him.</i>
Il aime l'étude et s'y livre entièrement.	<i>He loves study, and devotes himself entirely to it.</i>
J'ai reçu sa lettre, j'y répondrai.	<i>I have received his letter, I shall answer (to) it.</i>
Vos raisons sont bonnes, je m'y rends.	<i>Your reasons are good, I yield to them.</i>
J'y ai remarqué quelques fautes.	<i>I observed some faults in it, or in them.</i>

~~25~~ Some Grammarians class *en* and *y* among the personal pronouns.

*N.B.*—The pronouns *en* and *y* are always placed before the verb, except with an Imperative affirmative.

[See, in the Chapter on the Adverb, what is said upon *y*, adverb.]

## EXERCISE XXXIV.

Read his letter, and tell me what you think of it. —  
*Lisez lettre f. dites-moi ce que pensez*  
 Give me that, I (am in want) of it. — Are you going to  
*Donnez-moi ai besoin Allez-vous*  
 Edinburgh? I come from it. — (Here are) strawberries, will  
*Edimbourg viens Voici 32 fraise voulez*  
 you have any? — I will give you some. — Take some  
*\* donnerai Prenez*  
 more. — I consent to it. — Put your signature to it. —  
*davantage. consens Mettez —*  
 Those arguments are conclusive; I see no reply  
*— m. sont concluant n' vois point de réplique*  
 to them. — The undertaking is difficult, but you  
*entreprise f. difficile mais*  
 (will succeed) in it. — They will gain nothing (by it).  
*réussirez n' gagneront rien y*

## 110. § V. OF INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

Some pronouns are called *Indefinite*, because they denote persons or things in an indefinite or general manner.

They are the following: *on, quiconque, quelqu'un, chacun, autrui, personne, l'un l'autre, l'un et l'autre.*

111. *ON, one, they, we, people, it, &c.* *On* is a contraction of the Latin word *homo*, man. This pronoun is of very extensive use in the French language; it is employed when speaking in general terms, without designating any particular person: it has commonly a plural meaning, but always requires the verb to be in the third person singular.

## EXAMPLES.

ON ne peut lire Télémaque sans devenir meilleur.	One cannot read Telemachus without becoming better.
ON dit que nous aurons bientôt la paix.	They, or people, say we shall soon have peace.
ON pense que la nouvelle est vraie.	It is thought that the news is true.
ON apprend mieux ce que l'ON comprend, que ce que l'ON ne comprend pas.	We learn better what we understand, than what we do not.

REMARK.—For the sake of euphony, the pronoun *on* takes an *l*, with an apostrophe (*l'*), after the words *et, si, où, que, qui, and quoi*; as,

Et l'on dit, Si l'on savait, Où l'on veut, Ce que l'on comprend, Ceux à qui l'on doit,	} instead of {	et on dit. si on savait. où on veut. ce qu'on comprend. ceux à qui on doit.

However, *on* remains the same when the word following it is *le, la, or les*; we say: *et on le dit, si on le savait, and not et l'on le dit, si l'on le savait.*

*L'on* for *on* should never begin a sentence, although some authors have not always observed this rule.

112. *QUICONQUE, whoever, whosoever, any person whatever.* This pronoun has no plural, and is used only with reference to persons; as,

Quiconque a dit cela n'a pas dit la vérité.	Whoever said so, has not spoken the truth.
Quiconque me trompera sera puni.	Whoever deceives me shall be [punished].

*Quiconque* is generally masculine; however, when it evidently relates to a female, the adjective is put in the feminine; as,

Mesdames, <i>quiconque</i> de vous sera assez <i>hardie</i> pour médire de moi, je l'en ferai repentir.—(ACAD.)		Ladies, whoever of you shall be bold enough to speak ill of me, I will make her repent it.
---	--	--

### 113. QUELQU'UN, *somebody, some one.*

#### EXAMPLES.

J'attends <i>quelqu'un</i> .		I wait for somebody.
<i>Quelqu'un</i> me l'a dit.		Somebody told me so.

This pronoun takes gender and number; thus:—

<i>Quelqu'un, m.</i>	} some one, somebody.
<i>Quelqu'une, f.</i>	
<i>Quelques-uns, m. pl.</i>	} some, several, out of a greater number.
<i>Quelques-unes, f. pl.</i>	

<i>Quelqu'un</i> de ces messieurs.		Some one of these gentlemen.
<i>Quelqu'une</i> de ces dames.		Some one of these ladies.
<i>Quelqu'un</i> m'a dit.		Somebody told me.
J'ai lu <i>quelques-uns</i> de ces livres.		I have read some of those books.
Connaissez-vous <i>quelques-unes</i> de ces dames?		Do you know any of those la- dies?
Oui, j'en connais <i>quelques-unes</i> .		Yes, I know some of them.

### 114. CHACUN, *m.*, CHACUNE, *f.*, *every one, each*; without plural.

<i>Chacun</i> vit à sa manière.		Every one lives after his own way.
<i>Chacune</i> de ces demoiselles.		Each of these young ladies.

*Un chacun*, much used by old writers, is now obsolete.

[See page 55, what is said on *chaque*, every, each.]

115. AUTRUI, *others, other people*. (From the Latin *alterius*, gen. of *alter*, other.) This pronoun is masculine, and has no plural; it is generally preceded by a preposition, and is used in speaking of persons only.

La charité se réjouit du bonheur d'autrui.		Charity rejoices in the happiness of others.
Ne faites pas à autrui ce que vous ne voudriez pas qu'on vous fît.		Do not to others, what you would not wish others to do to you.

116. PERSONNE. This pronoun is always masculine and singular. When it means *no person, nobody, no one*, it requires the negative *ne* before the verb.

## EXAMPLES.

<i>Personne ne sera assez hardi.</i>		<i>Nobody will be bold enough.</i>
<i>Je n'ai vu personne.</i>		<i>I have seen nobody.</i>

When *personne* is used without a negative in interrogative sentences, and those expressing doubt and uncertainty, it means *any person, any body, any one*.

## EXAMPLES.

<i>Y a-t-il personne d'assez hardi ?</i>		<i>Is there any body bold enough ?</i>
<i>Je doute que personne y réussisse.—(ACAD.)</i>		<i>I doubt whether any one will succeed in it.</i>

PERSONNE, as a noun, is always feminine, and is used both in the singular and plural; it means *a person, a man or woman, people*.

## EXAMPLES.

<i>C'est une personne de mérite.</i>		<i>He is a man of merit.</i>
<i>C'est une personne très-instruite.</i>		<i>She is a very well-informed person.</i>
<i>Des personnes bien intentionnées.</i>		<i>Well-intentioned people.</i>

117. L'UN L'AUTRE, *m.*, L'UNE L'AUTRE, *f.*; LES UNS LES AUTRES, *m. pl.*, LES UNES LES AUTRES, *f. pl.*; *one another, each other*.

This pronoun is employed in speaking of persons and things. *L'un l'autre* is used with reference to two, and *les uns les autres* with reference to more than two.

If there be any preposition, it must be placed between *l'un l'autre*, and not before, as is the case in English before *one another* or *each other*.

## EXAMPLES.

<i>Ils se louent l'un l'autre.</i>		<i>They praise one another.</i>
<i>Les soldats s'excitaient les uns les autres.</i>		<i>The soldiers excited one another.</i>
<i>Ils parlent mal l'un de l'autre.</i>		<i>They speak ill of each other.</i>

118. L'UN ET L'AUTRE, *m.*, L'UNE ET L'AUTRE, *f.*; LES UNS ET LES AUTRES, *m. pl.*, LES UNES ET LES AUTRES, *f. pl.*; *the one and the other, both*.

## EXAMPLES.

<i>L'un et l'autre sont bons.</i>	[fait.]	<i>Both are good.</i>
<i>L'une et l'autre rapportent le même</i>		<i>Both relate the same circumstance.</i>
<i>Ils se réunissaient les uns et les autres contre l'ennemi.</i>		<i>They all united against the enemy.</i>

When *l'un et l'autre* is followed by a noun, it is no longer an indefinite pronoun, but an adjective; as, *l'un et l'autre* CHEVAL, both horses; *l'une et l'autre* SAISON, both seasons; *l'une et l'autre* DEMANDE, both requests.

Many Grammarians class *TEL* among the *Indefinite pronouns*; but it is a real adjective, and agrees in gender and number with a noun either expressed or understood; as, *une telle action*, such an action; *de tels animaux*, such animals; *tel* (*homme* understood) *rit aujourd'hui*, such as laughs to-day; *telle* (*femme* understood) *se croit belle*, such a one thinks herself beautiful.

[For any further explanation respecting the Pronouns, see the Syntax.]

### EXERCISE XXXV.

One has often need of a (person inferior) to oneself.--  
*a souvent besoin plus petit m. que soi.*

They say he is learned — God (will punish) whosoever  
*dit qu' est Dieu punira*

transgresses his laws. — Somebody has taken my umbrella. —  
*transgresse loi a pris parapluie m.*

Every one (will read) in his turn. — We (must not) covet  
*lira à tour m. Il ne faut pas désirer*

the property of other people. — Pride becomes nobody.  
*bien m. art. orgueil m. convient à*

### EXERCISE XXXVI.

Fire and water destroy each other. — I have  
*art. feu m. art. eau f. se détruisent ai*

read the Iliad and the Eneid, both have delighted me. —  
*lu Iliade f. Énéide f. ont enchanté*

People who have (little to do) are very great talkers;  
*art. gens m. peu d'affaires de parleur*

the less one thinks, the more one speaks. — Each of them resolved  
*moins pense plus parle. résolut*

to live as a gentleman. — He who chooses badly for himself,  
*de vivre en \* gentilhomme. \* choisit soi*

chooses badly for others. — Some assert the contrary.  
*assurent contraire m.*

## 119. OF INDEFINITE PRONOMINAL ADJECTIVES.

We shall treat here of the *indefinite pronominal adjectives*, on account of their affinity with the indefinite pronouns; these adjectives are: *chaque, nul, aucun, pas un, même, plusieurs, tout, quelconque, quel, quelque*.

120. **CHAQUE**, *every, each*, is of both genders, and without plural. This word must not be confounded with *chacun*; *chaque* is always followed by a noun; *chacun*, on the contrary, is never joined to a noun (see page 52).

## EXAMPLES.

<i>Chaque</i> âge a ses plaisirs.		Every age has its pleasures.
<i>Chaque</i> science a ses principes.		Every science has its principles.

121. **NUL**, *m.*, **NULLE**, *f.*; **AUCUN**, *m.*, **AUCUNE**, *f.*; **PAS UN**, *m.*, **PAS UNE**, *f.*; *none, no, no one, not one, not any*.

These expressions have nearly the same meaning when accompanied by the negative *ne* placed before the verb.

## EXAMPLES.

<i>Nul</i> homme n'est parfait.		No man is perfect.
Vous n'avez <i>aucune</i> preuve; non, <i>pas une</i> .		You have no proof; no, not one.

*N.B.*—*No*, in answer to a question, is translated by *non*.

122. **MÊME**, *same, self, like, alike*; plural, **MÊMES**; of both genders.

## EXAMPLES.

C'est le <i>même</i> homme, la <i>même</i> personne.		It is the same man, the same person.
Les cendres du berger et du roi sont les <i>mêmes</i> .		The ashes of the shepherd and the king are alike.

*Même* is often placed after a substantive or a pronoun, to give more energy to the expression.

## EXAMPLES.

C'est la bonté <i>même</i> .		She is kindness itself.
Le roi lui- <i>même</i> s'y opposa.		The king himself opposed it.
Nous le ferons nous- <i>mêmes</i> .		We will do it ourselves.

*Même* is also an adverb; then it is invariable, and means *even, also*. This is the *etiam* of the Latin.

## EXAMPLE.

Les femmes et même les enfants		Women and even children were
furent tués.		killed.

123. **PLUSIEURS**, *several, many*. It is of both genders and has no singular.

## EXAMPLES.

<i>Plusieurs</i> historiens ont raconté.		Several <i>historians</i> have related.
En <i>plusieurs</i> occasions.		On several occasions.
<i>Plusieurs</i> de vos amis.		Many of your friends.

124. **TOUT**. There are various kinds of this word.

(1.) *Tout*, indefinite pronominal adjective, meaning *every, each, any, any one*; the *quisque* of the Latin. In this sense, *tout* never takes an article nor a pronoun, and is always singular. — EXAMPLES :

<i>Tout</i> citoyen doit servir son pays.		Every citizen ought to serve his country.
<i>Toute</i> peine mérite salaire.—(Ac.)		Every labour deserves a reward.

(2.) *Tout*, adjective, *all, whole*; in Latin, *totus, omnis* :

<i>Tout</i> le monde; <i>toute</i> la terre;		All the world; all the earth; all
<i>tous</i> les hommes.		men.
<i>Tout</i> l'homme ne meurt pas.		The whole man does not die.

(3.) *Tout*, adverb, *quite, entirely, however*; in Latin, *omnino, plane* :

Elle fut <i>tout</i> étonnée.		She was quite astonished.
Nos vaisseaux sont <i>tout</i> prêts.		Our vessels are quite ready.

*Tout*, adverb, becomes adjective, or at least agrees like one, in gender and number, when immediately followed by an adjective or participle feminine, beginning with a consonant, or *h* aspirate; as,

Elle était <i>toute</i> changée.		She was quite altered.
Elle en est <i>toute</i> honteuse.		She is quite ashamed of it.
<i>Toutes</i> spirituelles qu'elles sont.		Witty as they are.

(4.) *Tout*, substantive masculine, *the whole*; the *totum* of the Latin :

Ne prenez pas le <i>tout</i> .		Do not take the whole.
--------------------------------	--	------------------------

125. **QUELCONQUE**, *whatever, whatsoever*. When used with a negative, it is nearly synonymous with *nul, aucun*; it is invariable, and is always placed after a noun; as,

Il n'y a homme <i>quelconque</i> .		There is no man whatever.
Il n'y a raison <i>quelconque</i> .		There is no reason whatsoever.

When used without a negative, it admits of a plural; as,  
Deux points *quelconques*.—(Acad.) | Two points whatsoever.



126. QUEL, *m.*, QUELLE, *f.*; QUELS, *m. pl.*, QUELLES, *f. pl.*, *what*. This pronominal adjective is used principally in interrogations and exclamations, or to express uncertainty and doubt. It is always followed by a noun expressed or understood, with which it agrees in gender and number.

## EXAMPLES.

<i>Quel maître?—Quelle dame?</i>	<i>What master?—What lady?</i>
<i>Quels livres, quelles brochures lisez-vous?</i>	<i>What books, what pamphlets do you read?</i>
<i>Quel bonheur!</i>	<i>What happiness!</i>
<i>Quel homme vous êtes!</i>	<i>What a man you are!</i>
<i>Il ne sait quel parti prendre.</i>	<i>He knows not what course to take.</i>
<i>J'ai des nouvelles à vous apprendre.</i>	<i>I have news to tell you.—What is it?</i>
<i>—Quelles (nouvelles) sont-elles?</i>	

127. QUELQUE, *s.*, QUELQUES, *pl.*, *some*, is of both genders, and is always joined to a noun.

## EXAMPLES.

<i>Quelque auteur en a parlé.</i>	<i>Some author has mentioned it.</i>
<i>Il y a quelques difficultés.</i>	<i>There are some difficulties.</i>

*Quelque*, in this sense, corresponds to the *aliquis* of the Latin.—(*Acad.*, and the modern Grammarians.)

*Quelque*, with *que* before the succeeding verb, means *whatever*. This is the *quantuscunque*, *quantacunque* of the Latin.

## EXAMPLES.

<i>Quelque soin qu'on prenne.</i>	<i>Whatever care one may take.</i>
<i>Quelque raison qu'il ait.</i>	<i>Whatever reason he may have.</i>
<i>Quelques efforts que vous fassiez.</i>	<i>Whatever efforts you may make.</i>

But should *quelque* be followed by the verb *être*, to be, it is written in two words (*quel que*); in this case, *quel* must agree in gender and number with the subject of the verb. This expression answers to the *qualiscunque* of the Latin.

## EXAMPLES.

<i>Quelle que soit votre intention.</i>	<i>Whatever your intention may be.</i>
<i>Quels que soient vos desseins.</i>	<i>Whatever your designs may be.</i>
<i>Quelles que soient vos vues. (ACAD.)</i>	<i>Whatever your views may be.</i>

*Quelque*, followed by an adverb or an adjective without a noun, is considered as an adverb, and is invariable; it corresponds to the English *however*, *howsoever*, and to the Latin adverb *quantumvis*; as,

<i>Quelque bien écrits que soient ces ouvrages, ils ont peu de succès.</i>	However well written these works may be, they have little success.
<i>Quelque puissants qu'ils soient, je ne les crains point.—(ACAD.)</i>	However powerful they may be, I do not fear them.

*Quelque*, when immediately followed by a cardinal number, is also considered as an adverb; then, it means *about*, *nearly*, *some*, and answers to the *circiter* of the Latin. In this sense, *quelque* is of the familiar style; as,

Alexandre perdit <i>quelque</i> trois cents hommes, lorsqu'il défit Porus.	Alexander lost some three hundred men, when he defeated Porus.
--	--

## EXERCISE XXXVII.

*Every country* has its customs.—*No one* is dissatisfied with  
*pays m. a coutume n'est mécontent de*  
 his own understanding.—*No reason* can justify a  
 \* *jugement m. raison f. ne peut justifier le*  
 falsehood. — It is the same sun that (gives light to) all  
*mensonge m. C'est soleil m. qui éclaire*  
 the nations of the earth. — It is virtue itself.—Divide the  
 — *f. pl. terre f. art. vertu f. Divisez*  
*whole into several parts.*—The whole fleet is at sea.—*Every*  
*en partie <sup>2</sup> <sup>1</sup> flotte f. est en mer.*  
 truth (is not) proper (to be told).—Any pretext whatever.  
*vérité f. n'est pas bon à dire. Un prétexte m.*

## EXERCISE XXXVIII.

*No one* is satisfied with his fortune, nor dissatisfied with his  
*n' content de — f. ni*  
 own wit. — *No road* of flowers conducts to glory.—  
 \* *esprit m. chemin m. ne conduit art. 78*  
 What lesson have you learnt?—(There are) some defects in  
*leçon f. avez- apprise? Il y a défaut dans*  
 that picture. — Whatever your talents (may be), you  
*tableau m. — m. pl. soient*  
 (will not succeed) without application.—She is quite wet. —  
*ne réussirez pas sans — mouillée*  
 These ladies were quite surprised to see him.  
*furent surprises de <sup>2</sup>voir <sup>1</sup>*

## CHAPTER V.

## OF THE VERB.

128. FRENCH VERBS are divided into five kinds: *Active*, *Passive*, *Neuter*, *Pronominal*, and *Impersonal*, or rather *Unipersonal*, besides the two Auxiliary Verbs, *avoir*, to have, and *être*, to be.

There are FOUR CONJUGATIONS in French, which are distinguished by the termination of the Present of the Infinitive.

The first	ends in ER,	as, <i>parler</i> ,	to speak.
... second	... IR,	... <i>finir</i> ,	to finish.
... third	... OIR,	... <i>recevoir</i> ,	to receive.
... fourth	... RE,	... <i>vendre</i> ,	to sell.

In each of these Conjugations, there are *regular*, *irregular*, and *defective* verbs.

A verb is called *regular*, when all its tenses take exactly the terminations of one of the four model conjugations, which are inserted hereafter in their proper places. A verb is called *irregular*, when, in some of its tenses, it takes terminations different from those of the conjugation to which it belongs; and it is termed *defective*, when it is not used in some tenses or persons.

As the compound tenses of all verbs are formed by the help of *avoir*, to have, and *être*, to be, for which reason these two are called *auxiliary* verbs, they take precedence of the four principal Conjugations, instead of being classed among the irregular verbs to which they belong.

"It may not," says Lindley Murray, "be generally proper for young persons beginning the study of grammar, to commit to memory all the tenses of the verbs. If the *simple* tenses be committed to memory, and the rest carefully perused, the business will not be tedious to the scholars, and their progress will be rendered more obvious and pleasing."

Without wishing to dictate any particular method of tuition, we think the preceding remark of the celebrated English Grammarian peculiarly applicable to the learning of French verbs. Let the scholar be first made familiar with the *simple* tenses, and he will find the rest an extremely easy task.

The most part of Anglo-French Grammarians mix the simple and compound tenses; in this Grammar they are kept separate, but presented at one view, side by side; so that while the student is learning a *simple* tense, he also forms an acquaintance with its *compound*.

## 129. CONJUGATION OF THE AUXILIARY VERB

A VOIR, TO HAVE.

## INFINITIVE.

## PRESENT.

Avoir, *to have.*

PARTICIPLE PRESENT.

Ayant, *having.*

## PAST.

| Avoir eu, *to have had.*

COMPOUND OF PARTICIPLE PRESENT.

| Ayant eu, *having had.*PARTICIPLE PAST.—Eu, *m., eue, f., had.*

## INDICATIVE.

*Simple Tenses.*

## PRESENT.

J'ai,*	<i>I have.</i>
tu as,	<i>thou hast.</i>
il, or elle a,	<i>he, or she has.</i>
nous avons,	<i>we have.</i>
vous avez,†	<i>you have.</i>
ils, or elles ont,	<i>they have.</i>

## IMPERFECT.

J'avais,	<i>I had.</i>
tu avais,	<i>thou hadst.</i>
il avait,	<i>he had.</i>
nous avions,	<i>we had.</i>
vous aviez,	<i>you had.</i>
ils avaient,	<i>they had.</i>

## PRETERITE DEFINITE.

J'eus,‡	<i>I had.</i>
tu eus,	<i>thou hadst.</i>
il eut,	<i>he had.</i>
nous eûmes.§	<i>we had.</i>
vous eûtes,§	<i>you had.</i>
ils eurent,	<i>they had.</i>

*Compound Tenses.*

## PRETERITE INDEFINITE.

J'ai eu,	<i>I have had.</i>
tu as eu,	<i>thou hast had.</i>
il a eu,	<i>he has had.</i>
nous avons eu,	<i>we have had.</i>
vous avez eu,	<i>you have had.</i>
ils ont eu,	<i>they have had.</i>

## PLUPERFECT.

J'avais eu,	<i>I had had.</i>
tu avais eu,	<i>thou hadst had.</i>
il avait eu,	<i>he had had.</i>
nous avions eu,	<i>we had had.</i>
vous aviez eu,	<i>you had had.</i>
ils avaient eu,	<i>they had had.</i>

## PRETERITE ANTERIOR.

J'eus eu,	<i>I had had.</i>
tu eus eu,	<i>thou hadst had.</i>
il eut eu,	<i>he had had.</i>
nous eûmes eu,	<i>we had had.</i>
vous eûtes eu,	<i>you had had.</i>
ils eurent eu,	<i>they had had.</i>

\* We write *j'ai*, and pronounce *jê*.† All the second persons plural of the *simple tenses* end with *z* or *s*—with *z*, when the preceding *e* is pronounced with the sound of *a* in the English alphabet; as, *vous avez*, *vous parliez*—and with *s*, when the same *e* is not pronounced at all; as, *vous eûtes*, *vous faites*, &c.‡ *J'eus* is pronounced *j'u*.§ The first and second person plural of the *Præterite Definite* of all verbs take a circumflex accent over the vowel that terminates the last syllable but one.

*Simple Tenses.**Compound Tenses.*

## FUTURE ABSOLUTE.

J'aurai,	<i>I shall have.</i>
tu auras,	<i>thou shalt have.</i>
il aura,	<i>he shall have.</i>
nous aurons,	<i>we shall have.</i>
vous aurez,	<i>you shall have.</i>
ils auront,	<i>they shall have.</i>

## FUTURE ANTERIOR.

J'aurai eu,	<i>I shall</i>
tu auras eu,	<i>thou shalt</i>
il aura eu,	<i>he shall</i>
nous aurons eu,	<i>we shall</i>
vous aurez eu,	<i>you shall</i>
ils auront eu,	<i>they shall</i>

*have had.*

## CONDITIONAL.

## PRESENT.

J'aurais,	<i>I should have.</i>
tu aurais,	<i>thou shouldst have.</i>
il aurait,	<i>he should have.</i>
nous aurions,	<i>we should have.</i>
vous auriez,	<i>you should have.</i>
ils auraient,	<i>they should have.</i>

## PAST.

J'aurais eu,	<i>I should</i>
tu aurais eu,	<i>thou shouldst</i>
il aurait eu,	<i>he should</i>
nous aurions eu,	<i>we should</i>
vous auriez eu,	<i>you should</i>
ils auraient eu,	<i>they should</i>

*have had.*

## IMPERATIVE.

Aie,	<i>Have (thou).</i>
qu'il ait,	<i>let him have.</i>
ayons,	<i>let us have.</i>
ayez,	<i>have (ye).</i>
qu'ils aient,	<i>let them have.</i>

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

## PRESENT.

Que j'aie,	<i>That I may</i>
que tu aies,	<i>that thou mayst</i>
qu'il ait,	<i>that he may</i>
que nous ayons,	<i>that we may</i>
que vous ayez,	<i>that you may</i>
qu'ils aient,	<i>that they may</i>

Que j'aie eu,	<i>That I may</i>
que tu aies eu,	<i>that thou mayst</i>
qu'il ait eu,	<i>that he may</i>
que nous ayons eu,	<i>that we may</i>
que vous ayez eu,	<i>that you may</i>
qu'ils aient eu,	<i>that they may</i>

*have had.*

## IMPERFECT.

Que j'eusse,	<i>That I might</i>
que tu eusses,	<i>that thou mightst</i>
qu'il eût,*	<i>that he might</i>
que nous eussions,	<i>that we might</i>
que vous eussiez,	<i>that you might</i>
qu'ils eussent,	<i>that they might</i>

Que j'eusse eu,	<i>That I might</i>
que tu eusses eu,	<i>that thou mightst</i>
qu'il eût eu,	<i>that he might</i>
que nous eussions eu,	<i>that we might</i>
que vous eussiez eu,	<i>that you might</i>
qu'ils eussent eu,†	<i>that they might</i>

*have had.*

## PLUPERFECT.

\* The third person singular of the Imperfect of the Subjunctive of all verbs takes a circumflex accent over the vowel that precedes the final *t*; as, *qu'il eût*, *qu'il chantât*, *qu'il finît*, *qu'il vécût*, &c.

† By omitting *que*, this tense is also used for the Conditional past.

130. REMARK I. In the following Exercises, the noun being used in a partitive sense, it will be necessary to place before the noun either *du*, *de la*, *de l'*, or *des*, according to the directions given, Rule III., page 16.

## EXERCISE XXXIX.

INDICATIVE. PRES.—I have money.—He has wealth.—  
*argent m. bien m.*

She has patience and sweetness.—We have relations and  
 — f. *douceur f. parent*

friends.—You have gold and silver.—They have ambition  
*ami or m. argent m. m. — f.*

and perseverance.—They have pomegranates and pineapples.  
*persévérance f. f. grenade f. ananas m.*

IMPERF.—We had umbrellas and cloaks.—You had  
*parapluie m. manteau m.*

muskets, rifles, pistols, and artillery.—They had  
*fusil m. carabine f. pistolet m. artillerie f.*

swords, lances, pikes, pitchforks, bows, and arrows.  
*épée f. — f. pique f. fourche f. arc m. flèche f.*

PRETERITE DEFIN.—I had strawberries.—She had raspberries.  
*fraise f. framboise f.*

We had gooseberries.—You had cherries.—They had grapes.  
*groseille f. cerise f. f. raisin m.*

## EXERCISE XL.

Peter has talent and experience.—You have courage and  
*Pierre — m. expérience f. — m.*

firmness.—John and James have walnuts and filberts.—Jane  
*fermeté f. Jean Jacques noix f. aveline f. Jeanne*

had prudence and riches.—He has had good luck.—We  
 ind-2 — f. *richesse pl. bonheur m.*

shall have soup or fish.—Andrew shall have oranges and  
*soupe f. poisson m. André — f.*

lemons.—Louisa and Martha shall have figs and plums.—  
*citron m. 79 79 figue f. prune f.*

That we may have had snow, rain, and wind.—Having  
*neige f. pluie f. vent m.*

eyes, see ye not? Having ears, hear ye not?  
 40 *ne voyez- point? oreille f. n'entendez-*

131. REMARK II.—The addition of an adjective, *after* the noun, makes no difference as to the use of *du, de la, de l', des*. But, the adjective must agree with the noun, in gender and number.—See Rules, p. 20 and 25.

## EXERCISE XLI.

INDIC. PRES.—I have red ink. —She has clear and  
<sup>2</sup>rouge <sup>1</sup>encre f. <sup>2</sup>clair

just ideas.—We have ripe pears.—You have sincere friends.  
<sup>2</sup>juste <sup>1</sup>idée f. <sup>2</sup>mûr <sup>1</sup>poire f. <sup>2</sup>sincère <sup>1</sup>

—Margaret and Sophia have green parasols and purple shawls.  
*Marguerite Sophie* <sup>2</sup>vert <sup>1</sup>—m. <sup>2</sup>violet <sup>1</sup>châlem.

FUT. ABS.—We shall have white curtains. —You will have  
<sup>2</sup>blanc <sup>1</sup>rideau m.

true and real pleasures. — They will have new houses.  
<sup>2</sup>vrai <sup>3</sup>réel <sup>1</sup>plaisir m. <sup>2</sup>neuf <sup>1</sup>maison f.

SUBJ. PRES.—In order that I may have ready money.—  
*Afin* <sup>2</sup>comptant <sup>1</sup>

That you may have enlightened judges and faithful servants.  
<sup>2</sup>éclairé <sup>1</sup>juge m. <sup>2</sup>fidèle <sup>1</sup>domestique

132. REMARK III.—But, if the adjective comes *before* the noun, then, only *de, or d',* is to be used before the adjective, instead of *du, de la, de l', des*, without any regard to the gender or number of the noun.

I have some good snuff. —He has good brandy, and ex-  
<sup>47</sup>tabac m. <sup>eau-de-vie</sup> f.

cellent wine. — We have beautiful walks in our town.—  
<sup>77</sup>vin m. <sup>beau</sup> <sup>promenade</sup> f. <sup>dans</sup>

She had great qualities.—We shall have had long sufferings.—  
<sup>ind-2</sup>grand <sup>qualité</sup> f. <sup>58</sup>souffrance f.

I should have fine pictures and pretty engravings.—You would  
<sup>58</sup>tableau m. <sup>joli</sup> <sup>gravure</sup> f.

have great advantages.—That you may have good reasons to  
<sup>avantage</sup> m. <sup>raison</sup> f.

give him.— Have you not better pens to lend me?—  
<sup>donner lui</sup> N' <sup>pas</sup> <sup>70</sup>plume f. <sup>à prêter</sup>

I have very good pens, but bad ink, and bad paper.  
<sup>très</sup> <sup>mais</sup> mauvais <sup>papier</sup> m.

*Recapitulatory EXERCISE upon the three foregoing Remarks.*

He has credit, power, authority, and riches. — We  
*crédit m. puissance f. autorité f. richesse f. pl.*  
 shall have wine, beer, and cider. — Let us have politeness. —  
*bière f. cidre m. politesse f.*  
 We have white bread, delicate meat, and delicious wines. —  
*<sup>2</sup>blanc <sup>1</sup>pain m. <sup>2</sup>délicat <sup>1</sup>viande f. <sup>2</sup>délicieux <sup>1</sup>*  
 That they may have prepossessing manners. — She has excellent  
*<sup>2</sup>prévenant <sup>1</sup>manière f.*  
 qualities. — They have small apricots, but large peaches.  
*petit abricot m. gros pêche f.*

## 133. CONJUGATION OF THE AUXILIARY VERB

*ÊTRE*, TO BE.

## INFINITIVE.

## PRESENT.

Être, *to be.*

## PAST.

| Avoir été, *to have been.*

## PARTICIPLE PRESENT.

Étant, *being.*

## COMPOUND OF PARTICIPLE PRESENT.

| Ayant été, *having been.*PARTICIPLE PAST. — *Été,\* been.*

## INDICATIVE.

*Simple Tenses.*

## PRESENT.

Je suis,	<i>I am.</i>
tu es,	<i>thou art.</i>
il, or elle est,	<i>he, or she is.</i>
nous sommes,	<i>we are.</i>
vous êtes,	<i>you are.</i>
ils, or elles sont,	<i>they are.</i>

*Compound Tenses.*

## PRETERITE INDEFINITE.

J'ai été,	<i>I have been.</i>
tu as été,	<i>thou hast been.</i>
il a été,	<i>he has been.</i>
nous avons été,	<i>we have been.</i>
vous avez été,	<i>you have been.</i>
ils ont été,	<i>they have been.</i>

## IMPERFECT.

J'étais,	<i>I was.</i>
tu étais,	<i>thou wast.</i>
il était,	<i>he was.</i>
nous étions,	<i>we were.</i>
vous étiez,	<i>you were.</i>
ils étaient,	<i>they were.</i>

## PLUPERFECT.

J'avais été,	<i>I had been.</i>
tu avais été,	<i>thou hadst been.</i>
il avait été,	<i>he had been.</i>
nous avions été,	<i>we had been.</i>
vous aviez été,	<i>you had been.</i>
ils avaient été,	<i>they had been.</i>

\* *Été* never changes its termination.



*Simple Tenses.*

*Compound Tenses.*

PRETERITE DEFINITE.

Je fus,	<i>I was.</i>
tu fus,	<i>thou wast.</i>
il fut,	<i>he was.</i>
nous fûmes,	<i>we were.</i>
vous fûtes,	<i>you were.</i>
ils furent,	<i>they were.</i>

PRETERITE ANTERIOR.

J'eus été,	<i>I had been.</i>
tu eus été,	<i>thou hadst been.</i>
il eut été,	<i>he had been.</i>
nous eûmes été,	<i>we had been.</i>
vous eûtes été,	<i>you had been.</i>
ils eurent été,	<i>they had been.</i>

FUTURE ABSOLUTE.

Je serai,	<i>I shall be.</i>
tu seras,	<i>thou shalt be.</i>
il sera,	<i>he shall be.</i>
nous serons,	<i>we shall be.</i>
vous serez,	<i>you shall be.</i>
ils seront,	<i>they shall be.</i>

FUTURE ANTERIOR.

J'aurai été,	<i>I shall have</i>	} <i>been.</i>
tu auras été,	<i>thou shalt have</i>	
il aura été,	<i>he shall have</i>	
nous aurons été,	<i>we shall have</i>	
vous aurez été,	<i>you shall have</i>	
ils auront été,	<i>they shall have</i>	

CONDITIONAL.

PRESENT.

Je serais,	<i>I should be.</i>
tu serais,	<i>thou shouldst be.</i>
il serait,	<i>he should be.</i>
nous serions,	<i>we should be.</i>
vous seriez,	<i>you should be.</i>
ils seraient,	<i>they should be.</i>

PAST.

J'aurais été,	<i>I should have</i>	} <i>been.</i>
tu aurais été,	<i>thou shouldst have</i>	
il aurait été,	<i>he should have</i>	
nous aurions été,	<i>we should have</i>	
vous auriez été,	<i>you should have</i>	
ils auraient été,	<i>they should have</i>	

IMPERATIVE.

Sois,	<i>Be (thou).</i>
qu'il soit,	<i>let him be.</i>
soyons,	<i>let us be.</i>
soyez,	<i>be (you).</i>
qu'ils soient.	<i>let them be.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

Que je sois,	<i>That I may be.</i>
que tu sois,	<i>that thou mayst be.</i>
qu'il soit,	<i>that he may be.</i>
que nous soyons,	<i>that we may be.</i>
que vous soyez,	<i>that you may be.</i>
qu'ils soient,	<i>that they may be.</i>

PRETERITE.

Que j'aie été,	<i>That I may</i>	} <i>have been.</i>
que tu aies été,	<i>that thou mayst</i>	
qu'il ait été,	<i>that he may</i>	
que nous ayons été,	<i>that we may</i>	
que vous ayez été,	<i>that you may</i>	
qu'ils aient été,	<i>that they may</i>	

IMPERFECT.

Que je fusse,	<i>That I might be.</i>
que tu fusses,	<i>that thou mightst be.</i>
qu'il fût,	<i>that he might be.</i>
que nous fussions,	<i>that we might be.</i>
que vous fussiez,	<i>that you might be.</i>
qu'ils fussent,	<i>that they might be.</i>

PLUPERFECT.

Que j'eusse été,	<i>That I might</i>	} <i>have been.</i>
que tu eusses été,	<i>that thou mightst</i>	
qu'il eût été,	<i>that he might</i>	
que nous eussions été,	<i>that we might</i>	
que vous eussiez été,	<i>that you might</i>	
qu'ils eussent été,	<i>that they might</i>	

134. GENERAL RULE.—The adjective must be of the same gender and number as the noun or pronoun which is the subject of the verb *être*.—See Rules, p. 20 and 25.

## EXERCISE XLII.

INDIC. PRES.—I am ready.—She is inquisitive.—We are  
f. 47 curieux

busy. —Your sisters are careful. — Men are mortal.  
occupé soigneux art. mortel

IMPERF.—I was uneasy.—Mary was tall.—She was prudent  
f. 48 Marie grand —

and discreet.—Her manners were full of dignity.—We were  
48 manière f. plein 78 f.

all present when the thing happened.—They were absent.  
tout lorsque chose f. arriva. m.

PRET. DEF.—The country was not ungrateful to him.  
patrie f. ne point ingrat envers

—The ides of March were fatal to Julius Cæsar.  
—f. mars — Jules Cæsar.

PRET. INDEF. — Your aunts have always been good and  
toujours

charitable.— Ladies, you have not been disinterested enough.  
— Mesdames, n' pas <sup>2</sup>désintéressé <sup>1</sup>assez

## EXERCISE XLIII.

PLUPERF.—She had been too hasty.—We had been idle  
prompt paresseux  
and prodigal. —They had been economical and temperate.  
prodigue économe sobre

FUT. ABS.—His memory will be immortal.—We shall be  
mémoire f. immortel f.  
attentive and more diligent.—They will be very glad to see you.  
— plus — bien aise de voir

FUT. ANT.—She will have been proud, whimsical, and jealous.  
48 fantasque jaloux  
—They will have been very much pleased and very grateful.  
f. très \* satisfait reconnaissant

IMPERA.—Let us be poor in gold, and rich in virtues.  
pauvre en riche

— Rich people, be humane, kindhearted, and generous.  
m. pl. \* humain tendre généreux.

## OF REGULAR VERBS.

## PRELIMINARY OBSERVATIONS.

135. (1.) There are, in French, as we have already said (No. 128), but four conjugations, because all verbs terminate in the Present of the Infinitive, in one of four different manners : in *er*, *ir*, *oir*, or *re*.

136. (2.) To conjugate, with greater facility, one verb by another, it is necessary to observe, that in all verbs there are *radical* and *final* letters. The first are like the root of the verb, and contain its meaning : these never change throughout all the different tenses and persons. The *final* letters constitute the termination of the verb, and vary according to tenses and persons. Thus, in *parler*, to speak, the termination common to all verbs of the first conjugation being *er*, the radical letters are *parl*.

137. (3.) Among the simple tenses of a verb, there are five which serve to form all the others, and on that account are called *primitive*: these are, the *Present of the Infinitive*, the *Participle present*, the *Participle past*, the *Present of the Indicative*, and the *Preterite definite*.

138. From the *Present of the Infinitive* are formed :—

1st, The *Future absolute*, by changing *r*, *oir*, or *re*, into *rai*; as, *Parler*, *je parlerai*; *Finir*, *je finirai*; *Recevoir*, *je recevrai*; *Vendre*, *je vendrai*.

2d, The *Conditional present*, by changing *r*, *oir*, or *re*, into *rais*; as, *Parler*, *je parlerais*; *Finir*, *je finirais*; *Recevoir*, *je recevrais*; *Vendre*, *je vendrais*.

Some Grammarians form the Conditional present, by adding an *s* to the Future, which is the simplest way, when the Future is known.

139. From the *Participle present* are formed :—

1st, The *three persons plural of the Present of the Indicative*, by changing *ant* into *ons*, *ez*, *ent*; as, *Parlant*, *nous parlons*, *vous parlez*, *ils parlent*; *Finissant*, *nous finissons*, *vous finissez*, *ils finissent*, &c.

EXCEPTION.—Verbs of the Third Conjugation form the third person plural of the Present of the Indicative, from the first person singular of the same tense, by changing *s* into *vent*; as, *Je reçois*, *ils reçoivent*.

2d, The *Imperfect of the Indicative*, by changing *ant* into *ais*; as, *Parlant, je parlais*; *Finissant, je finissais*; *Recevant, je recevais*; *Vendant, je vendais*.

3d, The *Present of the Subjunctive*, by changing *ant* into *e*; as, *Parlant, que je parle*; *Finissant, que je finisse*; *Vendant, que je vende*.

EXCEPTION.—Verbs of the Third Conjugation form only the first and second persons plural from the Participle present; as, *Recevant, que nous recevions, que vous receviez*. The others are formed from the first person singular of the Present of the Indicative, by changing *s* into *ve*; as, *Je reçois, que je reçoive, que tu reçoives, qu'il reçoive, qu'ils reçoivent*.

140. From the *Participle past* are formed all the compound tenses, by means of the auxiliary verbs *avoir* and *être*; as, *avoir parlé, j'ai fini, j'avais reçu, j'aurai vendu*.

141. From the *Present of the Indicative* is formed the Imperative, by omitting the pronouns; as, *je parle, parle*; *nous finissons, finissons*; *vous recevez, recevez*.

142. From the *Preterite definite* is formed the Imperfect of the Subjunctive, by changing *ai* into *asse* for the first conjugation; as, *je parlai, que je parlasse*; and, by adding *se* for the three others; as, *je finis, que je finisse*; *je reçus, que je reçusse*; *je vendis, que je vendisse*.

## 143.

## TABLE

## OF THE PRIMITIVE TENSES OF REGULAR VERBS.

INFINITIVE Present.	PARTICIPLE Present.	PARTICIPLE Past.	INDICATIVE Present.	PRETERITE Definite.
FIRST CONJUGATION.				
Parl-er.	Parl-ant.	Parl-é.	Je parl-e.	Je parl-ai.
SECOND CONJUGATION.				
Fin-ir.	Fin-issant.	Fin-i.	Je fin-is.	Je fin-is.
THIRD CONJUGATION.				
Rec-evoir.	Rec-evant.	Reç-u.	Je reç-ois.	Je reç-us.
FOURTH CONJUGATION.				
Ven-dre.	Ven-dant.	Ven-du.	Je ven-ds.	Je ven-dis.

## 144. § I. CONJUGATION OF ACTIVE VERBS.

An *Active* verb expresses an action done by the subject, and has an object, either expressed or understood. In this phrase : *Jean aime Dieu*, John loves God, *Jean* is the subject, *aime* the verb active, and *Dieu* the object.

## MODEL OF THE FIRST CONJUGATION IN ER.

## 145. PARLER, TO SPEAK.

## INFINITIVE.

## PRESENT.

Parler, *to speak.*

## PAST.

| Avoir parlé, *to have spoken.*

## PARTICIPLE PRESENT.

Parlant, *speaking.*

## COMPOUND OF PART. PRESENT.

| Ayant parlé, *having spoken.*PARTICIPLE PAST.—Parlé, *spoken.*

## INDICATIVE.

## Simple Tenses.

## PRESENT.

Je parle, *I speak.\**  
 tu parles, *thou speakest.*  
 il parle, *he speaks.*  
 nous parlons, *we speak.*  
 vous parlez, *you speak.*  
 ils parlent, *they speak.*

## Compound Tenses.

## PRETERITE INDEFINITE.

J'ai parlé, *I have*  
 tu as parlé, *thou hast*  
 il a parlé, *he has*  
 nous avons parlé, *we have*  
 vous avez parlé, *you have*  
 ils ont parlé, *they have*

(spoken.)

## IMPERFECT.

Je parlais, *I was*  
 tu parlais, *thou wast*  
 il parlait, *he was*  
 nous parlions, *we were*  
 vous parliez, *you were*  
 ils parlaient, *they were*

(speaking.)

## PLUPERFECT.

J'avais parlé, *I had*  
 tu avais parlé, *thou hadst*  
 il avait parlé, *he had*  
 nous avions parlé, *we had*  
 vous aviez parlé, *you had*  
 ils avaient parlé, *they had*

(spoken.)

## PRETERITE DEFINITE.

Je parlai, *I spoke.*  
 tu parlas, *thou spokest.*  
 il parla, *he spoke.*  
 nous parlâmes, *we spoke.*  
 vous parlâtes, *you spoke.*  
 ils parlèrent, *they spoke.*

## PRETERITE ANTERIOR.

J'eus parlé, *I had*  
 tu eus parlé, *thou hadst*  
 il eut parlé, *he had*  
 nous eûmes parlé, *we had*  
 vous eûtes parlé, *you had*  
 ils eurent parlé, *they had*

(spoken.)

\* I speak, I do speak, or, I am speaking. See N. B. p. 279.

*Simple Tenses.**Compound Tenses.*

## FUTURE ABSOLUTE.

## FUTURE ANTERIOR.

Je parlerai, *I shall*  
 tu parleras, *thou shalt*  
 il parlera, *he shall*  
 nous parlerons, *we shall*  
 vous parlerez, *you shall*  
 ils parleront, *they shall*

J'aurai parlé,  
 tu auras parlé,  
 il aura parlé,  
 nous aurons parlé,  
 vous aurez parlé,  
 ils auront parlé,

*—I shall—  
 have spoken.*

## CONDITIONAL.

## PRESENT.

## PAST.

Je parlerais, *I should*  
 tu parlerais, *thou shouldst*  
 il parlerait, *he should*  
 nous parlerions, *we should*  
 vous parleriez, *you should*  
 ils parleraient, *they should*

J'aurais parlé,  
 tu aurais parlé,  
 il aurait parlé,  
 nous aurions parlé,  
 vous auriez parlé,  
 ils auraient parlé,

*—I should—  
 have spoken.*

## IMPERATIVE

Parle,  
 qu'il parle,  
 parlons,  
 parlez,  
 qu'ils parlent,

*Speak (thou).  
 let him speak.  
 let us speak.  
 speak (you).  
 let them speak.*

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

## PRESENT.

## PRETERITE.

Que je parle,  
 que tu parles,  
 qu'il parle,  
 que nous parlions,  
 que vous parliez,  
 qu'ils parlent,

*—That I may—  
 speak.*

Que j'aie parlé,  
 que tu aies parlé,  
 qu'il ait parlé,  
 que nous ayons parlé,  
 que vous ayez parlé,  
 qu'ils aient parlé,

*—That I may—  
 have spoken.*

## IMPERFECT.

## PLUPERFECT.

Que je parlasse,  
 que tu parlasses,  
 qu'il parlât,  
 que nous parlussions,  
 que vous parlassiez,  
 qu'ils parlassent,

*—That I—  
 might speak.*

Que j'eusse parlé,  
 que tu eusses parlé,  
 qu'il eût parlé,  
 que nous eussions parlé,  
 que vous eussiez parlé,  
 qu'ils eussent parlé,

*That I might  
 have spoken.*

146. Conjugate in the same manner all the regular Verbs terminating in *er*; as,

Accepter,	to accept.	fermer,	to shut.
chanter,	to sing.	flatter,	to flatter.
chercher,	to seek.	garder,	to keep.
danser,	to dance.	louer,	to praise.
demander,	to ask.	montrer,	to show.
donner,	to give.	porter,	to carry.
éviter,	to avoid.	raconter,	to relate.

## EXERCISE XLIV.

INDICATIVE. PRESENT.—I study geography and  
*étudier art. géographie f.*

history. — He dines at five o'clock. — We admire the  
*art. histoire f. h m. dîner heure admirer*  
 beauty of that landscape. — You forgive your enemies. —  
*beauté f. paysage m. pardonner à ennemi*  
 Your brothers and sisters sing and dance very well.

91

IMPERF. — I was accusing my friend. — He was listening  
*accuser ami écouter*  
 attentively. — We were blaming our neighbours. — You were  
*attentivement. blâmer voisin*  
 proposing a salutary advice. — They were praising your prudence  
*proposer<sup>2</sup> avis m. — f.*

— The ancient Peruvians worshipped the sun.  
*ancien Péruvien adorer soleil m.*

## EXERCISE XLV.

PRET. DEF. — I approved his action. — She sung two or three  
*approuver 93 — f.*  
 songs. — He borrowed money. — We declined his offer. —  
*chanson emprunter 32 argent m. refuser 93 offre f.*

You rewarded the servant. — They declared war.  
*récompenser domestique m. déclarer art. guerre f.*

PRET. INDEF. — I have surmounted all the difficulties. — He  
*surmonter tout difficulté f.*  
 has offended his Majesty. — We have bought an estate. — They  
*offenser Majesté f. acheter terre f.*

have considered the justice of his demand. — At all times,  
*considérer — f. demande f. Dans art.*

gold has been looked upon as the most precious metal.  
*art. regarder comme des pl.*

## EXERCISE XLVI.

PLUPERF.—I had asked his consent. — The queen had  
*demander consentement m.*  
 manifested her displeasure. — We had consulted men  
*montrer mécontentement m. consulter 32*  
 of honour. — You had emptied the bottle. — They  
*honneur h m. vider bouteille f.*  
 had repaired the house. — He had tuned my piano.  
*réparer maison f. accorder — m.*  
 FUT. ABSOL.—I shall cross the river. — She will travel  
*traverser rivière f. voyager*  
 with us.—We will breakfast with you.—You will shut the  
*avec déjeuner fermer*  
 shutters. — They will bring letters and newspapers.  
*volet m. apporter 32 lettre f. 32 journal m.*  
 CONDIT. PRESENT.—I would explain the rule.—He would  
*expliquer règle f.*  
 avoid his company. — She would prepare the ball dresses. —  
*compagnie f. préparer habit de bal.*  
 We would walk faster. — They would gain the victory.  
*marcher plus vite. remporter victoire f.*

## EXERCISE XLVII.

IMPERATIVE.—Give me his address and yours.—Let us  
*Donner adresse f.*  
 frequent good company.—James, carry this letter to the  
*fréquenter art. porter lettre f.*  
 post-office.—Ask, and it shall be given you; seek, and you  
*poste f. on ind-7*  
 shall find; knock, and it shall be opened unto you.  
*trouver frapper on ouvrira \**  
 SUBJ. PRESENT.—That I may re-enforce my party. — That  
*renforcer parti m.*  
 he may appease his anger. — That you may find friends.  
*apaiser colère f. des*  
 IMPERF.—That I might prove the truth. — That she might  
*prouver vérité f.*  
 remain in town. — That they might take advantage of the  
*rester en ville. profiter*  
 circumstances. — That you might imitate his conduct.  
*circonstance f. imiter conduite f.*



MODEL OF THE SECOND CONJUGATION IN *IR*.147. *FINIR*,\* TO FINISH.

## INFINITIVE.

## PRESENT.

Finir,

*to finish.* | Avoir fini,

## PAST.

*to have finished.*

## PARTICIPLE PRESENT.

Finissant,

*finishing.* | Ayant fini,

## COMPOUND OF PART. PRESENT.

*having finished.*PARTICIPLE PAST.—Fini, *finished.*

## Simple Tenses.

## Compound Tenses.

## INDICATIVE.

## PRESENT.

Je finis, *I finish.*  
 tu finis, *thou finishest.*  
 il finit, *he finishes.*  
 nous finissons, *we finish.*  
 vous finissez, *you finish.*  
 ils finissent, *they finish.*

## PRETERITE INDEFINITE.

J'ai fini, *I have finished.*  
 tu as fini, *thou hast finished.*  
 il a fini, *he has finished.*  
 nous avons fini, *we have finished.*  
 vous avez fini, *you have finished.*  
 ils ont fini, *they have finished.*

## IMPERFECT.

Je finissais, *I was*  
 tu finissais, *thou wast*  
 il finissait, *he was*  
 nous finissions, *we were*  
 vous finissiez, *you were*  
 ils finissaient, *they were*

—*finishing.*—

## PLUPERFECT.

J'avais fini, *I had*  
 tu avais fini, *thou hadst*  
 il avait fini, *he had*  
 nous avions fini, *we had*  
 vous aviez fini, *you had*  
 ils avaient fini, *they had*

—*finished.*—

## PRETERITE DEFINITE.

Je finis, *I finished.*  
 tu finis, *thou finishedst.*  
 il finit, *he finished.*  
 nous finîmes, *we finished.*  
 vous finîtes, *you finished.*  
 ils finirent, *they finished.*

## PRETERITE ANTERIOR.

J'eus fini, *I had*  
 tu eus fini, *thou hadst*  
 il eut fini, *he had*  
 nous eûmes fini, *we had*  
 vous eûtes fini, *you had*  
 ils eurent fini, *they had*

—*finished.*—

## FUTURE ABSOLUTE.

Je finirai, *I shall finish.*  
 tu finiras, *thou shalt finish.*  
 il finira, *he shall finish.*  
 nous finirons, *we shall finish.*  
 vous finirez, *you shall finish.*  
 ils finiront, *they shall finish.*

## FUTURE ANTERIOR.

J'aurai fini, *I shall have*  
 tu auras fini, *thou shalt have*  
 il aura fini, *he shall have*  
 nous aurons fini, *we shall have*  
 vous aurez fini, *you shall have*  
 ils auront fini, *they shall have*

—*finished.*—\* The final *n* of the Infinitive of the 2d Conjugation is always sounded.

*Simple Tenses.**Compound Tenses.*

## CONDITIONAL.

## PRESENT.

## PAST.

Je finirais,	<i>I should</i>	} <i>finish.</i>	J'aurais fini,	<i>I should</i>	} <i>have finished.</i>
tu finirais,	<i>thou shouldst</i>		tu aurais fini,	<i>thou shouldst</i>	
il finirait,	<i>he should</i>		il aurait fini,	<i>he should</i>	
nous finirions,	<i>we should</i>		nous aurions fini,	<i>we should</i>	
vous finiriez,	<i>you should</i>		vous auriez fini,	<i>you should</i>	
ils finiraient,	<i>they should</i>		ils auraient fini,	<i>they should</i>	

## IMPERATIVE.

Finis,	<i>Finish (thou).</i>
qu'il finisse,	<i>let him finish.</i>
finissons,	<i>let us finish.</i>
finissez,	<i>finish (you).</i>
qu'ils finissent,	<i>let them finish.</i>

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

## PRESENT.

## PRETERITE.

Que je finisse,	<i>That I may</i>	} <i>finish.</i>	Que j'aie fini,	} <i>That I may have finished.</i>
que tu finisses,	<i>that thou mayst</i>		que tu aies fini,	
qu'il finisse,	<i>that he may</i>		qu'il ait fini,	
que nous finissions,	<i>that we may</i>		que nous ayons fini,	
que vous finissiez,	<i>that you may</i>		que vous ayez fini,	
qu'ils finissent,	<i>that they may</i>		qu'ils aient fini,	

## IMPERFECT.

## PLUPERFECT.

Que je finisse,	} <i>That I might finish.</i>	Que j'eusse fini,	} <i>That I might have finished.</i>
que tu finisses,		que tu eusses fini,	
qu'il finît,		qu'il eût fini,	
que nous finissions,		que nous eussions fini,	
que vous finissiez,		que vous eussiez fini,	
qu'ils finissent,		qu'ils eussent fini,	

148. Conjugate in the same manner:—

Abolir,	<i>to abolish.</i>	enrichir,	<i>to enrich.</i>
adoucir,	<i>to soften.</i>	établir,	<i>to establish.</i>
affermir,	<i>to strengthen.</i>	fléchir,	<i>to soften.</i>
agir,	<i>to act.</i>	fournir,	<i>to furnish.</i>
applaudir,	<i>to applaud.</i>	franchir,	<i>to leap over.</i>
avertir,	<i>to warn.</i>	frémir,	<i>to shudder.</i>
bâtir,	<i>to build.</i>	garantir,	<i>to warrant.</i>
choisir,	<i>to choose.</i>	guérir,	<i>to cure.</i>
démolir,	<i>to demolish.</i>	nourrir,	<i>to nourish, to feed.</i>
divertir,	<i>to divert.</i>	obéir,	<i>to obey.</i>
embellir,	<i>to embellish.</i>	punir,	<i>to punish.</i>
emplir,	<i>to fill.</i>	réussir, &c.	<i>to succeed, &amp;c.</i>

## EXERCISE XLVIII.

INDICAT. PRES.—I shudder when I think (of it).—He  
*quand* <sup>2</sup>*penser* <sup>1</sup>*y*  
 fulfils his promise. — Your sister enjoys good  
*remplir* *promesse* f. *jouir* *d'une*  
 health. — You act as a master. — They punish the idlers.  
*santé* f. *en* \* *maître*.  *paresseux*  
 IMPERF.—I was varnishing a picture. — He was climbing  
*vernir* *tableau* m. *gravir*  
 the hill. — They were building a bridge and fortifications.  
*colline* f. *bâtir* *pont* m. 32 — f.  
 PRET. DEF.—I warned my sister of her danger. — You  
*avertir* — m.  
 chose a pretty colour. — They succeeded in their undertaking. —  
*joli* *couleur* f. *réussir* *entreprise* f.  
 That victory strengthened him on his throne.  
*trône* m.

## EXERCISE XLIX.

PRET. INDEF.—I have chosen it (out of) a thousand. —  
*entre* \*  
 He has enriched science with new discoveries. — You  
*enrichir* art. — f. *de nouveau découverte* f.  
 have grown tall. — The greatest empires have perished.  
*grandir* — m. *périr*  
 PRET. ANT.—I had done before him. — When he had  
*finir* *avant* *lui*. *Quand*  
 filled his pockets with pears and apples, he went away.  
*remplir* *poche* *de poire* *de pomme* *s'en alla*.  
 PLUPERF.—That merchant had supplied this house  
*marchand* m. *fournir* *maison* f.  
 with wine.—The king had ennobled him.—They had disobeyed  
*de* *anoblir* *désobéir*  
 my orders. — He had warranted my watch for six months.  
*à* *ordre* m. *montrer* f. *mois*.

## EXERCISE L.

FUT. ABSOL.—I will search into that affair. — That will  
*approfondir* *affaire* f.  
 cure him.—We will rebuild our country-house. — I hope  
*guérir* 87 *rebâtir* *maison de campagne*. *espérer*  
 you will succeed.—They will obey the laws of the country.  
*que* *réussir* *obéir à* *loi* f *pays* m.

FUT. ANT.—I shall have finished my exercise before dinner.—  
*thème m. avant dîner.*

That bad news will have cooled his ardour.  
*nouvelle f. refroidir 93 ardeur f.*

CONDIT. PRES.—I would mitigate the punishment.—  
*adoucir punition f.*

If he (were to do) that good action, everybody would  
*faisait — f. tout le monde*

<sup>2</sup>applaud <sup>1</sup>him. — He would stun the neighbourhood.  
*applaudir lui étourdir voisinage m.*

### EXERCISE LI.

IMPERATIVE.—Let us banish vice and cherish  
*bannir art. — m. chérir*

virtue. — Act as a man of honour. — Choose of the  
*art. vertu f. en \* honneur h m.*

two. — Reflect for a moment. — Blush with shame.  
*Réfléchir \* — m. rougir de honte h asp.*

SUBJ. PRES.—That I may accomplish my design. — That  
*accomplir dessein m.*

you may establish communications between these two towns.  
*établir 32 — entre*

IMPERF.—That she might match the colours. — That you  
*assortir couleur f.*

might enjoy your glory.—That they might soften his heart.  
*jouir de gloire. attendrir cœur m.*

### EXERCISE LII.

That we might have fathomed that mystery. — That they  
*approfondir mystère m.*

might have fed the poor, and cured the sick. — All  
*pauvre pl. malade pl. Tout*

that we build is of short duration. — Let him bless  
*ce que court durée f. bénir art.*

Providence. — God will punish the ungrateful. — I shall finish  
*— f. Dieu ingrat m. pl.*

my translation this evening. — I have converted him. — That  
*traduction f. soir m. convertir*

town was swallowed up by an earthquake. — The  
*engloutir un tremblement de terre.*

torpedo benumbs the hand of him who touches it.  
*torpille f. engourdir celui toucher*

## MODEL OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION IN OIR.

## 149. RECEVOIR, TO RECEIVE.

## INFINITIVE.

## PRESENT.

Recevoir, *to receive.* | Avoir reçu, *to have received.*

## PAST.

## PARTICIPLE PRESENT.

Recevant, *receiving.* | Ayant reçu, *having received.*

## COMPOUND OF PART. PRESENT.

PARTICIPLE PAST.—Reçu, *received.*

## Simple Tenses.

## Compound Tenses.

## INDICATIVE.

## PRESENT.

Je reçois, *I receive.*  
 tu reçois, *thou receivest.*  
 il reçoit, *he receives.*  
 nous recevons, *we receive.*  
 vous recevez, *you receive.*  
 ils reçoivent, *they receive.*

## PRETERITE INDEFINITE.

J'ai reçu, *I have*  
 tu as reçu, *thou hast*  
 il a reçu, *he has*  
 nous avons reçu, *we have*  
 vous avez reçu, *you have*  
 ils ont reçu, *they have*

(received.)

## IMPERFECT.

Je recevais, *I was*  
 tu recevais, *thou wast*  
 il recevait, *he was*  
 nous recevions, *we were*  
 vous receviez, *you were*  
 ils recevaient, *they were*

) receiving.

## PLUPERFECT.

J'avais reçu, *I had*  
 tu avais reçu, *thou hadst*  
 il avait reçu, *he had*  
 nous avions reçu, *we had*  
 vous aviez reçu, *you had*  
 ils avaient reçu, *they had*

) received.

## PRETERITE DEFINITE.

Je reçus, *I received.*  
 tu reçus, *thou receivedst.*  
 il reçut, *he received.*  
 nous reçûmes, *we received.*  
 vous reçûtes, *you received.*  
 ils reçurent, *they received.*

## PRETERITE ANTERIOR.

J'eus reçu, *I had*  
 tu eus reçu, *thou hadst*  
 il eut reçu, *he had*  
 nous eûmes reçu, *we had*  
 vous eûtes reçu, *you had*  
 ils eurent reçu, *they had*

) received.

## FUTURE ABSOLUTE.

Je recevrai, *I shall*  
 tu recevras, *thou shalt*  
 il recevra, *he shall*  
 nous recevrons, *we shall*  
 vous recevrez, *you shall*  
 ils recevront, *they shall*

) receive.

## FUTURE ANTERIOR.

J'aurai reçu, *I shall*  
 tu auras reçu, *thou shalt*  
 il aura reçu, *he shall*  
 nous aurons reçu, *we shall*  
 vous aurez reçu, *you shall*  
 ils auront reçu, *they shall*

) have received.

*Simple Tenses.**Compound Tenses.*

## CONDITIONAL.

## PRESENT.

## PAST.

Je recevrais,	<i>I should</i>	} <i>receive.</i>	J'aurais reçu,	<i>I should</i>	} <i>have received.</i>
tu recevrais,	<i>thou shouldst</i>		tu aurais reçu,	<i>thou shouldst</i>	
il recevrait,	<i>he should</i>		il aurait reçu,	<i>he should</i>	
nous recevriions,	<i>we should</i>		nous aurions reçu,	<i>we should</i>	
vous recevriez,	<i>you should</i>		vous auriez reçu,	<i>you should</i>	
ils recevraient,	<i>they should</i>		ils auraient reçu,	<i>they should</i>	

## IMPERATIVE.

Reçois,	<i>Receive (thou).</i>
qu'il reçoive,	<i>let him receive.</i>
recevons,	<i>let us receive.</i>
recevez,	<i>receive (you).</i>
qu'ils reçoivent,	<i>let them receive.</i>

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

## PRESENT.

## PRETERITE.

Que je reçoive,	} <i>That I may receive.</i>	Que j'aie reçu,	} <i>That I may have received.</i>
que tu reçoives,		que tu aies reçu,	
qu'il reçoive,		qu'il ait reçu,	
que nous recevions,		que nous ayons reçu,	
que vous receviez,		que vous ayez reçu,	
qu'ils reçoivent,		qu'ils aient reçu,	

## IMPERFECT.


## PLUPERFECT.

Que je reçusse,	} <i>That I might receive.</i>	Que j'eusse reçu,	} <i>That I might have received.</i>
que tu reçusses,		que tu eusses reçu,	
qu'il reçût,		qu'il eût reçu,	
que nous reçussions,		que nous eussions reçu,	
que vous reçussiez,		que vous eussiez reçu,	
qu'ils reçussent,		qu'ils eussent reçu,	

This Conjugation has only seven verbs, which are :—

Recevoir, *to receive*, which is given as a model ; and,

Apercevoir,	<i>to perceive.</i>	redevoir,	<i>to remain in debt ;</i>
concevoir,	<i>to conceive.</i>		<i>to owe still.</i>
décevoir,	<i>to deceive.</i>	percevoir,	<i>to collect (rents, in-</i>
devoir,	<i>to owe.</i>		<i>come, taxes.)</i>

 In all tenses in which *o* comes before *o* or *u*, it takes a cedilla, in order that it may retain the soft sound of *s* which it has in the Infinitive Present.

## EXERCISE LIII.

INDICAT. PRES.—I perceive the steeple of the village.—  
*apercevoir clocher m. — m.*

From his window, he perceives the top of a mountain.  
*fenêtre f. sommet m. montagne f.*

IMPERF.—He owed a large sum to his partner.—You  
*devoir grand somme f. associé m.*

were collecting the taxes.—They owed a thousand pounds.  
*percevoir impôt m. \* livres sterling.*

PRET. DEF.—We perceived several men coming towards  
 123 *qui venaient à*

us.—The besieged received succour.  
*assiégé m. pl. 32 secours pl.*

PRET. INDEF.—I received a letter this morning.—That  
*lettre f. matin m.*

regiment has received recruits.—We have perceived  
*régiment m. 32 recrue f.*

you from afar.—The soldiers have received provisions for  
*loin. soldat 32 vivre m.*

three days.—My sister has received your parcel.  
*paquet m.*

## EXERCISE LIV.

FUTURE ABSOL.—I shall receive your letter on the fifteenth.  
 \* 76

She will receive some visits.—He will still owe thirteen  
*visite redevoir*

guineas.—They will owe their misfortunes to their faults.  
*guinée f. devoir malheur m. faute f.*

COND. PRES.—I would conceive the greatest hopes.—You  
*concevoir espérance f.*

ought to behave differently.—He would receive a blow.  
*devoir vous conduire autrement. coup m.*

IMPERATIVE.—Receive this as a mark of my  
 101 *comme marque f. 92*

confidence and esteem.—Let us receive his apology.—  
*confiance f. de mon estime f. 93 excuse f.*

Conceive the horror of his situation.—Receive him  
*Concevoir horreur h m. 92 — f.*

kindly.—Receive everybody with civility.  
*avec bonté. tout le monde honnêteté.*

## MODEL OF THE FOURTH CONJUGATION IN RE.

## 150. VENDRE, TO SELL.

## INFINITIVE.

## PRESENT.

Vendre, *to sell.*

## PAST.

Avoir vendu, *to have sold.*

## PARTICIPLE PRESENT.

Vendant, *selling.*

## COMPOUND OF PART. PRESENT.

Ayant vendu, *having sold.*PARTICIPLE PAST.—Vendu, *sold.*

## Simple Tenses.

## Compound Tenses.

## INDICATIVE.

## PRESENT.

Je vends, *I sell.*  
 tu vends, *thou sellest.*  
 il vend, *he sells.*  
 nous vendons, *we sell.*  
 vous vendez, *you sell.*  
 ils vendent, *they sell.*

## PRETERITE INDEFINITE.

J'ai vendu, *I have*  
 tu as vendu, *thou hast*  
 il a vendu, *he has*  
 nous avons vendu, *we have*  
 vous avez vendu, *you have*  
 ils ont vendu, *they have* } *sold.*

## IMPERFECT.

Je vendais, *I was selling.*  
 tu vendais, *thou wast selling.*  
 il vendait, *he was selling.*  
 nous vendions, *we were selling.*  
 vous vendiez, *you were selling.*  
 ils vendaient, *they were selling.*

## PLUPERFECT.

J'avais vendu, *I had*  
 tu avais vendu, *thou hadst*  
 il avait vendu, *he had*  
 nous avions vendu, *we had*  
 vous aviez vendu, *you had*  
 ils avaient vendu, *they had* } *sold.*

## PRETERITE DEFINITE.

Je vendis, *I sold.*  
 tu vendis, *thou soldest.*  
 il vendit, *he sold.*  
 nous vendîmes, *we sold.*  
 vous vendîtes, *you sold.*  
 ils vendirent, *they sold.*

## PRETERITE ANTERIOR.

J'eus vendu, *I had*  
 tu eus vendu, *thou hadst*  
 il eut vendu, *he had*  
 nous eûmes vendu, *we had*  
 vous eûtes vendu, *you had*  
 ils eurent vendu, *they had* } *sold.*

## FUTURE ABSOLUTE.

Je vendrai, *I shall sell.*  
 tu vendras, *thou shalt sell.*  
 il vendra, *he shall sell.*  
 nous vendrons, *we shall sell.*  
 vous vendrez, *you shall sell.*  
 ils vendront, *they shall sell.*

## FUTURE ANTERIOR.

J'aurai vendu, *I shall*  
 tu auras vendu, *thou shalt*  
 il aura vendu, *he shall*  
 nous aurons vendu, *we shall*  
 vous aurez vendu, *you shall*  
 ils auront vendu, *they shall* } *have sold.*



## Simple Tenses.

## Compound Tenses.

## CONDITIONAL.

## PRESENT.

Je vendrais,	<i>I should</i>	} <i>sell.</i>
tu vendrais,	<i>thou shouldst</i>	
il vendrait,	<i>he should</i>	
nous vendrions,	<i>we should</i>	
vous vendriez,	<i>you should</i>	
ils vendraient,	<i>they should</i>	

## PAST.

J'aurais vendu,	<i>I should</i>	} <i>have sold.</i>
tu aurais vendu,	<i>thou shouldst</i>	
il aurait vendu,	<i>he should</i>	
nous aurions vendu,	<i>we should</i>	
vous auriez vendu,	<i>you should</i>	
ils auraient vendu,	<i>they should</i>	

## IMPERATIVE.

Vends,	<i>Sell (thou).</i>
qu'il vende,	<i>let him sell.</i>
vendons,	<i>let us sell.</i>
vendez,	<i>sell (you).</i>
qu'ils vendent,	<i>let them sell.</i>

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

## PRESENT.

Que je vende,	} <i>That I may sell.</i>
que tu vendes,	
qu'il vende,	
que nous vendions,	
que vous vendiez,	
qu'ils vendent,	

## PRETERITE.

Que j'aie vendu,	} <i>That I may have sold.</i>
que tu aies vendu,	
qu'il ait vendu,	
que nous ayons vendu,	
que vous ayez vendu,	
qu'ils aient vendu,	

## IMPERFECT.

Que je vendisse,	} <i>That I might sell.</i>
que tu vendisses,	
qu'il vendit,	
que nous vendissions,	
que vous vendissiez,	
qu'ils vendissent,	

## PLUPERFECT.

Que j'eusse vendu,	} <i>That I might have sold.</i>
que tu eusses vendu,	
qu'il eût vendu,	
que nous eussions vendu,	
que vous eussiez vendu,	
qu'ils eussent vendu,	

## 151. Conjugate in the same manner:—

Attendre,	<i>to wait for.</i>
correspondre,	<i>to correspond.</i>
défendre,	<i>to defend.</i>
dépendre,	<i>to depend.</i>
descendre,	<i>to descend.</i>
entendre,	<i>to hear.</i>
fendre,	<i>to split.</i>
fondre,	<i>to melt.</i>
mordre,	<i>to bite.</i>

pendre,	<i>to hang.</i>
perdre,	<i>to lose.</i>
prétendre,	<i>to pretend.</i>
rendre,	<i>to render.</i>
répandre,	<i>to spread.</i>
répondre,	<i>to answer.</i>
suspendre,	<i>to suspend.</i>
tordre,	<i>to twist.</i>
&c.	<i>&amp;c.</i>

## EXERCISE LV.

INDICAT. PRESENT.—I hear the children.—That depends  
*enfant*

on circumstances.—He understands English (a little).—That  
*des circonstance* f. *entendre* <sup>2</sup>*l'anglais* <sup>1</sup>

dog bites.—He defends his sister.—We expect several  
*chien* m. *attendre*

friends to dinner.—You claim a half.—They confound  
*à dîner.* *prétendre* *moitié* f. *confondre*

the arts with the sciences.—He is splitting some wood.

— m. — f. *bois* m.

IMPERF.—I was waiting for the steam-boat.—He was  
*attendre* \* *bateau à vapeur* m.

coming down with David.—They were wasting their time.  
*descendre* *perdre* *temps* m.

## EXERCISE LVI.

PRET. DEF.—I alighted at the hôtel de France — He  
*descendre* *h* m.

answered in a few words.—We aimed at an honest end.—  
*en peu de mots.* *tendre* <sup>2</sup>*honnête* <sup>1</sup>*but* m.

They lost their lawsuit.—The storm burst upon the town.  
*procès* m. *orage* m. *fondre*

PRET. INDEF.—I have heard that musician.—He has  
*entendre* *musicien* m

restored the money.—The sun has melted the snow.—The  
*rendre* *fondre* *neige* f.

thermometer has fallen four degrees since yesterday.  
*thermomètre* m. *descendre de* *degré* m. *depuis* *hier*.

—You have defended him with much talent.—Ladies,  
*défendre* *beaucoup de* — *Mesdames*

have you heard the music of the new opera?  
*musique* f. *nouvel opéra* m.

## EXERCISE LVII.

FUTURE.—Make haste, I will wait for you.—It is a  
*Dépêchez-vous* *attendre* \* *C'*

thing to which he will never condescend.—You will  
*chose* f. *ne* <sup>2</sup>*jamais* <sup>1</sup>*condescendre*

wait a long time.—They will shear their sheep.  
*attendre* \* *longtemps.* *tondre* *brebis* pl.

COND. PRES.—I would correspond regularly with  
*correspondre régulièrement*  
 my friends. — Your hens would lay eggs every day.  
*poule f. pondre tous les jours.*

IMPERATIVE.—Let us answer their letter. — Wait  
*répondre à Attendre*  
 till to-morrow. — Hang up your hat and your  
*jusqu'à demain. Pendre \* chapeau m.*  
 cloak. — Render unto Cæsar (the things which are Cæsar's.)  
*manteau m. à César ce qui appartient à César.*

## 152. CONJUGATION

### OF A VERB WITH A NEGATIVE.

#### PRELIMINARY REMARKS.

153. The English negatives *no* and *not* are rendered in French by *ne*, which is placed immediately after the subject or nominative, whether it be a noun or pronoun, and *pas* or *point* after the verb in simple tenses, and between the auxiliary and the participle in compound tenses.

“When the verb is in the Present of the Infinitive, it is optional to place *pas* and *point* before or after the verb. *Pour ne POINT souffrir.*—*Pour ne souffrir POINT.* The first manner of speaking, however, is more used.”—

(FR. ACAD. “Dict. crit. de Féraud,” &c.)

The same rules are applicable to other negatives, such as, *ne jamais*, never; *ne rien*, nothing; *ne plus*, no more, not any more, no longer.

154. When the negative is followed by a noun, *de* is used instead of the definite article; as, *Je n'ai pas DE livres*, I have no books; *elle n'a point DE place*, she has no room.

155. The words *do* or *did*, which precede an English verb in some tenses, are not expressed in French.

## 156. MODEL

FOR THE CONJUGATION OF A VERB USED  
NEGATIVELY.

## INFINITIVE.

*Simple Tenses.**Compound Tenses.*

## PRESENT.

## PAST.

Ne pas parler, *not to speak.* | N'avoir pas parlé, *not to have spoken*

## PARTICIPLE PRESENT.

## COMPOUND OF PART. PRESENT.

Ne parlant pas, *not speaking.* | N'ayant pas parlé, *not having spoken.*

## INDICATIVE

## PRESENT.

## PRETERITE INDEFINITE.

Je ne parle pas,  
tu ne parles pas,  
il ne parle pas,  
nous ne parlons pas,  
vous ne parlez pas,  
ils ne parlent pas,*I do not  
speak.*Je n'ai pas parlé,  
tu n'as pas parlé,  
il n'a pas parlé,  
nous n'avons pas parlé,  
vous n'avez pas parlé,  
ils n'ont pas parlé,*I have not  
spoken.*

## IMPERFECT.

## PLUPERFECT.

Je ne parlais pas,  
tu ne parlais pas,  
il ne parlait pas,  
nous ne parlions pas,  
vous ne parliez pas,  
ils ne parlaient pas,*I was not  
speaking.*Je n'avais pas parlé,  
tu n'avais pas parlé,  
il n'avait pas parlé,  
nous n'avions pas parlé,  
vous n'aviez pas parlé,  
ils n'avaient pas parlé,*I had not  
spoken.*

## PRETERITE DEFINITE.

## PRETERITE ANTERIOR.

Je ne parlai pas,  
tu ne parlas pas,  
il ne parla pas,  
nous ne parlâmes pas,  
vous ne parlâtes pas,  
ils ne parlèrent pas,*I did not  
speak.*Je n'eus pas parlé,  
tu n'eus pas parlé,  
il n'eut pas parlé,  
nous n'eûmes pas parlé,  
vous n'eûtes pas parlé,  
ils n'eurent pas parlé,*I had not  
spoken.*

## FUTURE ABSOLUTE.

## FUTURE ANTERIOR.

Je ne parlerai pas,  
tu ne parleras pas,  
il ne parlera pas,  
nous ne parlerons pas,  
vous ne parlerez pas,  
ils ne parleront pas,*I shall not  
speak.*Je n'aurai pas parlé,  
tu n'auras pas parlé,  
il n'aura pas parlé,  
nous n'aurons pas parlé,  
vous n'aurez pas parlé,  
ils n'auront pas parlé,*I shall not  
have spoken.*

*Simple Tenses.*

*Compound Tenses.*

CONDITIONAL.

PRESENT.

PAST.

Je ne parlerais pas,  
tu ne parlerais pas,  
il ne parlerait pas,  
nous ne parlerions pas,  
vous ne parleriez pas,  
ils ne parleraient pas,

*I should not  
speak.*

Je n'aurais pas parlé,  
tu n'aurais pas parlé,  
il n'aurait pas parlé,  
nous n'aurions pas parlé,  
vous n'auriez pas parlé,  
ils n'auraient pas parlé,

*I should not  
have spoken.*

IMPERATIVE.

Ne parle pas,  
qu'il ne parle pas,  
ne parlons pas,  
ne parlez pas,  
qu'ils ne parlent pas,

*Do not speak.  
let him not speak.  
let us not speak.  
do not speak.  
let them not speak.*

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

PRETERITE.

Que je ne parle pas,  
que tu ne parles pas,  
qu'il ne parle pas,  
que nous ne parlions pas,  
que vous ne parliez pas,  
qu'ils ne parlent pas,

*That I may  
not speak.*

Que je n'aie pas parlé,  
que tu n'aies pas parlé,  
qu'il n'ait pas parlé,  
que nous n'ayons pas parlé,  
que vous n'ayez pas parlé,  
qu'ils n'aient pas parlé,

*That I may not  
have spoken.*

IMPERFECT.

PLUPERFECT.

Que je ne parlasse pas,  
que tu ne parlasses pas,  
qu'il ne parlât pas,  
que nous ne parlussions pas,  
que vous ne parlassiez pas,  
qu'ils ne parlassent pas,

*That I might  
not speak.*

Que je n'eusse pas parlé,  
que tu n'eusses pas parlé,  
qu'il n'eût pas parlé, [parlé  
que nous n'eussions pas  
que vous n'eussiez pas parlé  
qu'ils n'eussent pas parlé,

*That I might not  
have spoken.*

EXERCISE LVIII.

INDICAT. PRES.—I have no change. —The butcher has  
monnaie. boucher m.

no mutton.—My sister does not sing. — We do not speak of  
mouton. chanter

that.—You do not answer his letters.—They are not playing.  
répondre à lettre jouer

IMPERF.—I *did not* expect that of you.—She was *not*  
*attendre*

dancing.—You were *not* thinking of him.—They were *not*  
*danser* *penser à*

happy.—The king was penniless, the queen had *no* money.  
*heureux* *sans le sou* *argent.*

## EXERCISE LIX.

PRET. DEF.—I *did not* receive his note in time.—He  
*billet m. à temps.*

*did not* forget his promise.—She *did not* hear him.  
*oublier promesse f. entendre*

PRET. INDEF.—I have *not* yet received his answer.—  
*encore* *réponse f.*

He has *never* spoken to his colonel.—You have *not* brought  
*apporter*

the parcel.—Your brothers have *not* passed this way.  
*paquet m. passer par ici.*

PLUPERF.—I had *not* finished my exercise when you came.  
*thème m. quand vintes.*

## EXERCISE LX.

FUT.—I shall *not* speak to him *any more*.—We will *not* travel  
 86 *voyager*

this year.—You will *never* succeed in that undertaking.  
*année f. réussir entreprise f. !*

COND. PRES.—I would owe *nothing*.—You would *not*  
*devoir*

wait long.—They would *never* pardon him.  
*attendre longtemps. pardonner lui.*

IMPERA.—Let us *not* imitate his conduct.—Do *not* lose  
*imiter conduite f. perdre*

your time.—*Don't* shut the window.—*Don't* wait for me.  
*temps m. fermer fenêtre f. attendre*

—*Never* yield to the violence of thy passions.—Let us  
*n'abandonner* *— f. — f.*

*not* act against him.—Receive *no more* of his letters.—Do  
*agir lui.*

*not* spread that bad news.—*Do not* be so idle.  
*répandre mauvais nouvelle f. paresseux*

## 157. CONJUGATION OF A VERB INTERROGATIVELY.

### PRELIMINARY REMARKS.

158. (1.) To conjugate a verb *interrogatively*, which can be done only in the Indicative and Conditional Moods; we place the pronoun, which serves as the subject or nominative, after the verb, connecting them by a hyphen; as, *Avez-vous?* have you? *Jouez-vous?* do you play?

159. (2.) In *compound tenses*, the pronoun is placed between the auxiliary and the participle, joined to the former by a hyphen; as, *Ai-je parlé?* have I spoken? *Ont-ils dîné?* have they dined?

160. (3.) When the third person singular of a verb ends with a vowel, for the sake of euphony, we place between the verb and the pronoun, the letter *t*, preceded and followed by a hyphen; as, *Aura-t-il?* will he have? *Danse-t-elle?* does she dance?

161. (4.) When the subject or nominative of a verb is a noun, that noun comes first, and one of the pronouns *il, elle, ils, elles*, is placed after the verb, and joined to it by a hyphen; as, *Mes frères parlent-ils?* do my brothers speak? *Votre sœur aurait-elle chanté?* would your sister have sung?

162. (5.) When the first person singular of a verb ends with an *e* mute, an *acute accent* is placed over that *e*, which is a sign to pronounce it; as, *Parlé-je?* do I speak? *Chanté-je?* do I sing?

163. (6.) Questions are often asked by *Est-ce que*, and then the subject or nominative precedes the verb; as, *Est-ce que vous lisez Horace?* do you read Horace?—This mode of interrogation is also used with verbs that have but one syllable in the first person singular of the Present of the Indicative; so instead of saying, *Vends-je? rends-je? mens-je? perds-je? fonds-je? pars-je?* and the like, we say, *Est-ce que je vends? est-ce que je rends? &c.* By employing the former mode of expression, we

sometimes could not even be understood ; as, for instance, *Vends-je ? rends-je ? mens-je ?* might be mistaken for the Imperative *venge, range, mange*. Usage, however, permits us to say, *Ai-je ? suis-je ? dis-je ? fais-je ? dois-je ? vois-je ? vais-je ?* because there is no ambiguity nor any harshness of sound.

## 164. MODEL

## FOR THE CONJUGATION OF A VERB USED INTERROGATIVELY.

## INDICATIVE.

*Simple Tenses.*

## PRESENT.

Donné-je ?	<i>Do I give ?</i>
donnes-tu ?	<i>dost thou give ?</i>
donne-t-il ?	<i>does he give ?</i>
donnons-nous ?	<i>do we give ?</i>
donnez-vous ?	<i>do you give ?</i>
donnent-ils ?	<i>do they give ?</i>

## IMPERFECT.

Donnais-je ?	<i>Was I</i>
donnais-tu ?	<i>wast thou</i>
donnait-il ?	<i>was he</i>
donnions-nous ?	<i>were we</i>
donniez-vous ?	<i>were you</i>
donnaient-ils ?	<i>were they</i>

## PRETERITE DEFINITE.

Donnai-je ?	<i>Did I give ?</i>
donnas-tu ?	<i>didst thou give ?</i>
donna-t-il ?	<i>did he give ?</i>
donnâmes-nous ?	<i>did we give ?</i>
donnâtes-vous ?	<i>did you give ?</i>
donnèrent-ils ?	<i>did they give ?</i>

## FUTURE ABSOLUTE.

Donnerai-je ?	<i>Shall I</i>
donneras-tu ?	<i>shalt thou</i>
donnera-t-il ?	<i>shall he</i>
donnerons-nous ?	<i>shall we</i>
donnerez-vous ?	<i>shall you</i>
donneront-ils ?	<i>shall they</i>

*Compound Tenses.*

## PRETERITE INDEFINITE.

Ai-je donné ?	<i>Have I</i>	} <i>given ?</i>
as-tu donné ?	<i>hast thou</i>	
a-t-il donné ?	<i>has he</i>	
avons-nous donné ?	<i>have we</i>	
avez-vous donné ?	<i>have you</i>	
ont-ils donné ?	<i>have they</i>	

## PLUPERFECT.

Avais-je donné ?	<i>Had I</i>	} <i>given ?</i>
avais-tu donné ?	<i>hadst thou</i>	
avait-il donné ?	<i>had he</i>	
avions-nous donné ?	<i>had we</i>	
aviez-vous donné ?	<i>had you</i>	
avaient-ils donné ?	<i>had they</i>	

## PRETERITE ANTERIOR.

Eus-je donné ?	<i>Had I</i>	} <i>given ?</i>
eus-tu donné ?	<i>hadst thou</i>	
eut-il donné ?	<i>had he</i>	
eûmes-nous donné ?	<i>had we</i>	
eûtes-vous donné ?	<i>had you</i>	
eurent-ils donné ?	<i>had they</i>	

## FUTURE ANTERIOR.

Aurai-je donné ?	<i>Shall I</i>	} <i>have given ?</i>
auras-tu donné ?	<i>shalt thou</i>	
aura-t-il donné ?	<i>shall he</i>	
aurons-nous donné ?	<i>shall we</i>	
aurez-vous donné ?	<i>shall you</i>	
auront-ils donné ?	<i>shall they</i>	



## Simple Tenses.

## Compound Tenses.

## CONDITIONAL.

## PRESENT.

## PAST.

Donnerais-je?	<i>Should I</i>	Aurais-je donné?	—Should I— have given?
donnerais-tu?	<i>shouldst thou</i>	aurais-tu donné?	
donnerait-il?	<i>should he</i>	aurait-il donné?	
donnerions-nous?	<i>should we</i>	aurions-nous donné?	
donneriez-vous?	<i>should you</i>	auriez-vous donné?	
donneraient-ils?	<i>should they</i>	auraient-ils donné?	

## EXERCISE LXI.

INDICATIVE. PRES. — Have I friends? — Is she pleased?  
*satisfait*

Does he bring good news? — Does she dance well? —  
*apporter nouvelle f. danser*

Has she a watch? — Is breakfast ready? — Do you call?  
*montre f. déjeuner m. prêt appeler*

IMPERF. — Was he waiting for your arrival? — Were you  
*attendre \* arrivée f.*  
speaking to our captain? — Had the traveller a pistol?  
*capitaine voyageur m. pistolet m.*

PRET. DEF. — Did he prefer your house to hers? — Did  
*préférer maison f.*  
they clear up his doubts? — Was he bold enough?  
*éclaircir doute m. hardi 1*

## EXERCISE LXII.

PRET. INDEF. — Has the king rewarded his services? —  
*récompenser — m.*  
Has your mother received my letter? — Have your partners  
*associé m.*

sold my goods? — Have you bought a pencil-case?  
*marchandise f. porte-crayon m.*

PLUPERF. — Had she offended her mistress? — Had you  
*offenser maîtresse*  
forgotten the date? — Had he lost his pocket-book?  
*oublier — f. perdre portefeuille m.*

FUT. — Shall I have that pleasure? — Will Miss Isabella  
*plaisir m.*  
sing? — Shall we alight here? — When shall we dine?  
*chanter descendre dîner*

## 165. MODEL

FOR THE CONJUGATION OF A VERB USED  
INTERROGATIVELY AND NEGATIVELY.

REMARK.—To add the negative form to a verb used interrogatively, *ne* is placed before the verb, and *pas* or *point* after the personal pronoun, both in the simple and compound tenses.

*Simple Tenses.**Compound Tenses.*

## INDICATIVE.

## PRESENT.

## PRETERITE INDEFINITE.

Est-ce que je ne perds pas ?

(for ne perds-je pas ?)

ne perds-tu pas ?

ne perd\*-il pas ?

ne perdons-nous pas ?

ne perdez-vous pas ?

ne perdent-ils pas ?

Do I not  
lose ?

N'ai-je pas perdu ?

n'as-tu pas perdu ?

n'a-t-il pas perdu ?

n'avons-nous pas perdu ?

n'avez-vous pas perdu ?

n'ont-ils pas perdu ?

Have I not  
lost ?

## IMPERFECT.

## PLUPERFECT.

Ne perdais-je pas ?

ne perdais-tu pas ?

ne perdait-il pas ?

ne perdions-nous pas ?

ne perdiez-vous pas ?

ne perdaient-ils pas ?

Was I not  
losing ?

N'avais-je pas perdu ?

n'avais-tu pas perdu ?

n'avait-il pas perdu ?

n'avions-nous pas perdu ?

n'aviez-vous pas perdu ?

n'avaient-ils pas perdu ?

Had I not  
lost ?

## PRETERITE DEFINITE.

## PRETERITE ANTERIOR.

Ne perdis-je pas ?

ne perdis-tu pas ?

ne perdit-il pas ?

ne perdîmes-nous pas ?

ne perdistes-vous pas ?

ne perdirent-ils pas ?

Did I not  
lose ?

N'eus-je pas perdu ?

n'eus-tu pas perdu ?

n'eut-il pas perdu ?

n'eûmes-nous pas perdu ?

n'eûtes-vous pas perdu ?

n'eurent-ils pas perdu ?

Had I not  
lost ?

\* D takes the sound of *t*, when at the end of a verb followed by one of the pronouns *il, elle, on*.—(Dumarsais, Féraud, Bouillette, Demandre, etc.)

*Simple Tenses.*

*Compound Tenses.*

FUTURE ABSOLUTE.

FUTURE ANTERIOR.

Ne perdrai-je pas ?  
ne perdras-tu pas ?  
ne perdra-t-il pas ?  
ne perdrons-nous pas ?  
ne perdrez-vous pas ?  
ne perdront-ils pas ?

(— Shall I —  
not lose ?

N'aurai-je pas perdu ?  
n'auras-tu pas perdu ?  
n'aura-t-il pas perdu ?  
n'aurons-nous pas perdu ?  
n'aurez-vous pas perdu ?  
n'auront-ils pas perdu ?

Shall I not  
have lost ?

CONDITIONAL.

PRESENT.

PAST.

Ne perdrais-je pas ?  
ne perdrais-tu pas ?  
ne perdrail-il pas ?  
ne perdriions-nous pas ?  
ne perdriez-vous pas ?  
ne perdraient-ils pas ?

(— Should I —  
not lose ?

N'aurais-je pas perdu ?  
n'aurais-tu pas perdu ?  
n'aurait-il pas perdu ?  
n'aurions-nous pas perdu ?  
n'auriez-vous pas perdu ?  
n'auraient-ils pas perdu ?

Should I not  
have lost ?

EXERCISE LXIII.

INDICAT. PRES. — Am I not troublesome? — Is she not  
*importun*

attentive? — Does your sister not draw? — Do we not walk  
*dessiner* *marcher*

too fast? — Do you not hear the drum? — Do they not  
*trop vite?* *entendre* *tambour m.*

ask (too much?) — Has he not enough money?  
*demander trop?* *assez d'*

IMPERF. — Did he not deserve your esteem and mine? —  
*mériter* *estime f.*

Had he not a short coat and a cloak above it?  
*<sup>2</sup>court <sup>1</sup>habit m.* *manteau m.* *par-dessus \**

EXERCISE LXIV.

PRET. DEF. — Why did he not answer your question?  
*Pourquoi* *répondre à* — *f*

— Did she not turn the box topsyturvy?  
*renverser* *boîte f.* *sens dessus dessous?*

PRET. INDEF. — Has he not sold again his country-house? —  
*revendre* *maison de campagne f.*

Have you not signed the letter? — Have they not been here?  
*signer* *ici?*



*Simple Tenses.*

IMPERFECT.

J'étais	{ loué, m.	{ I was praised.
tu étais	{ louée, f.	
il or elle était	{ loués, m.	
nous étions	{ louées, f.	
vous étiez	{ loués, m.	
ils or elles étaient	{ louées, f.	

PRETERITE DEFINITE.

Je fus	{ loué, m.	{ I was praised.
tu fus	{ louée, f.	
il or elle fut	{ loués, m.	
nous fûmes	{ louées, f.	
vous fûtes	{ loués, m.	
ils or elles furent	{ louées, f.	

FUTURE ABSOLUTE.

Je serai	{ loué, m.	{ I shall be praised.
tu seras	{ louée, f.	
il or elle sera	{ loués, m.	
nous serons	{ louées, f.	
vous serez	{ loués, m.	
ils or elles seront	{ louées, f.	

*Compound Tenses.*

PLUPERFECT.

J'avais été	{ loué, m.	{ I had been praised.
tu avais été	{ louée, f.	
il or elle avait été	{ loués, m.	
nous avions été	{ louées, f.	
vous aviez été [été]	{ loués, m.	
ils or elles avaient	{ louées, f.	

PRETERITE ANTERIOR.

J'eus été	{ loué, m.	{ I had been praised.
tu eus été	{ louée, f.	
il or elle eut été	{ loués, m.	
nous eûmes été	{ louées, f.	
vous eûtes été	{ loués, m.	
ils or elles eurent été	{ louées, f.	

FUTURE ANTERIOR.

J'aurai été	{ loué, m.	{ I shall have been praised.
tu auras été	{ louée, f.	
il or elle aura été	{ loués, m.	
nous aurons été	{ louées, f.	
vous aurez été	{ loués, m.	
ils or elles auront été	{ louées, f.	

CONDITIONAL.

PRESENT.

Je serais	{ loué, m.	{ I should be praised.
tu serais	{ louée, f.	
il or elle serait	{ loués, m.	
nous serions	{ louées, f.	
vous seriez	{ loués, m.	
ils or elles seraient	{ louées, f.	

PAST.

J'aurais été	{ loué, m.	{ I should have been praised.
tu aurais été	{ louée, f.	
il or elle aurait été	{ loués, m.	
nous aurions été	{ louées, f.	
vous auriez été [été]	{ loués, m.	
ils or elles auraient	{ louées, f.	

IMPERATIVE.

Sois	{ loué, m.	{ Be (thou) praised.
qu'il or qu'elle soit	{ louée, f.	
soyons	{ loués, m.	
soyez	{ louées, f.	
qu'ils or qu'elles soient	{ loués, m.	

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

Que je sois	{ loué, m.	{ That I may be praised.
que tu sois	{ louée, f.	
qu'il or qu'elle soit	{ loués, m.	
que nous soyons	{ louées, f.	
que vous soyez	{ loués, m.	
qu'ils or qu'elles soient	{ louées, f.	

PRETERITE.

Que j'aie été	{ loué, m.	{ That I may have been praised.
que tu aies été [été]	{ louée, f.	
qu'il or qu'elle ait	{ loués, m.	
que nous ayons été	{ louées, f.	
que vous ayez été	{ loués, m.	
qu'ils or qu'elles aient été	{ louées, f.	

## Simple Tenses.

## IMPERFECT.

Que je fusse	{	loué, m.
que tu fusses		
qu'il or qu'elle fût	{	louée, f.
que nous fussions		
que vous fussiez	{	loués, m.
qu'ils or qu'elles fus-		
sent	{	louées, f.

That I might be praised.

## Compound Tenses.

## PLUPERFECT.

Que j'eusse été	{	loué, m.	{	That I might have been praised.
que tu eusses été				
qu'il or qu'elle eût été	{	louée, f.		
que nous eussions été				
que vous eussiez été	{	loués, m.		
qu'ils or qu'elles eussent				
été	{	louées, f.		

## EXERCISE LXV.

INDICAT. PRES.—He is loved and esteemed by everybody.  
*aimer estimer de tout le monde.*

PRET. DEF.—The city of Rome was several times sacked.  
*ville f. — fois f. saccagé*

He was saved from a great danger by (his youngest son.)  
*délivrer — m. par le plus jeune de ses fils.*

She was accused of theft by her mistress.—The Gauls  
*accuser vol m. par Gaules f. pl.*

were conquered by Cæsar.—The two generals were wounded.  
*conquis par blesser*

PRET. INDEF.—Your work has been praised in a very  
*ouvrage m. d' fort*

delicate manner by an academician.—The Jews have been  
<sup>3</sup> *manière f. par académicien Juif*

punished by God.—She has not been well rewarded.  
*de récompenser*

FUT. ABS.—You will be recognised.—Your conduct will  
*reconnu conduite f.*

be approved by wise and enlightened people.  
*de art. <sup>2</sup> éclairé <sup>1</sup> personne f. pl.*

## 170. § III. OF NEUTER VERBS.

The *Neuter* verb expresses merely the state of its subject; as, *J'existe*, I exist; or else an action limited to the subject which produces it; as, *Je marche*, I walk.

A *neuter* verb may be easily known by its not admitting immediately after it the words *quelqu'un*, somebody, or *quelque chose*, something. We cannot say: *Je*

*marche quelqu'un, je languis quelque chose; marcher and languir*, therefore, are neuter verbs.

There are, in French, nearly six hundred *neuter* verbs; about five hundred take the auxiliary *avoir* in their compound tenses.

171. The following form their compounds with *être* :—

Aller,	<i>to go.</i>	parvenir,	<i>to attain.</i>
arriver,	<i>to arrive.</i>	provenir,	<i>to come from.</i>
décéder,	<i>to die.</i>	redevenir,	<i>to become again.</i>
déchoir,	<i>to decay.</i>	rentrer,	<i>to come in again.</i>
devenir,	<i>to become.</i>	repartir,	<i>to set out again.</i>
disconvenir,	<i>to deny, to disown.</i>	rester,	<i>to remain, to stay.</i>
échoir,	<i>to become due.</i>	retomber,	<i>to fall again.</i>
éclore,	<i>to blow, to be hatched.</i>	retourner,	<i>to go back.</i>
entrer,	<i>to come in.</i>	revenir,	<i>to come back.</i>
mourir,	<i>to die.</i>	survenir,	<i>to happen.</i>
naître,	<i>to be born.</i>	tomber,	<i>to fall.</i>
partir,	<i>to set out.</i>	venir,	<i>to come.</i>

172. The following neuter verbs take *avoir* or *être* in their compound tenses, according to the idea one wishes to express. *Avoir* is used when we consider the action, and *être* when regard is had to the result of the action.

Aborder,	<i>to land.</i>	descendre,	<i>to go down.</i>
accourir,	<i>to run to.</i>	disparaître,	<i>to disappear.</i>
accroître,	<i>to increase.</i>	échapper,	<i>to escape.</i>
apparaître,	<i>to appear.</i>	grandir,	<i>to grow.</i>
croître,	<i>to grow.</i>	monter,	<i>to go up.</i>
déborder,	<i>to overflow.</i>	passer,	<i>to pass.</i>
demeurer,	<i>to remain.</i>	remonter,	<i>to go up again.</i>

### 173. § IV. OF PRONOMINAL VERBS.

*Pronominal* Verbs are those which are conjugated with two pronouns of the same person; as, *je me repens*, I repent; *il se propose*, he intends; *nous nous flattons*, we flatter ourselves.

174. *Pronominal* Verbs are called *reflected*, when they express an action or a state which relates only to the subject of the verb; as, *se blesser*, to hurt oneself;

*se réjouir*, to rejoice. They are called *reciprocal*, when they express a reciprocity of action between two or more subjects; as, *s'entr'aimer*, to love each other; *s'entr'aider*, to help one another.

175. Pronominal Verbs have no conjugation peculiar to themselves; they follow the one to which they belong, which is known by the termination of the Infinitive. In their compound tenses, they take the verb *être*, to be, contrary to the English expression, which requires *have*.

## 176. CONJUGATION OF A PRONOMINAL VERB.

### INFINITIVE.

PRESENT.	PAST.
Se promener, <i>to walk, to take a walk.</i>	S'être promené, } <i>to have walked.</i> or promenée, <i>f.</i>

PARTICIPLE PRESENT.	PARTICIPLE PAST.
Se promenant, <i>walking.</i>	S'étant promené, } <i>having walked.</i> or promenée, <i>f.</i>

*Simple Tenses.*

*Compound Tenses.*

### INDICATIVE.

PRESENT.	PRETERITE INDEFINITE.
Je me promène, <i>I walk.</i> tu te promènes, <i>thou walkest.</i> il se promène, <i>he walks.</i> nous nous promenons, <i>we walk.</i> vous vous promenez, <i>you walk.</i> ils se promènent, <i>they walk.</i>	Je me suis promené, tu t'es promené, il s'est promené, nous nous sommes promenés, vous vous êtes promenés, ils se sont promenés,

(I have)  
walked.

IMPERFECT.	PLUPERFECT.
Je me promenais, tu te promenais, il se promenait, nous nous promenions, vous vous promeniez, ils se promenaient,	Je m'étais promené, tu t'étais promené, il s'était promené, nous nous étions promenés, vous vous étiez promenés, ils s'étaient promenés,

(I was)  
walking.

(I had)  
walked.

PRETERITE DEFINITE.	PRETERITE ANTERIOR
Je me promenai, tu te promenais, il se promena, nous nous promenâmes, vous vous promenâtes, ils se promenèrent,	Je me fus promené, tu te fus promené, il se fut promené, nous nous fûmes promenés, vous vous fûtes promenés, ils se furent promenés,

(I walked.)

(I had)  
walked.



*Simple Tenses.*

**FUTURE ABSOLUTE.**

Je me promènerai,  
tu te promèneras,  
il se promènera,  
nous nous promènerons,  
vous vous promèneriez,  
ils se promèneront,

*I shall walk.*

*Compound Tenses.*

**FUTURE ANTERIOR.**

Je me serai promené,  
tu te seras promené,  
il se sera promené,  
nous nous serons proménés,  
vous vous serez proménés,  
ils se seront proménés,

*I shall have walked.*

**CONDITIONAL.**

**PRESENT.**

Je me promènerais,  
tu te promènerais,  
il se promènerait,  
nous nous promènerions,  
vous vous promèneriez,  
ils se promèneraient,

*I should walk.*

**PAST.**

Je me serais promené,  
tu te serais promené,  
il se serait promené,  
nous nous serions proménés,  
vous vous seriez proménés,  
ils se seraient proménés,

*I should have walked.*

**IMPERATIVE.**

Promène-toi,	<i>Walk (thou).</i>
qu'il se promène,	<i>let him walk.</i>
promenons-nous,	<i>let us walk.</i>
promenez-vous,	<i>walk (you).</i>
qu'ils se promènent,	<i>let them walk.</i>

**SUBJUNCTIVE.**

**PRESENT.**

Que je me promène,  
que tu te promènes,  
qu'il se promène,  
que nous nous promenions,  
que vous vous promeniez,  
qu'ils se promènent,

*That I may walk.*

**PRETERITE.**

Que je me sois promené,  
que tu te sois promené,  
qu'il se soit promené,  
que nous nous soyons proménés,  
que vous vous soyez proménés,  
qu'ils se soient proménés,

*That I may have walked.*

**IMPERFECT.**

Que je me promenasse,  
que tu te promenasses,  
qu'il se promenât,  
que nous nous promenassions,  
que vous vous promenassiez,  
qu'ils se promenassent,

*That I might walk.*

**PLUPERFECT.**

Que je me fusse promené,  
que tu te fusses promené,  
qu'il se fût promené, [menés,  
que nous nous fussions pro-  
que vous vous fussiez proménés,  
qu'ils se fussent proménés,

*That I might have walked.*

177. Conjugate in the same manner:—

S'accorder,	<i>to agree.</i>	s'emporter,	<i>to fly into a passion.</i>
s'adresser,	<i>to apply.</i>	s'enrhumer,	<i>to catch cold.</i>
s'avancer,	<i>to come or go forward.</i>	s'envoler,	<i>to fly away.</i>
se baigner,	<i>to bathe.</i>	se fâcher,	<i>to be angry.</i>
se baisser,	<i>to stoop.</i>	se hâter,	<i>to make haste.</i>
se dépêcher,	<i>to make haste.</i>	s'imaginer,	<i>to fancy.</i>
se déterminer,	<i>to resolve upon.</i>	se lever, &c.	<i>to rise, &amp;c.</i>

## EXERCISE LXVI.

INDIC. PRES.—That woman nurses herself too much.—  
*s'écouter trop.*

You wonder at that.—We take a walk (every day).  
*s'étonner de 101 se promener tous les jours.*

IMPERF.—I was riding (on horseback).—We were  
*se promener à cheval.*

fatiguing ourselves (to no purpose).—You were amusing  
*se fatiguer inutilement. s'amuser.*

yourself in the garden.—They quarrelled with everybody.  
*dans se disputer tout le monde.*

PRET. DEF.—I presented myself to the assembly.—He  
*se présenter assemblée f.*

lost himself in the crowd.—She laughed at his advice.—  
*se perdre foule f. se moquer de avis m.*

We applied to the prime minister.—You perceived  
*s'adresser premier ministre. s'apercevoir de*

the snare.—They met several times in the street  
*piège m. se rencontrer 123 fois rue f.*

## EXERCISE LXVII.

PRET. INDEF.—I have exposed myself.—He has amused  
*s'exposer s'amuser*

himself.—She has revenged herself.—Where did you stop?  
*se venger s'arrêter*

PLUPERF.—I had fallen asleep.—They had grown rich  
*s'endormir s'enrichir*

at your expense.—He had got up at four o'clock.  
*dépens pl. se lever heures.*

FUT. ABS.—I shall bathe to-morrow.—You will  
*se baigner demain.*

catch cold.—I shall warm myself.—He will grow bold.—  
*s'enrhumer se chauffer s'enhardir*

They will defend themselves well.—They will fly away.  
*se défendre*

IMPERA.—Let us rest under the shade of this  
*se reposer à ombre f.*

tree.—Rise from there, that is not your place.  
*arbre m. se lever là ce —f.*

# 178. MODEL

## OF A REFLECTED VERB CONJUGATED NEGATIVELY

### INFINITIVE.

#### Simple Tenses.

#### Compound Tenses.

##### PRESENT.

##### PAST.

Ne pas se lever, { <i>not to rise, not to get up.</i>	Ne s'être pas levé, { <i>not to have or levée, f. risen.</i>
---	--

##### PARTICIPLE PRESENT.

##### PARTICIPLE PAST.

Ne se levant pas, <i>not rising.</i>	Ne s'étant pas levé, or levée, f. { <i>not having risen.</i>
--------------------------------------	--

### INDICATIVE.

##### PRESENT.

Je ne me lève pas,  
tu ne te lèves pas,  
il ne se lève pas,  
nous ne nous levons pas,  
vous ne vous levez pas,  
ils ne se lèvent pas,

*I do not rise.*

##### PRETERITE INDEFINITE.

Je ne me suis pas levé,  
tu ne t'es pas levé,  
il ne s'est pas levé, [levés,  
nous ne nous sommes pas  
vous ne vous êtes pas levés,  
ils ne se sont pas levés,

*I have not risen.*

##### IMPERFECT.

Je ne me levais pas,  
tu ne te levais pas,  
il ne se levait pas,  
nous ne nous levions pas,  
vous ne vous leviez pas,  
ils ne se levaient pas,

*I was not rising.*

##### PLUPERFECT.

Je ne m'étais pas levé,  
tu ne t'étais pas levé,  
il ne s'était pas levé, [levés,  
nous ne nous étions pas  
vous ne vous étiez pas levés,  
ils ne s'étaient pas levés,

*I had not risen.*

##### PRETERITE DEFINITE.

Je ne me levai pas,  
tu ne te levais pas,  
il ne se leva pas,  
nous ne nous levâmes pas,  
vous ne vous levâtes pas,  
ils ne se levèrent pas,

*I did not rise.*

##### PRETERITE ANTERIOR.

Je ne me fus pas levé,  
tu ne te fus pas levé,  
il ne se fut pas levé, [levés,  
nous ne nous fûmes pas  
vous ne vous fûtes pas levés,  
ils ne se furent pas levés,

*I had not risen.*

##### FUTURE ABSOLUTE.

Je ne me lèverai pas,  
tu ne te lèveras pas,  
il ne se lèvera pas,  
nous ne nous lèverons pas,  
vous ne vous lèverez pas,  
ils ne se lèveront pas,

*I shall not rise.*

##### FUTURE ANTERIOR.

Je ne me serai pas levé,  
tu ne te seras pas levé,  
il ne se sera pas levé, [levés,  
nous ne nous serons pas  
vous ne vous serez pas levés,  
ils ne se seront pas levés,

*I shall not have risen.*

## CONDITIONAL.

*Simple Tenses.**Compound Tenses*

## PRESENT.

## PAST.

Je ne me lèverais pas,  
tu ne te lèverais pas,  
il ne se lèverait pas,  
nous ne nous lèverions pas,  
vous ne vous lèveriez pas,  
ils ne se lèveraient pas,

*I should not  
rise.*

Je ne me serais pas levé,  
tu ne te serais pas levé,  
il ne se serait pas levé, [levés  
nous ne nous serions pas  
vous ne vous seriez pas levés  
ils ne se seraient pas levés,

*I should not  
have risen.*

## IMPERATIVE.

Ne te lève pas,  
qu'il ne se lève pas,  
ne nous levons pas,  
ne vous levez pas,  
qu'ils ne se lèvent pas,

*Do not rise.  
let him not rise.  
let us not rise.  
do not rise.  
let them not rise.*

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

## PRESENT.

## PRETERITE.

*That I may not rise, &c.*  
Que je ne me lève pas  
que tu ne te lèves pas.  
qu'il ne se lève pas.  
que nous ne nous levions pas.  
que vous ne vous leviez pas.  
qu'ils ne se lèvent pas.

*That I may not have risen, &c.*  
Que je ne me sois pas levé.  
que tu ne te sois pas levé.  
qu'il ne se soit pas levé.  
que nous ne nous soyons pas  
levés.  
que vous ne vous soyez pas  
levés.  
qu'ils ne se soient pas levés.

## IMPERFECT.

## PLUPERFECT.

*That I might not rise, &c.*  
Que je ne me levasse pas.  
que tu ne te levasses pas.  
qu'il ne se levât pas.  
que nous ne nous levassions  
pas.  
que vous ne vous levassiez  
pas.  
qu'ils ne se levassent pas.

*That I might not have risen, &c.*  
Que je ne me fusse pas levé.  
que tu ne te fusses pas levé.  
qu'il ne se fût pas levé.  
que nous ne nous fussions pas  
levés.  
que vous ne vous fussiez pas  
levés.  
qu'ils ne se fussent pas levés.

## 179. REFLECTED VERB, INTERROGATIVELY.

## INDICATIVE.

*Simple Tenses.*

## PRESENT.

Me coupé-je? *or*,  
Est-ce que je me coupe?  
te coupes-tu?  
se coupe-t-il?  
nous coupons-nous?  
vous coupez-vous?  
se coupent-ils?

*Do I cut—  
myself?*

*Compound Tenses.*

## PRETERITE INDEFINITE.

Me suis-je coupé?  
t'es-tu coupé?  
s'est-il coupé?  
nous sommes-nous coupés?  
vous êtes-vous coupés?  
se sont-ils coupés?

*Have I cut  
myself?*

## IMPERFECT.

Me coupais-je?  
te coupais-tu?  
se coupait-il?  
nous coupions-nous?  
vous coupiez-vous?  
se coupaient-ils?

*Was I cut—  
ting myself?*

## PLUPERFECT.

M'étais-je coupé?  
t'étais-tu coupé?  
s'était-il coupé?  
nous étions-nous coupés?  
vous étiez-vous coupés?  
s'étaient-ils coupés?

*Had I cut  
myself?*

## PRETERITE DEFINITE.

Me coupai-je?  
te coupas-tu?  
se coupa-t-il?  
nous coupâmes-nous?  
vous coupâtes-vous?  
se coupèrent-ils?

*Did I cut  
myself?*

## PRETERITE ANTERIOR.

Me fus-je coupé?  
te fus-tu coupé?  
se fut-il coupé?  
nous fûmes-nous coupés?  
vous fûtes-vous coupés?  
se furent-ils coupés?

*Had I cut  
myself?*

## FUTURE ABSOLUTE.

Me couperai-je?  
te couperas-tu?  
se coupera-t-il?  
nous couperons-nous?  
vous couperez-vous?  
se couperont-ils?

*Shall I cut  
myself?*

## FUTURE ANTERIOR.

Me serai-je coupé?  
te seras-tu coupé?  
se sera-t-il coupé?  
nous serons-nous coupés?  
vous serez-vous coupés?  
se seront-ils coupés?

*Shall I have  
cut myself?*

## CONDITIONAL

## PRESENT.

Me couperais-je?  
te couperais-tu?  
se couperait-il?  
nous couperions-nous?  
vous couperiez-vous?  
se couperaient-ils?

*Should I cut  
myself?*

## PAST.

Me serais-je coupé?  
te serais-tu coupé?  
se serait-il coupé?  
nous serions-nous coupés?  
vous seriez-vous coupés?  
se seraient-ils coupés?

*Should I have  
cut myself?*

# 180. REFLECTED VERB CONJUGATED INTERROGATIVELY AND NEGATIVELY.

## INDICATIVE.

### Simple Tenses.

#### PRESENT.

Ne me flatté-je pas ?  
*Do I not flatter myself ?*  
 ne te flattes-tu pas ? &c.  
*dost thou not flatter thyself ? &c.*

#### IMPERFECT.

Ne me flattais-je pas ? &c.  
*Was I not flattering myself ? &c.*

#### PRETERITE DEFINITE.

Ne me flattai-je pas ? &c.  
*Did I not flatter myself ? &c.*

#### FUTURE ABSOLUTE.

Ne me flatterai-je pas ? &c.  
*Shall I not flatter myself ? &c.*

### Compound Tenses.

#### PRETERITE INDEFINITE.

Ne me suis-je pas flatté ?  
*Have I not flattered myself ?*  
 ne t'es-tu pas flatté ? &c.  
*hast thou not flattered thyself ? &c.*

#### PLUPERFECT.

Ne m'étais-je pas flatté ? &c.  
*Had I not flattered myself ? &c.*

#### PRETERITE ANTERIOR.

Ne me fus-je pas flatté ? &c.  
*Had I not flattered myself ? &c.*

#### FUTURE ANTERIOR.

Ne me serai-je pas flatté ? &c.  
*Shall I not have flattered myself ? &c.*

## CONDITIONAL.

#### PRESENT.

Ne me flatterais-je pas ? &c.  
*Should I not flatter myself ? &c.*

#### PAST.

Ne me serais-je pas flatté ? &c.  
*Should I not have flattered myself ? &c.*

## EXERCISE LXVIII.

I do not flatter myself. — She is not getting up. — We  
*se flatter* *se lever*  
 do not intend to travel this year. — You do not  
*se proposer de voyager* *année f.*  
 make haste. — She will not catch cold. — I would not  
*se dépêcher* *s'enrhumer*  
 expose myself so rashly. — Is he washing himself? — Do  
*s'exposer* *si témérairement.* *se laver*  
 you hide yourself? — Are they amusing themselves? —  
*se cacher* *s'amuser*

Was he rejoicing at his good fortune? — Do you not  
*se réjouir de* — f.

deceive yourself? — Have we not flattered ourselves without  
*se tromper* *sans*

foundation? — Will they not lose themselves in the wood? —  
*fondement* *se perdre* *bois m.*

We never rise before seven o'clock in winter. — Is she not  
*avant* *heures* *hiver.*

getting up? — Have they not risen too late this morning?  
*ind-4* *tard* *matin m.*

## 181. § V. OF IMPERSONAL OR UNIPERSONAL VERBS.

The Verbs to which the old Grammarians give generally the name of *impersonal*, and the modern that of *unipersonal*,\* are those which are used only in the third person singular of their tenses; as, *il faut*, it is necessary; *il y a*, there is, there are.

Unipersonal Verbs have their inflections according to the conjugation to which they belong; and, in their compound tenses, some take *avoir*, as, *il a plu*, *il a tonné*; and others take *être*, as, *il est résulté*, *il est arrivé*; but in either case, the past participle is invariable.

182. LIST of the Unipersonal Verbs of most general occurrence:—

Il pleut, —	<i>it rains.</i>	il convient,	<i>it becomes.</i>
il neige, —	<i>it snows.</i>	il faut, —	<i>it is necessary.</i>
il grêle,	<i>it hails.</i>	il importe,	<i>it matters.</i>
il tonne,	<i>it thunders.</i>	il paraît,	<i>it appears.</i>
il éclaire,	<i>it lightens.</i>	il semble,	<i>it seems.</i>
il gèle,	<i>it freezes.</i>	ils'ensuit que,	<i>it follows that.</i>
il dégèle,	<i>it thaws.</i>	il sied,	<i>it is becoming.</i>
il arrive,	<i>it happens.</i>	il y a, —	<i>there is, there are.</i>

\* IMPERSONAL means, *without a person*; UNIPERSONAL, *with one person*.

## 183. CONJUGATION OF THE UNIPERSONAL VERB

*PLEUVOIR*, TO RAIN.

<i>Pres. Part.</i>	<i>pleuvant, raining.</i>	<i>Past Part.</i>	<i>plu, rained.</i>
<i>IND. Pres.</i>	<i>il pleut, it rains.</i>	<i>Pret. Indef.</i>	<i>il a plu.</i>
<i>Imperf.</i>	<i>il pleuvait, it was raining.</i>	<i>Pluperf.</i>	<i>il avait plu.</i>
<i>Pret. Def.</i>	<i>il plut, it rained.</i>	<i>Pret. Ant.</i>	<i>il eut plu.</i>
<i>Fut. Abs.</i>	<i>il pleuvra, it will rain.</i>	<i>Fut. Ant.</i>	<i>il aura plu.</i>
<i>COND. Pres.</i>	<i>il pleuvrait, it would rain.</i>	<i>Past,</i>	<i>il aurait plu.</i>
<i>(No Imperative.)</i>			
<i>SUBJ. Pres.</i>	<i>qu'il pleuve, that it may rain.</i>	<i>Pret.</i>	<i>qu'il ait plu.</i>
<i>Imperf.</i>	<i>qu'il plût, that it might rain.</i>	<i>Pluperf.</i>	<i>qu'il eût plu.</i>

## 184. CONJUGATION OF THE UNIPERSONAL VERB

*NEIGER*, TO SNOW.

<i>IND. Pres.</i>	<i>il neige, it snows.</i>	<i>Pret. Indef.</i>	<i>il a neigé.</i>
<i>Imperf.</i>	<i>il neigeait, it was snowing.</i>	<i>Pluperf.</i>	<i>il avait neigé.</i>
<i>Pret. Def.</i>	<i>il neigea, it snowed.</i>	<i>Pret. Ant.</i>	<i>il eut neigé.</i>
<i>Fut. Abs.</i>	<i>il neigera, it will snow.</i>	<i>Fut. Ant.</i>	<i>il aura neigé.</i>
<i>COND. Pres.</i>	<i>il neigerait, it would snow.</i>	<i>Past,</i>	<i>il aurait neigé.</i>
<i>(No Imperative.)</i>			
<i>SUBJ. Pres.</i>	<i>qu'il neige, that it may snow.</i>	<i>Pret.</i>	<i>qu'il ait neigé.</i>
<i>Imperf.</i>	<i>qu'il neigeât, that it might snow.</i>	<i>Pluperf.</i>	<i>qu'il eût neigé.</i>

## 185. CONJUGATION OF THE UNIPERSONAL VERB

*GELER*, TO FREEZE.

<i>IND. Pres.</i>	<i>il gèle, it freezes.</i>	<i>Pret. Indef.</i>	<i>il a gelé.</i>
<i>Imperf.</i>	<i>il gelait, it was freezing.</i>	<i>Pluperf.</i>	<i>il avait gelé.</i>
<i>Pret. Def.</i>	<i>il gela, it froze.</i>	<i>Pret. Ant.</i>	<i>il eut gelé.</i>
<i>Fut. Abs.</i>	<i>il gèlera, it will freeze.</i>	<i>Fut. Ant.</i>	<i>il aura gelé.</i>
<i>COND. Pres.</i>	<i>il gèlerait, it would freeze.</i>	<i>Past,</i>	<i>il aurait gelé.</i>
<i>(No Imperative.)</i>			
<i>SUBJ. Pres.</i>	<i>qu'il gèle, that it may freeze.</i>	<i>Pret.</i>	<i>qu'il ait gelé.</i>
<i>Imperf.</i>	<i>qu'il gelât, that it might freeze.</i>	<i>Pluperf.</i>	<i>qu'il eût gelé.</i>



## 186. Y AVOIR, THERE TO BE.

<i>Pres. Part.</i>	y ayant,	<i>there being.</i>
<i>Past Part.</i>	y ayant eu,	<i>there having been.</i>
<i>IND. Pres.</i>	il y a,	<i>there is, or there are.</i>
<i>Pret. Indef.</i>	il y a eu,	<i>there has been, or there have been.</i>
<i>Imperf.</i>	il y avait,	<i>there was, or there were.</i>
<i>Pluperf.</i>	il y avait eu,	<i>there had been.</i>
<i>Pret. Def.</i>	il y eut,	<i>there was, or there were.</i>
<i>Pret. Ant.</i>	il y eut eu,	<i>there had been.</i>
<i>Fut. Abs.</i>	il y aura,	<i>there will be.</i>
<i>Fut. Ant.</i>	il y aura eu,	<i>there will have been.</i>
<i>COND. Pres.</i>	il y aurait,	<i>there would be.</i>
<i>Past,</i>	il y aurait eu,	<i>there would have been.</i>

(No Imperative.)

<i>SUBJ. Pres.</i>	qu'il y ait,	<i>that there may be.</i>
<i>Pret.</i>	qu'il y ait eu,	<i>that there may have been.</i>
<i>Imperf.</i>	qu'il y eût,	<i>that there might be.</i>
<i>Pluperf.</i>	qu'il y eût eu,	<i>that there might have been.</i>

Examples of the same verb used interrogatively, negatively, &amp;c.

Y a-t-il ?	<i>is there ?</i>
il n'y a pas,	<i>there is not.</i>
y avait-il ?	<i>was there, or were there ?</i>
n'y a-t-il pas eu ?	<i>has there not been ?</i>
il n'y avait pas eu,	<i>there had not been.</i>
y aura-t-il ?	<i>will there be ?</i>
il n'y aura pas,	<i>there will not be.</i>
y aura-t-il eu ?	<i>will there have been ?</i>

N.B.—This verb remains always in the singular in French, although it is used in the plural in English, when followed by a substantive plural.

## 187. FALLOIR, TO BE NECESSARY.

<i>Pres. Part.</i>	none.	<i>[it must. Past Part.</i>	fallu.
<i>IND. Pres.</i>	il faut, <i>it is necessary,</i>	<i>Pret. Indef.</i>	il a fallu.
<i>Imperf.</i>	il fallait.	<i>Pluperf.</i>	il avait fallu.
<i>Pret. Def.</i>	il fallut.	<i>Pret. Ant.</i>	il eut fallu.
<i>Fut. Abs.</i>	il faudra.	<i>Fut. Ant.</i>	il aura fallu.
<i>COND. Pres.</i>	il faudrait.	<i>Past,</i>	il aurait fallu.

(No Imperative.)

<i>SUBJ. Pres.</i>	qu'il faille.	<i>Pret.</i>	qu'il ait fallu.
<i>Imperf.</i>	qu'il fallût.	<i>Pluperf.</i>	qu'il eût fallu.

188. REMARKS.—The usual construction of the verb  *falloir*  is to place the conjunction  *que*  after  *il faut, il fallait, &c.*  then to use the subject or nominative of the English verb  *must,*  as a subject to the second verb in

French, which must be put in the subjunctive; as, *Il faut que je vende ma maison*, I must sell my house. *Il faut que nous allions à la douane*, We must go to the custom-house.

Another construction is to allow the second verb to remain in the infinitive, as in English; then the personal pronoun which is the subject of the verb *must*, is to be expressed by one of the pronouns *me, te, lui, nous, vous, leur*, placed after the impersonal pronoun *il*; as, *Il me faut commencer mon ouvrage*, I must begin my work.

All expressions implying necessity, obligation, or want, may be rendered by *falloir*; as,

Il lui faut un habit.—(ACAD.)		<i>He wants a coat.</i>
Il me faut un dictionnaire.		<i>I want a dictionary.</i>

## EXERCISE LXIX.

N.B.—*The Tenses will now be used promiscuously.*

Does it rain?—*Was it not raining?*—I think it thunders.  
crois qu'

Does it not lighten?—Did it freeze last night?—  
ind-4 art. 2<sup>dernier</sup> 1<sup>nuit</sup> f.

Does it snow this morning?—*There is nothing to do.* —  
matin m. faire.

*There are many people.* — *There were more than a*  
beaucoup de gens. de \*

thousand persons. — *There has been a great battle.* — *There*  
bataille f.

*would be no harm.* — In Australia there are black swans.  
mal. Australie 32 2 1<sup>cygne</sup> m.

## EXERCISE LXX.

Children *must* obey their parents.—I *must* sell my horse. —  
obéir à — cheval m.

You *must* speak to him. — How much do you *want*?—They  
Combien

*must* answer. — *Must* I show you my work? — *It*  
répondre montrer ouvrage m.

*was necessary* to consent to that bargain. — *It would be*  
\* consentir marché m.

*necessary* (to inquire about it.) — *I want a French grammar.*  
s'en informer 2 1

## EXERCISE LXXI.

Go and see if it rains.—*It does not rain, but it will rain*  
*Allez \* voir mais*

soon.—*It does not snow.—It will snow to-morrow.—Do you*  
*bientôt. demain.*

think it freezes?—*It is freezing very hard.—I do not think so;*  
*croyez- subj-1 très fort. 2crois 1le*

it seems, on the contrary, that it thaws.—*It often hails in this*  
*à 78 2souvent 1*

country.—*There arrived some persons whom we did not*  
*pays m. Il ind-3 personne que*

expect.—*It appears that you (have not attended) to that*  
*attendre ind-2 ne vous êtes pas occupé de*

business.—*It is not becoming in you to contradict your father.*  
*affaire f. \* de contrarier*

—*There are crocodiles in the Nile and in some other rivers.*  
*32 — Nil m. quelques fleuve*

## EXERCISE LXXII.

Is there anyone here?—*There is nobody.—Were there any*  
*quelqu'un 116*

cavalry at the review?—*There would be more happiness*  
*cavalerie f. revue f. plus de bonheur*

if everyone knew how to moderate his desires.—*There would*  
*chacun savait \* \* modérer désir*

not be so many duels, if people were to reflect that  
*tant de — l'on \* \* réfléchir ind-2*

one of the first obligations of a Christian is to forgive  
*f. — f. chrétien de pardonner art.*

injuries.—*I wish that there were more order in his conduct.*  
*injure voudrais subj-2 d' conduite f.*

—*It is not necessary to be a conjurer to guess his motives.—*  
*\* \* sorcier pour deviner motif*

Somebody asked Diogenes at what hour people should  
*On ind-2 à Diogène il falloir ind-2*

dine: If one is rich, replied he, when one likes; if one is  
*l'on répondre quand on veut*

poor, when one can.  
*peut.*

*Ecole nat 17*

BEFORE giving the conjugation of the *Irregular Verbs*, we shall give examples of several verbs, which, although regular in their conjugation, present a peculiarity in the orthography of some of their tenses.

# 189. § I. MODEL FOR THE CONJUGATION OF VERBS ENDING IN *GER*.

## *MANGER*, TO EAT.

<i>Part. Pres.</i> mangeant.		<i>Part. Past</i> , mangé.	
IND. }	Je mange,	tu manges,	il mange ;
Pres. }	nous mangeons,	vous mangez,	ils mangent.
Imp.	Je mangeais,	tu mangeais,	il mangeait ;
	nous mangions,	vous mangiez,	ils mangeaient.
Pret.	Je mangeai,	tu mangeas,	il mangea ;
	nous mangeâmes,	vous mangeâtes,	ils mangèrent.
Fut.	Je mangerai,	tu mangeras,	il mangera ;
	nous mangerons,	vous mangerez,	ils mangeront.
COND.	Je mangerais,	tu mangerais,	il mangerait ;
	nous mangerions,	vous mangeriez,	ils mangeraient.
IMPER.	mangeons,	mange,	qu'il mange ;
		mangez,	qu'ils mangent.
SUBJ. }	Je mange,	tu manges,	il mange ;
Pres. }	nous mangions,	vous mangiez,	ils mangent.
Imp.	Je mangeasse,	tu mangeasses,	il mangeât ;
	nous mangeassions,	vous mangeassiez,	ils mangeassent.

## 190. Conjugate in the same manner :—

Abréger,	to abridge.	engager,	to engage.
arranger,	to arrange.	gager,	to bet.
bouger,	to stir.	juger,	to judge.
corriger,	to correct.	négliger,	to neglect.
déranger,	to disorder.	partager,	to divide, to share.
diriger,	to direct.	songer,	to think.
encourager,	to encourage.	venger,	to revenge, &c.

REMARK. — Verbs ending in *ger*, require an *e* mute after the *g*, when that consonant is followed by the vowel *a* or *o*, in order that the *g* may preserve its soft sound ; as, *mangeant*, *mangeons*, *mangeais* ; but we write without *e* mute, *mangions*, *mangèrent*, because the *g* is not followed by the vowels *a*, *o*.

## EXERCISE LXXIII.

The eye *judges* of colours; the ear *judges* of  
*œil m.* art. *couleur f.* *oreille f.*  
 sounds.—Where do you *direct* your steps?—He *disturbed*  
 art. *son m.* *pas m.* *déranger*  
 everybody. — The example of the general *encouraged* the  
*tout le monde.* *exemple m.*  
 army. — Have you *corrected* your exercise? — I *would wager*  
*armée f.* *thème m.* *gager*  
 a hundred francs (that it is not so.)—*Abridge* your speech. —  
 \* — *m. que cela n'est pas.* *discours m.*  
 Don't *stir*. — We *protect* the widow and the orphan.  
*protéger* *veuve* *orphelin*

191. § II. MODEL FOR THE CONJUGATION OF VERBS  
 ENDING IN *ÊER*.

*AGRÊER*, TO ACCEPT, TO PLEASE.

	<i>Part. Pres. agréant.</i>	<i>Part. Past, agréé.</i>	
IND. }	J'agrée,	tu agrées,	il agrée;
Pres. }	nous agréons,	vous agréez,	ils agrément.
Imp.	J'agréais,	tu agréais,	il agréait:
	nous agréions,	vous agréiez,	ils agréaient.
Pret.	J'agréai,	tu agréas,	il agréa;
	nous agréâmes,	vous agréâtes,	ils agréèrent.
Fut.	J'agréerai,	tu agréeras,	il agréera;
	nous agréerons,	vous agréerez,	ils agréeront.
COND.	J'agréerais,	tu agréerais,	il agréerait;
	nous agréerions,	vous agréeriez,	ils agréeraient.
IMPER.		agrée,	qu'il agrée;
	agréons,	agréez,	qu'ils agrément.
SUBJ. }	Je j'agrée,	tu agrées,	il agrée;
Pres. }	et nous agréions,	vous agréiez,	ils agrément.
Imp.	Je j'agréasse,	tu agréasses,	il agréât;
	et nous agréassions,	vous agréassiez,	ils agréassent.

192. Conjugate in the same manner:—

Créer,	<i>to create.</i>	suppléer,	<i>to supply.</i>
récréer,	<i>to divert.</i>	&c.	&c.

REMARK.—The Past Participle of verbs in *éer* requires an additional *e* to form the feminine. In the Future and Conditional where there are two, the poets usually suppress one.

Votre cœur d'Ardaric *agrèrait*-il la flamme?—(CORNEILLE.)

Nos hôtes *agrèront* les soins qui leur sont dus.—(LA FONTAINE.)

In prose, that suppression would be an error.

### 193. § III MODEL FOR THE CONJUGATION OF VERBS ENDING IN *CER*.

#### *AVANCER*, TO ADVANCE.

<i>Part. Pres. avançant.</i>		<i>Part. Past, avancé.</i>	
IND. }	J'avance,	tu avances,	il avance ;
Pres. }	nous avançons,	vous avancez,	ils avancent.
Imp.	J'avançais,	tu avançais,	il avançait ;
	nous avançons,	vous avanciez,	ils avançaient.
Pret.	J'avançai,	tu avanças,	il avança ;
	nous avançâmes,	vous avançâtes,	ils avancèrent.
Fut.	J'avancerai,	tu avanceras,	il avancera ;
	nous avancerons,	vous avancerez,	ils avanceront.
COND.	J'avancerais,	tu avancerais,	il avancerait ;
	nous avancerions,	vous avanceriez,	ils avanceraient.
IMPER.		avance,	qu'il avance ;
	avançons,	avancez,	qu'ils avancent.
SUBJ. }	je j'avance,	tu avances,	il avance ;
Pres. }	vous avançons,	vous avanciez,	ils avancent.
Imp.	je j'avançasse,	tu avançasses,	il avançât ;
	vous avançassions,	vous avançassiez,	ils avançassent.

#### 194. Conjugate in the same manner :—

Amorcer,	<i>to bait.</i>	énoncer,	<i>to express, utter.</i>
annoncer,	<i>to announce.</i>	percer,	<i>to pierce.</i>
bercer,	<i>to rock.</i>	pincer,	<i>to pinch.</i>
commencer,	<i>to begin.</i>	rincer,	<i>to rinse, wash.</i>
devancer,	<i>to outrun.</i>	sucer,	<i>to suck.</i>
enfoncer,	<i>to sink, break open.</i>	&c.	&c.

REMARK.—In all these verbs the *c* takes a cedilla, when followed by the vowel *a* or *o*.

The same rule applies to those verbs in which it is followed by *u*, whenever it is required to give the *c* the soft pronunciation of *s*; as, *il reçut, il a aperçu*.

## EXERCISE LXXIV.

God *created* man after his own image.—God has *created*  
 art. à \* — f.  
 heaven and earth. — His proposal was *accepted*.—  
 art. *ciel* m. art. *proposition* f. *agréer*  
 I shall *make up* the rest.—He *announced* that news to all  
*suppléer* *nouvelle* f.  
 his friends.—It *was beginning* to rain when we set out. — A  
*quand* *partîmes*.  
 ball *pierced* his clothes. — Wash these glasses.  
*balle* f. *habit* m. pl. *Rincer* *verre* m.

195. § IV. MODEL FOR THE CONJUGATION OF  
VERBS ENDING IN *UER*.*JOUER*, TO PLAY.

	<i>Part. Pres. jouant.</i>	<i>Part. Past, joué.</i>	
IND. } Pres. }	Je joue, nous jouons,	tu joues, vous jouez,	il joue; ils jouent.
Imp.	Je jouais, nous jouions,	tu jouais, vous jouiez,	il jouait; ils jouaient.
Pret.	Je jouai, nous jouâmes,	tu jouas, vous jouâtes,	il joua; ils jouèrent
Fut.	Je jouerai, nous jouerons,	tu joueras, vous jouerez,	il jouera; ils joueront.
COND.	Je jouerais, nous jouerions,	tu jouerais, vous joueriez,	il jouerait; ils joueraient.
IMPER.	jouons,	joue, jouez,	qu'il joue; qu'ils jouent.
SUBJ. } Pres. }	que je joue, nous jouions,	tu joues, vous jouiez,	il joue; ils jouent.
Imp.	que je jouasse, nous jouassions,	tu jouasses, vous jouassiez,	il jouât; ils jouassent.

196. Conjugate in the same manner :—

Avouer,	<i>to avow, confess.</i>	distribuer,	<i>to distribute.</i>
attribuer,	<i>to attribute.</i>	nouer,	<i>to tie.</i>
clouer,	<i>to nail.</i>	secouer,	<i>to shake off.</i>
contribuer,	<i>to contribute.</i>	tuer,	<i>to kill.</i>
dénouer,	<i>to untie.</i>	&c.	&c.

REMARK.—In verbs of the first conjugation, when the termination *er* of the infinitive is preceded by a vowel, as in *jouer, prier, avouer*, etc. the *e* of the termination may be preserved or suppressed, in poetry, in the Future and Conditional; but, if it be suppressed, a circumflex accent is placed over the vowel preceding. So poets write *je jouerai* or *je jou<sup>u</sup>rai*; *j'avou<sup>u</sup>erai* or *j'avo<sup>u</sup>rai*; *je pri<sup>u</sup>erai* or *je pri<sup>u</sup>rais*.

### 197. § V. MODEL FOR THE CONJUGATION OF VERBS ENDING IN *ELER*.

#### *APPELER*, TO CALL.

	<i>Part. Pres. appellant.</i>		<i>Part. Past, appelé.</i>
IND. }	J'appelle,	tu appelles,	il appelle ;
Pres. }	nous appelons,	vous appelez,	ils appellent.
Imp.	J'appelais,	tu appelais,	il appelait ;
	nous appelions,	vous appeliez,	ils appelaient.
Pret.	J'appelai,	tu appelas,	il appela ;
	nous appelâmes,	vous appelâtes,	ils appelèrent.
Fut.	J'appellerai,	tu appelleras,	il appellera ;
	nous appellerons,	vous appellerez,	ils appelleront.
COND.	J'appellerais,	tu appellerais,	il appellerait ;
	nous appellerions,	vous appelleriez,	ils appelleraient.
IMPER.		appelle,	qu'il appelle ;
	appelons,	appelez,	qu'ils appellent.
SUBJ. }	que j'appelle	tu appelles,	il appelle ;
Pres. }	que nous appelions,	vous appeliez,	ils appellent.
Imp.	que J'appelasse,	tu appellasses,	il appelât ;
	que nous appelassions,	vous appelassiez,	ils appelassent.

198. Conjugate in the same manner :—

Amonceler,	<i>to heap up.</i>	épeler,	<i>to spell.</i>
atteler,	<i>to put horses to.</i>	niveler,	<i>to level.</i>
chanceler,	<i>to totter, stagger.</i>	rappeler,	<i>to recall.</i>
dételer,	<i>to unyoke.</i>	renouveler, &c.	<i>to renew, &amp;c.</i>



199. REMARKS.—As has been exemplified in *appeler*, verbs ending in *eler*, double the *l* before an *e* mute: *J'appelle, tu nivelles, il étincelle, ils renouvelleraient*, etc.; but we write with a single *l*: *nous appelons, vous nivelez, ils étincelaient*, etc., because the vowel which follows the *l* is not an *e* mute.

200. *Geler*, to freeze; *dégeler*, to thaw; *harceler*, to harass; *peler*, to peel, do not double the *l*, but the *e*, which precedes it, takes a grave accent: *Il gèle, il dégèlera, il harcèle, je pèle, ils pèleraient*, etc.

201. *Receler*, to receive and conceal stolen things, to contain; *révéler*, to reveal, &c. being terminated by *éler*, and not *eler*, never double the *l*: *Je recèle, tu révèles*, etc.

## EXERCISE LXXV.

Do you *play* on the violin? — The children *are playing* at  
*de violon m.* *à*

blindman's buff. — He was *killed* by a (cannon shot). — The  
*colin-maillard.* *de coup de canon m.*

bells *call* to church. — *Call* them (as you please.) —  
*cloche f.* *art. église f.* *comme il vous plaira.*

He is (near falling), he *staggers*. — We have *renewed*  
*près de tomber*

acquaintance. — *Spell* that word. — She *is peeling* an apple.  
*connaissance.* *mot m.*

202. § VI. MODEL FOR THE CONJUGATION OF  
VERBS ENDING IN *ETER*.*JETER*, TO THROW.

	<i>Part. Pres. jetant.</i>	<i>Part. Past, jeté.</i>	
<i>IND. Pres.</i>	Je jette, nous jetons,	tu jettes, vous jetez,	il jette; ils jettent.
<i>Imp.</i>	Je jetais, nous jetions,	tu jetais, vous jetiez,	il jetait; ils jetaient.
<i>Pret.</i>	Je jetai, nous jetâmes,	tu jetas, vous jetâtes,	il jeta; ils jetèrent.
<i>Fut.</i>	Je jetterai, nous jetterons,	tu jetteras, vous jetterez,	il jettera; ils jetteront.

COND.	Je jetterais, nous jetterions,	tu jetterais, vous jetteriez,	il jetterait ; ils jetteraient.
IMPER.	jetons,	jette, jetez,	qu'il jette ; qu'ils jettent.
SUBJ. } Pres. }	je jette, nous jetions,	tu jettes, vous jetiez,	il jette ; ils jettent.
Imp. }	je jetasse, nous jetassions,	tu jetasses, vous jetassiez,	il jetât ; ils jetassent.

Conjugate in the same manner:—

Cacheter, *to seal*. | Projeter, *to project*, &c.

203. *Acheter*, to buy; *étiqueter*, to ticket, make *j'achète*, *j'achèterai*, *ils étiquètent*, &c. and not *j'achette*, *j'achetterai*, *ils étiquettent*.—(ACAD.)

## 204. § VII. MODEL FOR THE CONJUGATION OF VERBS ENDING IN *YER*.

### *EMPLOYER*, TO EMPLOY.

	<i>Part. Pres.</i> employant.		<i>Part. Past</i> , employé.
IND. } Pres. }	J'emploie, nous employons,	tu emploies, vous employez,	il emploie ; ils emploient.
Imp.	J'employais, nous employions,	tu employais, vous employiez,	il employait ; ils employaient.
Pret.	J'employai, nous employâmes,	tu employas, vous employâtes,	il employa ; ils employèrent.
Fut.	J'emploierai, nous emploierons,	tu emploieras, vous emploierez,	il emploiera ; ils emploieront.
COND.	J'emploierais, nous emploierions,	tu emploierais, vous emploieriez,	il emploierait ; ils emploieraient.
IMPER.	employons,	emploie, employez,	qu'il emploie ; qu'ils emploient.
SUBJ. } Pres. }	je j'emploie, nous employions,	tu emploies, vous employiez,	il emploie ; ils emploient.
Imp. }	je j'employasse, nous employassions,	tu employasses, vous employassiez,	il employât ; ils employas- sent.

205. Conjugate in the same manner verbs in *y*er, and in general all those whose Present Participle ends in *yant*; as:—

Balayer,	<i>to sweep.</i>	nettoyer,	<i>to clean.</i>
effrayer,	<i>to frighten.</i>	appuyer,	<i>to prop; to rest upon.</i>
essayer,	<i>to try.</i>	essuyer,	<i>to wipe.</i>
payer,	<i>to pay.</i>	ennuyer,	<i>to tire.</i>

206. *Envoyer*, to send; and *renvoyer*, to send back, deviate from the preceding model of conjugation in the Future and Conditional, making—*J'enverrai, j'enverrais; je renverrai, je renverrais*, instead of *j'enverrai, &c.*

207. REMARK.—In the preceding verbs, the *y* is preserved in every part of the verb, except before the *mute* terminations *e, es, ent*, where it is changed into *i*; *Je paie,\* tu nettoies, ils appuient*. Moreover, these verbs take a *y* and an *i* in the two first persons plural of the Imperfect of the Indicative and Present of the Subjunctive; that is, the *y* of the radical part (as *employ*), and the *i* of the final part *ions, iez*.

### EXERCISE LXXVI.

That throws me into a great dilemma. — He threw himself  
*dans* *embarras* m.

into the midst of the enemy. — Have you sealed your  
*à* *milieu* m. *ennemi* m. pl.

letter? — He is cleaning his gun. — All that he takes, he  
*fusil* m. *ce qu'* *prend*

*pays* (ready money). — I shall endeavour to persuade  
*le* *argent comptant.* *essayer* *de persuader*

them. — He will support you with all his credit. — He  
*appuyer* *de* *crédit* m.

*employs* everybody to obtain that place. — That tires me  
*tout le monde pour* — f.

to death. — Don't frighten the child. — I shall send a man.  
*art. mort* f. *enfant.*

\* The French Academy leaves the choice of writing *il paye*, or *il paie*; *je payerai*, or *je paierai*, or even *je pairai*; but the best modern Grammarians are agreed on the change of the *y* into *i*, and present usage is conformable to their opinion.

208. § VIII. MODEL FOR THE CONJUGATION OF VERBS ENDING IN *IER*.*PRIER*, TO PRAY, TO REQUEST.

	<i>Part. Pres. priant.</i>	<i>Part. Past, prié.</i>
IND. } Je prie,	tu pries,	il prie;
Pres. } nous priions,	vous priez,	ils prient
Imp. Je priais,	tu priais,	il priait;
nous priions,	vous priez,	ils priaient.
Pret. Je priaï,	tu priaï,	il priaï;
nous priaïmes,	vous priaïtes,	ils priaïrent.
Fut. Je prierai,	tu prieras,	il prierà;
nous prierons,	vous prierez,	ils prieront.
COND. Je prierais,	tu prierais,	il prierait;
nous prierions,	vous prieriez,	ils prieraient.
IMPER. priions,	prie,	qu'il prie;
	priez,	qu'ils prient.
SUBJ. } Je prie,	tu pries,	il prie;
Pres. } nous priions,	vous priez,	ils prient.
Imp. Je priasse,	tu priasses,	il priaît;
nous priassions,	vous priassiez,	ils priaissent.

209. Conjugate in the same manner all verbs ending in *ier*; as,

Certifier,	<i>to certify.</i>	nier,	<i>to deny.</i>
crier,	<i>to cry.</i>	oublier,	<i>to forget.</i>
étudier,	<i>to study.</i>	plier,	<i>to bend.</i>
lier,	<i>to tie.</i>	relier,	<i>to bind.</i>
manier,	<i>to handle.</i>	remercier,	<i>to thank.</i>

REMARK.—*Prier* and all verbs whose Present Participle ends in *iant*, take *ii* in the first and the second person plural of the Imperfect of the Indicative and Present of the Subjunctive; that is, the *i* of the radical part (as *pri*), and the *i* of the termination: *Nous priions*, *vous priez*; *que nous liions*, *que vous liez*.

## EXERCISE LXXVII.

I thank you for the honour you do me.—He studies  
*de que faites*  
 night and day.—The plank was bending under him.—  
*planche f. sous*

I *shall* never *forget* (what I owe you). — *Request* him to  
*ce que je vous dois.* *de*  
 come and (speak to me). — One (does not become) learned  
 \* *me parler.* *On ne devient pas*  
 without *studying*. — In *handling* that vase, he broke it.  
*sans* *inf-l* — *m.* *briser ind-4*

## OF IRREGULAR AND DEFECTIVE VERBS.

210. However irregular a verb may be, its irregularities never occur in the compound tenses, for which reason we shall, except in a very few instances, dispense with these tenses in the various conjugations of irregular verbs.

### § I. IRREGULAR VERBS OF THE FIRST CONJUGATION.

The only irregular verbs of this conjugation are *aller*, to go; *s'en aller*, to go away; *envoyer*, to send; and *renvoyer*, to send back.

#### 211. *ALLER*, TO GO.

	<i>Part. Pres.</i> allant.	<i>Part. Past,</i> allé.
IND. } Pres. }	Je vais, nous allons,	tu vas, vous allez, ils vont.
Imp.	J'allais, nous allions,	tu allais, vous alliez, il allait; ils allaient.
Pret.	J'allai, nous allâmes,	tu allas, vous allâtes, il alla; ils allèrent.
Fut.	J'irai, nous irons,	tu iras, vous irez, il ira; ils iront.
COND. } Pres. }	J'irais, nous irions,	tu irais, vous iriez, il irait; ils iraient.
IMPER.	allons,	va, allez, qu'il aille; qu'ils aillent.
SUBJ. } Pres. }	que j'aille, que nous allions,	tu ailles, vous alliez, il aille; ils aillent.
Imp.	que j'allasse, que nous allussions,	tu allasses, vous allassiez, il allât; ils allassent.

212. REMARKS.—*Aller* is conjugated with the auxiliary *être*, in all its compound tenses; *Je suis allé, j'étais allé, &c.*

The Imperative *va* takes an *s*, when followed by *en* or *y*; as, *vas en savoir des nouvelles; vas-y.*

We sometimes say, *je fus, j'ai été, j'avais été, j'aurais été*, instead of *j'allai, je suis allé, j'étais allé, je serais allé*. These expressions, however, have this difference, that *avoir été* implies the return, and *être allé* does not. Thus: *il a été à Rome*, means, that he went to Rome, and is returned, or that he has been in Rome, and has left it; but *il est allé à Rome* means only, that he is gone to Rome.—(ACAD.)

### 213. *S'EN ALLER*, TO GO AWAY.

#### INFINITIVE.

##### PRESENT.

*S'en aller, to go away.* | *S'en être allé, to have gone away.*

##### PAST.

##### PARTICIPLE PRESENT.

##### COMP. OF PARTICIPLE PRESENT.

*S'en allant, going away.* | *S'en étant allé, having gone away.*

PARTICIPLE PAST.—*En allé, gone away.*

#### INDICATIVE.

##### Simple Tenses.

##### Compound Tenses.

##### PRESENT.

*Je m'en vais,  
tu t'en vas,  
il s'en va,  
nous nous en allons,  
vous vous en allez,  
ils s'en vont,*

*I go, or am  
going away.*

##### PRETERITE INDEFINITE.

*Je m'en suis allé,  
tu t'en es allé,  
il s'en est allé,  
nous nous en sommes allés,  
vous vous en êtes allés,  
ils s'en sont allés,*

*I have gone  
away.*

##### IMPERFECT.

*Je m'en allais,  
tu t'en allais,  
il s'en allait,  
nous nous en allions,  
vous vous en alliez,  
ils s'en allaient,*

*I was going  
away.*

##### PLUPERFECT.

*Je m'en étais allé,  
tu t'en étais allé,  
il s'en était allé,  
nous nous en étions allés,  
vous vous en étiez allés,  
ils s'en étaient allés,*

*I had gone  
away.*

##### PRETERITE DEFINITE.

*Je m'en allai,  
tu t'en allas,  
il s'en alla,  
nous nous en allâmes,  
vous vous en allâtes,  
ils s'en allèrent,*

*I went  
away.*

##### PRETERITE ANTERIOR.

*Je m'en fus allé,  
tu t'en fus allé,  
il s'en fut allé,  
nous nous en fûmes allés,  
vous vous en fûtes allés,  
ils s'en furent allés,*

*I had gone  
away.*

*Simple Tenses.*

*Compound Tenses.*

FUTURE ABSOLUTE.

FUTURE ANTERIOR.

Je m'en irai,  
tu t'en iras,  
il s'en ira,  
nous nous en irons,  
vous vous en irez,  
ils s'en iront,

*I shall go  
away.*

Je m'en serai allé,  
tu t'en seras allé,  
il s'en sera allé,  
nous nous en serons allés,  
vous vous en serez allés,  
ils s'en seront allés,

*I shall have  
gone away.*

CONDITIONAL.

PRESENT.

PAST.

Je m'en irais,  
tu t'en irais,  
il s'en irait,  
nous nous en irions,  
vous vous en iriez,  
ils s'en Metaient,

*I should or  
should go away.*

Je m'en serais allé,  
tu t'en serais allé,  
il s'en serait allé,  
nous nous en serions allés,  
vous vous en seriez allés,  
ils s'en Metaient allés,

*I should have  
gone away.*

IMPERATIVE.

*Affirmatively.*

*Negatively.*

Va-t'en,  
qu'il s'en aille,  
allons-nous-en,  
allez-vous-en,  
qu'ils s'en aillent,

*Go (thou)  
away.*

Ne t'en va pas,  
qu'il ne s'en aille pas,  
ne nous en allons pas,  
ne vous en allez pas,  
qu'ils ne s'en aillent pas,

*Do not go  
away.*

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

PRETERITE.

Que je m'en aille,  
que tu t'en ailles,  
qu'il s'en aille,  
que nous nous en allions,  
que vous vous en alliez,  
qu'ils s'en aillent,

*That I may  
go away.*

Que je m'en sois allé,  
que tu t'en sois allé,  
qu'il s'en soit allé,  
nous nous en soyons  
vous vous en soyez  
ils s'en soient

*That I may  
have gone away.  
allés,*

IMPERFECT.

PLUPERFECT.

Que je m'en allasse,  
que tu t'en allasses,  
qu'il s'en allât,  
que nous nous en allussions,  
que vous vous en allassiez,  
qu'ils s'en allassent,

*That I might  
go away.*

Que je m'en fusse allé,  
que tu t'en fusses allé,  
qu'il s'en fût allé,  
nous nous en fussions  
vous vous en fussiez  
qu'ils s'en fussent

*That I might  
have gone away.  
allés,*

214. When *S'en aller* is used interrogatively, we say,  
*M'en irai-je, t'en iras-tu, s'en ira-t-il, nous en irons-nous,  
vous en irez-vous, s'en iront-ils ?*





COND. }	J'acquerrais,	tu acquerrais,	il acquerrait;
Pres. }	nous acquerriions,	vous acquerriez,	ils acquerriaient.
IMPER.	acquérons,	acquiérez,	qu'il acquière;
			qu'ils acquièrent.
SUBJ. }	Que j'acquière,	tu acquièrès,	il acquière;
Pres. }	Que nous acquiérions,	vous acquiériez,	ils acquièrent.
Imp.	Que j'acquisse,	tu acquisses,	il acquit;
	Que nous acquissions,	vous acquissiez,	ils acquissent.

218. Conjugate in the same manner:—

Conquérir, to conquer,	{ seldom used but in the infinitive, the preterite definite, the imperfect of the subjunctive, and the compound tenses.
Requérir, to request, to require,	{ chiefly used in law.
S'enquérir, to inquire,	{ seldom used but in the infinitive, and compound tenses.

*Querir*, to fetch, is used after the verbs *aller*, *venir*, *envoyer*; as, *allez querir*, go and fetch; *envoyez querir*, send for. It is confined to familiar conversation, and is getting obsolete. (*Querir* is better than *Quérir*.)

## 219. ASSAILLIR, TO ASSAULT.

Part. Pres. assaillant.

Part. Past, assailli.

IND. }	J'assaille,	tu assailles,	il assaille;
Pres. }	nous assaillons,	vous assaillez,	ils assaillent.
Imp.	J'assailais,	tu assaillais,	il assaillait;
	nous assaillions,	vous assailliez,	ils assaillaient.
Pret.	J'assaillis,	tu assaillis,	il assaillit;
	nous assaillimes,	vous assaillîtes,	ils assaillirent.
Fut.	J'assaillirai,	tu assailliras,	il assaillira;
	nous assaillirons,	vous assaillirez,	ils assailliront.
COND. }	J'assaillirais,	tu assaillirais,	il assaillirait;
Pres. }	nous assaillirions,	vous assailliriez,	ils assailliraient
IMPER.		assaille,	qu'il assaille;
	assaillons,	assaillez,	qu'ils assaillent.
SUBJ. }	Que j'assaille,	tu assailles,	il assaille;
Pres. }	Que nous assaillions,	vous assailliez,	ils assaillent.
Imp.	Que j'assaillisse,	tu assaillisses,	il assaillit;
	Que nous assaillions,	vous assaillissiez,	ils assaillissent.

Conjugate in the same manner *tressaillir*, to start.

*Note.*—J. J. Rousseau, and other writers, have, for the sake of euphony, written in the present of the Indicative, *il tressaillit*, instead of *il tressaille*.

### EXERCISE LXXIX.

He had *acquired* great influence over his contemporaries.—  
*une* — f. *sur* *contemporain* m.

He *would acquire* honour and reputation.—  
 32 *honneur* m. h m. 32 *réputation* f.

Alexander *conquered* a great part of Asia.—A *conquered*  
 ind-3 *partie* f. art.

province. — We were *overtaken* by a furious storm. — At  
 1— f. ind-3 *assaillir* d' *tempête* f.

every word they said to him about his son, the good  
*chaque* *qu' on disait* \* *de*

old man leaped for joy. — She *started* with fear.  
*vieillard tressaillir* ind-2 *de joie*. ind-3 *de peur*.

220. *BÉNIR*, to bless, is conjugated like *finir* (see p. 73), and is only irregular in its past participle, which makes *bénit*, *bénite*: and *béni*, *bénie*.

*Bénit*, *bénite*, is used only in speaking of things consecrated by a religious ceremony; as, *du pain bénit*, consecrated bread; *de l'eau bénite*, holy water.

### 221. *BOUILLIR*, TO BOIL.

*Part. Pres.* bouillant.

*Part. Past.* bouilli.

+	IND. }	Je bous,	tu bous,	il bout;
	Pres. }	nous bouillons,	vous bouillez,	ils bouillent.
	Imp.	Je bouillais,	tu bouillais,	il bouillait;
		nous bouillions,	vous bouilliez,	ils bouillaient.
	Pret.	Je bouillis,	tu bouillis,	il bouillit;
		nous bouillimes,	vous bouillites,	ils bouillirent.
	Fut.	Je bouillirai,	tu bouilliras,	il bouillira;
		nous bouillirons,	vous bouillirez,	ils bouilliront.
	COND. }	Je bouillirais,	tu bouillirais,	il bouillirait;
	Pres. }	nous bouillirions,	vous bouilliriez,	ils bouilliraient.
	IMPER.	bouillons,	× bous,	× qu'il bouille;
			bouillez,	qu'ils bouillent.

SUBJ. } <i>Pres.</i> }	je bouille,	tu bouilles,	il bouille; +
	nous bouillions,	vous bouilliez,	ils bouillent. +
<i>Imp.</i> }	je bouillisse,	tu bouillisses,	il bouillit;
	nous bouillassions,	vous bouillissiez,	ils bouillissent.

This verb is seldom used in French, except in the third persons singular and plural; as, *L'eau bout*, the water boils; *ces choux ne bouillaient pas*, these cabbages did not boil. But when *to boil* has a noun or pronoun for its object, the French then make use of the different tenses of the verb *faire* before the infinitive *bouillir*; as, *Je fais bouillir*, *nous faisons bouillir*, &c. Therefore say, *Je fais bouillir de la viande*, I boil some meat, and not *je bous*.

*Rebouillir*, to boil again, is conjugated in the same manner, and follows the same rules.

*Ébouillir*, to boil away, is seldom used but in the Infinitive and past participle *ébouilli*, m; *ébouillie*, f.

## 222. COURIR, TO RUN.

<i>Part. Pres. courant.</i>		<i>Part. Past, couru.</i>	
IND. } <i>Pres.</i> }	Je cours,	tu cours,	il court; +
	nous courons,	vous courez,	ils courent.
<i>Imp.</i> }	Je courais,	tu courais,	il courait;
	nous courions,	vous couriez,	ils couraient.
<i>Pret.</i> }	Je courus,	tu courus,	il courut;
	nous courûmes,	vous courûtes,	ils coururent. +
<i>Fut.</i> }	Je courrai,	tu courras,	il courra; +
	nous courrons,	vous courrez,	ils courront.
COND. } <i>Pres.</i> }	Je courrais,	tu courrais,	il courrait;
	nous courrions,	vous courriez,	ils courraient. +
IMPER. }	cours,	cours,	qu'il coure; +
	courons,	courez,	qu'ils courent.
SUBJ. } <i>Pres.</i> }	je coure,	tu coures,	il coure; +
	nous courions,	vous couriez,	ils courent.
<i>Imp.</i> }	je courusse,	tu courusses,	il courût;
	nous courussions,	vous courussiez,	ils courussent.

## 223. Conjugate in the same manner:—

Accourir,	<i>to run to.</i>	encourir,	<i>to incur.</i>
concourir,	<i>to concur.</i>	parcourir,	<i>to run over.</i>
discourir,	<i>to discourse.</i>	secourir,	<i>to succour.</i>

## EXERCISE LXXX.

God had *blessed* the race of Abraham. — Does the water  
 — f. —  
 boil? — We *were boiling* some potatoes. — Boil that  
*pommes de terre*.  
 meat again, it is not (done enough). — You *run* faster  
*viande* f. *assez cuite*. *plus vite*  
 than I. — Will men always *run* after shadows?  
*moi*. *art*. 32 *chimère* f. pl.  
 — Socrates passed the last day of his life in *discoursing*  
*passer* à inf-1  
 on the immortality of the soul. — You *would incur* the  
*immortalité*  
 displeasure of the prince. — I have *run over* the whole town  
*disgrâce* f. — 2 1  
 to find him. — This sauce has *boiled away* too much  
*pour trouver* 87 — f. *est* f. *trop*

COUVRIR, to cover; see Ouvrir.

## 224. CUEILLIR, TO GATHER.

Part. Pres. cueillant.

Part. Past, cueilli.

IND. }	Je cueille,	tu cueilles,	il cueille ;
Pres. }	nous cueillons,	vous cueillez,	ils cueillent.
Imp.	Je cueillais,	tu cueillais,	il cueillait ;
	nous cueillions,	vous cueilliez,	ils cueillaient.
Pret.	Je cueillis,	tu cueillis,	il cueillit ;
	nous cueillîmes,	vous cueillîtes,	ils cueillirent.
Fut.	Je cueillerai,	tu cueilleras,	il cueillera ;
	nous cueillerons,	vous cueillerez,	ils cueilleront.
COND. }	Je cueillerais,	tu cueillerais,	il cueillerait ;
Pres. }	nous cueillerions,	vous cueilleriez,	ils cueilleraient.
IMPER.		cueille,	qu'il cueille ;
	cueillons,	cueillez,	qu'ils cueillent.
SUBJ. }	Je cueille,	tu cueilles,	il cueille ;
Pres. }	nous cueillions,	vous cueilliez,	ils cueillent.
Imp.	Je cueillisse,	tu cueillisses,	il cueillit ;
	nous cueillissions,	vous cueillissiez,	ils cueillissent.

225. Conjugate in the same manner :—

Accueillir, to receive, to welcome. | recueillir, to collect.

226. *DORMIR*, TO SLEEP.*Part. Pres. dormant.**Part. Past, dormi.*

IND. }	Je dors,	tu dors,	il dort ;
Pres. }	nous dormons,	vous dormez,	ils dorment.
Imp.	Je dormais,	tu dormais,	il dormait ;
	nous dormions,	vous dormiez,	ils dormaient.
Pret.	Je dormis,	tu dormis,	il dormit ;
	nous dormîmes,	vous dormîtes,	ils dormirent.
Fut.	Je dormirai,	tu dormiras,	il dormira ;
	nous dormirons,	vous dormirez,	ils dormiront.
COND. }	Je dormirais,	tu dormirais,	il dormirait ;
Pres. }	nous dormirions,	vous dormiriez,	ils dormiraient.
IMPER.		dors,	qu'il dorme ;
	dormons,	dormez,	qu'ils dorment.
SUBJ. }	que je dorme,	tu dormes,	il dorme ;
Pres. }	que nous dormions,	vous dormiez,	ils dorment.
Imp.	que je dormisse,	tu dormisses,	il dormit ;
	que nous dormissions,	vous dormissiez,	ils dormissent.

## 227. Conjugate in the same manner:—

Endormir, *to lull asleep.* | .se rendormir, *to fall asleep*  
 s'endormir, *to fall asleep.* | again.

228. *FAILLIR*, *to fail*. This verb is used only in the present of the Infinitive; in the Participle past *failli*; in the Preterite definite, *je faillis, tu faillis, il faillit; nous faillîmes, vous faillîtes, ils faillirent*; and in the compound tenses, *j'ai failli, j'avais failli, &c.*

Its derivative *défaillir*, *to faint, to fail*, is scarcely ever used but in the first and third persons plural of the present of the Indicative, *nous défailions, ils défaillent*; in the Imperfect, *je défailais, &c.*; in the Preterite definite, *je défaillis, &c.*; in the Preterite indefinite, *j'ai défailli, &c.*; and in the Infinitive *défaillir*.

229. *FLEURIR*, *to blossom*, in its *literal sense*, is regular; but used *figuratively*, signifying to be in a prosperous state, to flourish, to be in repute, it makes *florissant* in the present Participle, and *florissait, florissaient*, in the Imperfect of the Indicative.

## EXERCISE LXXXI.

I will gather you some fine flowers. — We shall collect in  
*fleur f.* *dans*

ancient history, important and valuable facts. —  
 art. <sup>2</sup> <sup>1</sup> 32 <sup>2</sup> — <sup>3</sup>*précieux* <sup>1</sup>*fait m.*

The hare generally sleeps with its eyes open. —  
*lièvre m.* <sup>2</sup>*ordinairement* <sup>1</sup> \* \* art. *ouvert*.

That song lulls one asleep. — I fell asleep about three o'clock.  
 \* ind-4 *vers art.*

—He (was near) losing his life. — His strength  
*faillir ind-3 inf-1* \* art. *force f. pl.*

*fails* (every day). — Athens flourished under Pericles.  
*défaillir tous les jours. Athènes ind-2 sous Périclès.*

230. *FUIR*, TO FLY, TO RUN AWAY, TO SHUN.

*Part. Pres. fuyant.*

*Part. Past, fui.*

IND. }	Je fuis,	tu fuis,	il fuit;
Pres. }	nous fuyons,	vous fuyez,	ils fuient.
Imp.	Je fuyais,	tu fuyais,	il fuyait;
	nous fuyions,	vous fuyiez,	ils fuyaient.
Pret.	Je fuis,	tu fuis,	il fuit;
	nous fuîmes,	vous fuîtes,	ils fuirent.
Fut.	Je fuirai,	tu fuiras,	il fuira;
	nous fuirons,	vous fuirez,	ils fuiront.
COND. }	Je fuirais,	tu fuirais,	il fuirait;
Pres. }	nous fuirions,	vous fuiriez,	ils fuiraient.
IMPER.		fuis,	qu'il fuie;
	fuyons,	fuyez,	qu'ils fuient.
SUBJ. }	ne je fuie,	tu fuies,	il fuie;
Pres. }	ne nous fuyions,	vous fuyiez,	ils fuient
Imp.	ne je fusse,	tu fuisses,	il fût;
	ne nous fuissions,	vous fuissiez,	ils fuissent.

231. Conjugate after the same manner, *s'enfuir*, to run away. In the Imperative we say, *enfuis-toi*, and not *enfuis-t'en*, nor *fuis-t'en*.

232. *GÉSIR*, to lie, to lie down, is obsolete. We, however, still say, *Il gît, nous gisons, vous gisez, ils gisent. Je gi-*

*sais, tu gisais, il gisait; nous gisions, vous gisiez, ils gisaient. Gisant.*—(ACAD.)

*Ci-gît* (here lies) is the usual form by which an epitaph is begun.

233. *HAÏR*, TO HATE.*Part. Pres.* haïssant.*Part. Past,* haï.

IND. }	Je hais,	tu hais,	il hait;
Pres. }	nous haïssons,	vous haïssez,	ils haïssent.
Imp.	Je haïssais,	tu haïssais,	il haïssait;
	nous haïssions,	vous haïssiez,	ils haïssaient.
Pret.	Je haïs,	tu haïs,	il haït;
	nous haïmes,	vous haïtes,	ils haïrent
Fut.	Je haïrai,	tu haïras,	il haïra;
	nous haïrons,	vous haïrez,	ils haïront.
COND. }	Je haïrais,	tu haïrais,	il haïrait;
Pres. }	nous haïrions,	vous haïriez,	ils haïraient.
IMPER.	haïssons,	haïssez,	qu'il haïsse;
			qu'ils haïssent.
SUBJ. }	Je haïsse,	tu haïsses,	il haïsse;
Pres. }	nous haïssions,	vous haïssiez,	ils haïssent.
Imp.	Je haïsse,	tu haïsses,	il haït;
	nous haïssions,	vous haïssiez,	ils haïssent.

234. REMARKS.—The *h* is aspirated in this verb, and a diæresis (¨) is placed over the *i*, throughout all the tenses, to show that it is to be pronounced separately from the preceding vowel *a*; as, *ha-ï*; except, however, the three persons singular of the present of the Indicative, and the second person singular of the Imperative, which, forming only one syllable, are written without the diæresis, thus: *Je hais, tu hais, il hait; hais*, and pronounced—*Je hé, tu hé, il hé; hé*.

This verb is seldom used in the second person singular of the Imperative, the Preterite definite, or the Imperfect of the Subjunctive, and in these two last tenses, instead of making use of the circumflex accent: *nous haïmes*,

*vous haïtes ; qu'il haït*, we use the diæresis, *nous haïmes, vous haïtes ; qu'il haït*.

MENTIR, *to lie, to utter falsehood*, is conjugated like *sentir*.

### 235. MOURIR, TO DIE.

	<i>Part. Pres. mourant.</i>	<i>Part. Past, mort.</i>
IND. } Je meurs,	tu meurs,	il meurt ;
Pres. } nous mourons,	vous mourez,	ils meurent.
Imp. Je mourais,	tu mourais,	il mourait ;
	nous mourions,	vous mouriez,
		ils mouraient.
Pret. Je mourus,	tu mourus,	il mourut ;
	nous mourûmes,	vous mourûtes,
		ils moururent.
Fut. Je mourrai,	tu mourras,	il mourra ;
	nous mourrons,	vous mourrez,
		ils mourront.
COND. } Je mourrais,	tu mourrais,	il mourrait ;
Pres. } nous mourrions,	vous mourriez,	ils mourraient
IMPER.	meurs,	qu'il meure ;
	mourez,	qu'ils meurent
SUBJ. } <sup>que</sup> je meure,	tu meures,	il meure ;
Pres. } <sup>que</sup> nous mourions,	vous mouriez,	ils meurent.
Imp. <sup>que</sup> je mourusse,	tu mourusses,	il mourût ;
	<sup>que</sup> nous mourussions,	vous mourussiez, ils mourussent.

*Mourir* is conjugated with the auxiliary *être* in its compound tenses.—The double *r* of the Future and Conditional must be sounded strongly.

When this verb takes the reflected form, *se mourir*, it means *to be at the point of death* ; but, in this sense, it is seldom used except in the present and imperfect of the Indicative.—(ACAD.)

### 236. OÛIR, *to hear*. (Active and defective verb.)

*Part. past, ouï.* IND. *pret.* j'ouïs, tu ouïs, &c. SUBJ. *imperf.* que j'ouïsse, qu tu ouïsses, qu'il ouît, &c.

This verb is chiefly used in the *compound tenses*, which are generally followed by another verb in the infinitive ; as,

Je l'ai ouï prêcher.—(ACAD.) | *I have heard him preach.*  
 Je l'avais ouï dire. | *I had heard it said.*



## EXERCISE LXXXII.

(Let us make haste), *time flies*.—I cannot meet him,  
*Hâtons-nous* art. — *ne puis rencontrer*  
 he *shuns* me.—I *hate* falsehood. — *Let us hate* vice. —  
 art. *mensonge* m. art. — m.  
 He *died*\* some time after. — John Calvin, the celebrated  
 127 *célèbre*  
 reformer, *died* at Geneva, on the 27th May 1564. — He  
*réformateur* \*  
*is dying*. — All the witnesses have been *heard*. — Anger  
*se mourir* *témoin* m. art. *colère* f.  
 soon *dies* in a kind heart.—*Here lies* an honest man.  
*promptement* <sup>1</sup> *bon* *honnête*

237. *OUVRIR*, TO OPEN.*Part. Pres. ouvrant.**Part. Past, ouvert.*

IND. }	J'ouvre,	tu ouvres,	il ouvre ;
Pres. }	nous ouvrons,	vous ouvrez,	ils ouvrent.
Imp.	J'ouvrerais,	tu ouvrerais,	il ouvrirait ;
	nous ouvririons,	vous ouvririez,	ils ouvriraient.
Pret.	J'ouvris,	tu ouvris,	il ouvrit ;
	nous ouvrîmes,	vous ouvrîtes,	ils ouvrirent.
Fut.	J'ouvrirai,	tu ouvriras,	il ouvrira ;
	nous ouvrirons,	vous ouvrirez,	ils ouvriront.
COND. }	J'ouvrirais,	tu ouvrirais,	il ouvrirait ;
Pres. }	nous ouvririons,	vous ouvririez,	ils ouvriraient.
IMPER.		ouvre,	qu'il ouvre ;
	ouvrons,	ouvrez,	qu'ils ouvrent.
SUBJ. }	que j'ouvre,	tu ouvres,	il ouvre ;
Pres. }	que nous ouvrions,	vous ouvriez,	ils ouvrent.
Imp.	que j'ouvrisse,	tu ouvrisses,	il ouvrit ;
	que nous ouvrissions,	vous ouvrissiez,	ils ouvrissent.

## 238. Conjugate in the same manner :—

Couvrir, <i>to cover</i> .	recouvrir, <i>to cover again</i> .
découvrir, <i>to discover, to uncover</i> .	rouvrir, <i>to open again</i> .
offrir, <i>to offer</i> .	souffrir, <i>to suffer</i> .

239. *PARTIR*, TO SET OUT, TO GO AWAY.*Part. Pres. partant.**Part. Past, parti.*

IND. }	Je pars,	tu pars,	il part ;
Pres. }	nous partons,	vous partez,	ils partent.

<i>Imp.</i>	Je partais, nous partions,	tu partais, vous partiez,	il partait; ils partaient.
<i>Pret.</i>	Je partis, nous partîmes,	tu partis, vous partîtes,	il partit; ils partirent.
<i>Fut.</i>	Je partirai, nous partirons,	tu partiras, vous partirez,	il partira; ils partiront.
COND.	Je partirais, nous partirions,	tu partirais, vous partiriez,	il partirait; ils partiraient.
IMPER.	partons,	pars, partez,	qu'il parte; qu'ils partent.
SUBJ.	ne je parte,	tu partes,	il parte; ils partent.
<i>Pres.</i>	Je nous partions,	vous partiez,	ils partent.
<i>Imp.</i>	Je nous partisse, nous partissions,	tu partisses, vous partissiez,	il partit; ils partissent.

240. Conjugate in the same manner, *repartir*, to go back, to set out again, to reply.

*Répartir* (with an accent over the *é*), to divide, to distribute, is regular, and conjugated like *finir*.

### EXERCISE LXXXIII.

Open this press. — Harvey discovered the circulation of the  
armoire f. — f.

blood. — I offer you my services with all my heart. — The  
sang m. — de cœur m.

house has not been covered again since the roof  
maison f. depuis que toit m.

was burnt down. — That effort opened his wound again. —  
ind-4 brûlé \* — m. plaie f.

He suffers more than you think. — We set out to-morrow for  
plus que ne pensez. demain

the country. — He will set out in two or three days. —  
campagne f. dans

That coach starts every day at (twelve o'clock.)  
voiture f. tous les jours midi.

### 241. SENTIR, TO FEEL, TO SMELL.

	<i>Part. Pres.</i> sentant.		<i>Part. Past.</i> senti.
IND. }	Je sens,	tu sens,	il sent;
<i>Pres.</i> }	nous sentons,	vous sentez,	ils sentent.
<i>Imp.</i>	Je sentais,	tu sentais,	il sentait;
	nous sentions,	vous sentiez,	ils sentaient.

<i>Pret.</i>	Je sentis, nous sentimes,	tu sentis, vous sentîtes,	il sentit; ils sentirent.
<i>Fut.</i>	Je sentirai, nous sentirons,	tu sentiras, vous sentirez,	il sentira; ils sentiront.
<i>COND. } Pres. }</i>	Je sentirais, nous sentirions,	tu sentirais, vous sentiriez,	il sentirait; ils sentiraient.
<i>IMPER.</i>	sentons,	sens, sentez,	qu'il sente; qu'ils sentent.
<i>SUBJ. } Pres. }</i>	Que je sente, Que nous sentions,	tu sentes, vous sentiez,	il sente; ils sentent.
<i>Imp.</i>	Que je sentisse, Que nous sentissions,	tu sentisses, vous sentissiez,	il sentit; ils sentissent.

242. Conjugate in the same manner :—

Consentir, <i>to consent.</i>	ressentir, <i>to resent.</i>
mentir, <i>to lie.</i>	se repentir, <i>to repent.</i>
pressentir, <i>to foresee.</i>	&c. &c.

243. *SERVIR*, TO SERVE, TO HELP TO.

*Part. Pres.* servant.

*Part. Past.* servi.

<i>IND. } Pres. }</i>	Je sers, nous servons,	tu sers, vous servez,	il sert; ils servent.
<i>Imp.</i>	Je servais, nous servions,	tu servais, vous serviez,	il servait; ils servaient.
<i>Pret.</i>	Je servis, nous servîmes,	tu servis, vous servîtes,	il servit; ils servirent.
<i>Fut.</i>	Je servirai, nous servirons,	tu serviras, vous servirez,	il servira; ils serviront.
<i>COND. } Pres. }</i>	Je servirais, nous servirions,	tu servirais, vous serviriez,	il servirait; ils serviraient.
<i>IMPER.</i>	servons,	sers, servez,	qu'il serve; qu'ils servent.
<i>SUBJ. } Pres. }</i>	Que je serve, Que nous servions,	tu serves, vous serviez,	il serve; ils servent.
<i>Imp.</i>	Que je servisse, Que nous servissions,	tu servisses, vous servissiez,	il servit; ils servissent.

244. Conjugate in the same manner, *desservir*, to clear the table.

*Asservir*, to enslave, to subject, is regular, and conjugated like *finir*.

## EXERCISE LXXXIV.

He who *serves* well his country (has no need) of ancestors.—  
 \* *n'a pas besoin* 40

You *will feel* the effects of it.—*Smell* this rose —*Shall* we  
*effet* m. 108 — f.

*consent* to that bargain?—Never (*tell a falsehood*).—I *foresaw*  
*marché* m. *mentir*

all those misfortunes.—He *repents* of his bad conduct. —  
*malheur* m. *mauvais conduite* f.

He *serves* his friends with warmth. — *Help* the gentleman  
*chaleur.* <sup>3</sup>à \* <sup>4</sup>*monsieur*

to some partridge. — Shall I have the honour to *help* you to  
<sup>1</sup>*perdrix* f. <sup>de</sup>

a wing of a chicken? — *Clear the table.*  
*aile* f. \*

## 245. SORTIR, TO GO OUT, TO COME OUT.

*Part. Pres. sortant.**Part. Past, sorti.*

IND. }	Je sors,	tu sors,	il sort;
Pres. }	nous sortons,	vous sortez,	ils sortent.
Imp.	Je sortais,	tu sortais,	il sortait;
	nous sortions,	vous sortiez,	ils sortaient.
Pret.	Je sortis,	tu sortis,	il sortit;
	nous sortîmes,	vous sortîtes,	ils sortirent.
Fut.	Je sortirai,	tu sortiras,	il sortira;
	nous sortirons,	vous sortirez,	ils sortiront.
COND. }	Je sortirais,	tu sortirais,	il sortirait;
Pres. }	nous sortirions,	vous sortiriez,	ils sortiraient.
IMPER.		sors,	qu'il sorte;
	sortons,	sortez,	qu'ils sortent.
SUBJ. }	que je sorte,	tu sortes,	il sorte;
Pres. }	que nous sortions,	vous sortiez,	ils sortent.
Imp.	que je sortisse,	tu sortisses,	il sortit;
	que nous sortissions,	vous sortissiez,	ils sortissent.

246. Conjugate in the same manner, *ressortir*, to go out again.

## EXERCISE LXXXV.

I go out every morning before breakfast. — The  
*tout art. matin m. pl. avant*  
 fox comes out of his hole. — We went out of the town  
*renard m. terrier m.*  
 after him. — Everybody is gone out. — I shall go out in half  
*après Tout le monde*  
 an hour. — If I were as ill as you, I would not go out. —  
*malade*  
 Do not go out to-day. — He (is just) gone out. — He went  
*aujourd'hui. vient de inf-1*  
 out again immediately. — I will not go out again this evening.  
*sur-le-champ. soir m.*

247. *TENIR*, TO HOLD, TO KEEP.

	<i>Part. Pres. tenant.</i>	<i>Part. Past, tenu.</i>	
IND. } Je tiens,	tu tiens,	il tient;	
Pres. } nous tenons,	vous tenez,	ils tiennent.	
Imp. Je tenais,	tu tenais,	il tenait;	
	nous tenions,	vous teniez,	ils tenaient.
Pret. Je tins,	tu tins,	il tint;	
	nous tinmes,	vous tintes,	ils tinrent.
Fut. Je tiendrai,	tu tiendras,	il tiendra;	
	nous tiendrons,	vous tiendrez,	ils tiendront.
COND. } Je tiendrais,	tu tiendrais,	il tiendrait;	
Pres. } nous tiendrions,	vous tiendriez,	ils tiendraient	
IMPERF.	tiens,	qu'il tienne;	
	tenons,	tenez,	qu'ils tiennent.
SUBJ. } je tienne,	tu tiennes,	il tienne;	
Pres. } nous tenions,	vous teniez,	ils tiennent.	
Imp. je tinsse,	tu tinsses,	il tint;	
	nous tinssions,	vous tinssiez,	ils tinssent.

## 248. Conjugate in the same manner:—

S'abstenir, to abstain.	[verse.]	maintenir, to maintain.
appartenir, to belong.		obtenir, to obtain. [retain.
contenir, to contain.		retenir, to get hold again; to
entretenir, to keep up; to con-		soutenir, to sustain.

Observe that in these verbs the *n* is doubled, whenever it is followed by *e* mute; but in no other case.

## EXERCISE LXXXVI.

I hold it fast, it shall not escape from me. — *Liberality*  
*bien* *échapper* \* *art.*  
*holds* a medium between prodigality and avarice. —  
*le milieu m. entre art. art. — f.*  
This garden is well kept. — He abstained from drinking on  
*jardin m. boire \**  
that day. — These horses belong to our general. — *England*  
*ce jour-là. art.*  
and the principality of Wales contain fifty-two counties. —  
*principauté f. Galles comté m.*  
They conversed about trifles. — I shall maintain it  
*s' de bagatelles.*  
everywhere. — Do not maintain so absurd an opinion. — Has  
*partout. <sup>2</sup>si <sup>3</sup>absurde <sup>1</sup>— f.*  
he obtained permission? — Detain not the wages of a  
*— f. retenir gages m. pl.*  
servant. — That column supports all the building.  
*domestique m. colonne f. soutenir bâtiment m.*

249. *VENIR*, TO COME.

	<i>Part. Pres. venant.</i>	<i>Part. Past, venu.</i>
IND. }	Je viens,	tu viens,
Pres. }	nous venons,	vous venez,
Imp. }	Je venais,	tu venais,
	nous venions,	vous veniez,
Pret. }	Je vins,	tu vins,
	nous vîmes,	vous vîtes,
Fut. }	Je viendrai,	tu viendras,
	nous viendrons,	vous viendrez,
COND. }	Je viendrais,	tu viendrais,
Pres. }	nous viendrions,	vous viendriez,
IMPER. }		viens,
	venons,	venez,
SUBJ. }	Je vienne,	tu viennes,
Pres. }	nous venions,	vous veniez,
Imp. }	Je vinsse,	tu vinsses,
	nous vinssions,	vous vinssiez,

250. *Venir* is conjugated like *tenir*; but with this

difference, that in its compound tenses it always takes the auxiliary *être*.

251. Conjugate in the same manner:—

Convenir, <i>to agree; to suit.</i>	prévenir, <i>to anticipate; to pre-</i>
devenir, <i>to become.</i>	se ressouvenir, <i>to recollect.</i> [ <i>vent.</i>
disconvenir, <i>to deny.</i> [ <i>terfere.</i>	revenir, <i>to come back.</i>
intervenir, <i>to intervene; to in-</i>	se souvenir, <i>to remember.</i>
parvenir, <i>to attain.</i>	subvenir, <i>to relieve.</i>

252. *Prévenir* and *Subvenir* are conjugated in their compound tenses with the auxiliary *avoir*. *Convenir*, when it signifies *to agree*, takes *être*; but *avoir*, when it signifies *to suit*.

### 253. *VÊTIR*, TO CLOTHE.

	<i>Part. Pres. vêtant.</i>		<i>Part. Past, vêtu.</i>
IND. }	Je vêts,	tu vêts,	il vêt;
Pres. }	nous vêtons,	vous vêtez,	ils vêtent.
Imp.	Je vêtais,	tu vêtais,	il vêtait;
	nous vêtions,	vous vétiez,	ils vêtaient.
Pret.	Je vêtis,	tu vêtis,	il vêtit;
	nous vêtîmes,	vous vêtîtes,	ils vêtirent.
Fut.	Je vêtirai,	tu vêtiras,	il vêtira;
	nous vêtirons,	vous vêtirez,	ils vêtiront.
COND. }	Je vêtirais,	tu vêtirais,	il vêtirait;
Pres. }	nous vêtirions,	vous vêtiriez,	ils vêtiraient.
IMPER.		vêts,	qu'il vête;
	vêtons,	vêtez,	qu'ils vêtent.
SUBJ. }	Je vête,	tu vêtes,	il vête;
Pres. }	nous vêtions,	vous vétiez,	ils vêtent.
Imp.	Je vêtisse,	tu vêtisses,	il vêtit;
	nous vêtissions,	vous vêtissiez,	ils vêtissent.

254. *Vêtir*, in the singular of the Present of the Indicative, and in the singular of the Imperative, is seldom used. It is most frequently reflected, and then it signifies *to dress oneself*. In this sense it is conjugated in its compound tenses, like all other pronominal verbs, with the auxiliary *être*: *Je me suis vêtu*; *nous nous sommes vêtus*.

Conjugate in the same manner:—

Dévêtir, *to divest, to strip.* | Revêtir, *to clothe, to invest.*

## EXERCISE LXXXVII.

I *come* from London. — You *come* very seasonably. — He  
*fort à propos.*  
*came* on foot. — *Come* on Saturday morning, at ten o'clock. — He  
ind-4 *à pied.* \* *heures.*  
*will come back* before the end of this month. — We have *agreed*  
*fin f.* *mois m.*  
about the conditions. — That she *might become* more prudent, —  
*de* — *f.* —  
Do you *deny* the fact? — He *will not interfere* with that  
*de fait m.* *dans*  
affair. — We *shall attain* our end. — Remember your  
*affaire f.* *à but m.* *de*  
promises. — They have *relieved* all his wants. — He only  
*promesse f.* On 111 *à besoin m.* *ne*  
passed for a traveller, but lately he has *assumed* the  
ind-2 *que voyageur depuis peu revêtir*  
character of an envoy. — He *dressed himself* in haste.  
*caractère m.* \* *envoyé m.* *à art. hâtes. h a.*

## 255. § III. IRREGULAR AND DEFECTIVE VERBS OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION.

256. ASSEoir, *to set*, is an active verb; but it is principally used as a reflected verb, and is conjugated as follows:—

*S'ASSEoir*, TO SEAT ONESELF, TO SIT, TO SIT DOWN.

*Part. Pres.* s'asseyant.

*Part. Past,* assis.

IND. }	Je m'assieds,	tu t'assieds,	il s'assied;
Pres. }	nous nous asseyons,	vous vous asseyez,	ils s'asseient.
Imp.	Je m'asseyais,	tu t'asseyais,	il s'asseyait;
	nous nous asseyions,	vous vous asseyiez,	ils s'asseyaient.
Pret.	Je m'assis,	tu t'assis,	il s'assit;
	nous nous assimes,	vous vous assîtes,	ils s'assirent.
Fut.	Je m'assiérai.	tu t'assiéras,	il s'assiéra;
	nous nous assiérons,	vous vous assiérez,	ils s'assiéront.



COND. *Pres.*

Je m'assiérais,	tu t'assiérais,	il s'assiérait ;
nous nous assiérions,	vous vous assiériez,	ils s'assiéraient.

## IMPERATIVE.

asseyons-nous,	assieds-toi,	qu'il s'asseie ;
	asseyez-vous,	qu'ils s'asseient.

SUBJ. *Pres.*

Que je m'asseie,	tu t'asseies,	il s'asseie ;
nous nous asseyions,	vous vous asseyiez,	ils s'asseient.

*Imperfect.*

Que je m'assisse,	tu t'assisses,	il s'assit ;
nous nous assissions,	vous vous assissiez,	ils s'assissent.

Conjugate in the same manner, *rasseoir*, to set again, to sit down again, to calm.

AVOIR, *to have*, is conjugated at length, p. 60.

257. CHOIR, *to fall*. This verb is not much used ; it is sometimes employed in the Infinitive, especially in poetry, where it is a very expressive term, when well brought in.

The Past Participle, *chu*, *chue*, is also used, but rather in versé than in prose, and rather in the jocular and familiar than in the serious and dignified style.

DÉCHOIR, *to decay, to fall off*. Past participle, *déchu*. This verb is seldom used in any other tense.

258. ÉCHOIR, *to fall to ; to expire, to be due*. Part. pres. *échéant*. Part. past, *échu*, *échue*. Indic. pres. *il échoit*, sometimes pronounced, and even written, *il échet*. Pret. *j'échus*. Fut. *j'écherrai*. Cond. *j'écherrais*. Imperf. Subj. *que j'échusse*.—(ACAD.)

FALLOIR, *to be necessary*, is a unipersonal verb, the conjugation of which has been given, page 105.

## EXERCISE LXXXVIII.

Set the child in an arm-chair. — Why do you not sit  
*fauteuil m. Pourquoi*  
 down? — He sat down under the shade of a tree. — Shall  
*à ombref. arbre m.*  
 we sit down here? — Let us sit down, my friends. — Sit down

on this form. — I (had risen) to go out, but he made me  
*sur* *banc m.* *m'étais levé pour* *fit* <sup>1</sup>

*sit down again.* — He is much *fallen* in the esteem of the  
*fort déchoir* *estime f.*

public. — This bill of exchange is due to-day.  
 — *m.* *lettre f.* *change* *aujourd'hui.*

### 259. *MOUVOIR*, TO MOVE.

<i>Part. Pres. mouvant.</i>		<i>Part. Past, mu.</i>	
IND. }	Je meus,	tu meus,	il meut ;
Pres. }	nous mouvons,	vous mouvez,	ils meuvent.
Imp.	Je mouvais,	tu mouvais,	il mouvait ;
	nous mouvions,	vous moviez,	ils mouvaient.
Pret.	Je mus,	tu mus,	il mut ;
	nous mûmes,	vous mûtes,	ils murent.
Fut.	Je mouvrai,	tu movras,	il mouvra ;
	nous mouvrons,	vous mouvrez,	ils mouvront.
COND. }	Je mouvrais,	tu mouvrais,	il mouvrait ;
Pres. }	nous mouvriens,	vous mouvriez,	ils mouvraient.
IMPER.		meus,	qu'il meuve ;
	mouvons,	mouvez,	qu'ils meuvent.
SUBJ. }	Je meuve,	tu meuves,	il meuve ;
Pres. }	nous mouvions,	vous moviez,	ils meuvent.
Imp.	Je musse,	tu musses,	il mût ;
	nous mussions,	vous mussiez,	ils mussent.

260. Conjugate in the same manner, *émouvoir*, to stir up, to move; and *promouvoir*, to promote. This last verb is seldom used but in the Infinitive, and in the compound tenses.

*PLEUVOIR*, to rain; see page 104.

### 261. *POURVOIR*, TO PROVIDE.

<i>Part. Pres. pourvoyant.</i>		<i>Part. Past. pourvu.</i>	
IND. }	Je pourvois,	tu purvois,	il pourvoit ;
Pres. }	nous pourvoyons,	vous pourvoyez,	ils pourvoient.
Imp.	Je pourvoyais,	tu pourvoyais,	il pourvoyait ;
	nous pourvoyions,	vous pourvoyiez,	ils pourvoyaient.

<i>Pret.</i>	Je pourvus,	tu pourvus,	il pourvut ;
	nous pourvûmes,	vous pourvûtes,	ils pourvurent.
<i>Fut.</i>	Je pourvoirai,	tu pourvoiras,	il pourvoira ;
	nous pourvoirons,	vous pourvoirez,	ils pourvoiront.
<i>COND. } Pres. }</i>	Je pourvoirais,	tu pourvoirais,	il pourvoirait ;
	nous pourvoirions,	vous pourvoiriez,	ils pourvoiraient.
<i>IMPER.</i>		pourvois,	qu'il pourvoie ;
	pourvoyons,	pourvoyez,	qu'ils pourvoient.
<i>SUBJ. } Pres. }</i>	Je pourvoie,	tu pourvoies,	il pourvoie ;
	nous pourvoyions,	vous pourvoyiez,	ils pourvoient.
<i>Imp.</i>	Je pourvusse,	tu pourvusses,	il pourvût ;
	nous pourvussions,	vous pourvussiez,	ils pourvussent.

262. *POUVOIR*, TO BE ABLE. (To can.—Walker.)*Part. Pres. pouvant.**Part. Past, pu.*

<i>IND. } Pres. }</i>	Je puis, <i>or</i> je peux,	tu peux,	il peut ;
	nous pouvons,	vous pouvez,	ils peuvent.
<i>Imp.</i>	Je pouvais,	tu pouvais,	il pouvait ;
	nous pouvions,	vous pouviez,	ils pouvaient.
<i>Pret.</i>	Je pus,	tu pus,	il put ;
	nous pûmes,	vous pûtes,	ils purent.
<i>Fut.</i>	Je pourrai,	tu pourras,	il pourra ;
	nous pourrons,	vous pourrez,	ils pourront.
<i>COND. } Pres. }</i>	Je pourrais,	tu pourrais,	il pourrait ;
	nous pourrions,	vous pourriez,	ils pourraient.
(No Imperative.)			
<i>SUBJ. } Pres. }</i>	Je puisse,	tu puisses,	il puisse ;
	nous puissions,	vous puissiez,	ils puissent.
<i>Imp.</i>	Je pusse,	tu pusses,	il pût ;
	nous pussions,	vous pussiez,	ils pussent.

263. REMARKS.—In the Future and Conditional of this verb, one *r* only is pronounced, although written with two.

In the Present of the Indicative, we say *je puis* or *je peux* ; however, *je puis* is much more used, and ought to be preferred, since interrogatively we always say *puis-je* ?

Quels vœux *puis-je* former ?—(La Harpe.)

Que *puis-je* ajouter à cet éloge ?—(C. Delavigne.)



265. *SAVOIR*, TO KNOW.

	<i>Part. Pres. sachant.</i>	<i>Part. Past, su.</i>	
IND. )	Je sais,	tu sais,	il sait ;
Pres. }	nous savons,	vous savez,	ils savent.
Imp.	Je savais,	tu savais,	il savait ;
	nous savions,	vous saviez,	ils savaient.
Pret.	Je sus,	tu sus,	il sut ;
	nous sûmes,	vous sûtes,	ils surent.
Fut.	Je saurai,	tu sauras,	il saura ;
	nous saurons,	vous saurez,	ils sauront.
COND. )	Je saurais,	tu saurais,	il saurait ;
Pres. }	nous saurions,	vous sauriez,	ils sauraient
IMPER.	sachons,	sache,	qu'il sache ;
		sachez,	qu'ils sachent.
SUBJ. )	Que je sache,	tu saches,	il sache ;
Pres. }	Que nous sachions,	vous sachiez,	ils sachent.
Imp.	Que Je susse,	tu susses,	il sût ;
	Que nous sussions,	vous sussiez,	ils sussent.

*Note.*—We find *savoir* written *scavoir* in some old and esteemed works; but now, the *French Academy*, and all the modern Grammarians, suppress the letter *ç* as useless, because it does not affect the pronunciation of the word, nor does it even serve to point out its Latin derivation, since all the best French etymologists derive *savoir* from *sapere*, and not from *scire*.

266. We sometimes employ the Subjunctive of *savoir* instead of the Indicative, but never without a negative; as, *JE NE SACHE rien de plus digne d'éloge*, I know nothing more praiseworthy.

267. *Je ne saurais* is often used for *je ne puis* (I cannot); yet we do not say, *je ne saurais* for *je ne pourrais*, nor *je saurais* for *je puis*.

268. The student must not confound *savoir* with *connaître*, which also signifies *to know*. We do not say *savoir quelqu'un*, but *connaître quelqu'un*, to know, or be acquainted with some one.

269. *SEoir*, *to become*, *to befit*, is never used in the present of the Infinitive. It has only the participle



IMPER.	valons,	vaux,	qu'il vaille ;
		valez,	qu'ils vaillent.
SUBJ. } Pres. }	je vaille,	tu vailles,	il vaille ;
	nous valions,	vous valiez,	ils vaillent.
Imp. }	je valusse,	tu valusses,	il valût ;
	nous valussions,	vous valussiez,	ils valussent.

In the compound tenses, *valoir* takes the auxiliary *avoir*.

Conjugate in the same manner :—

*Equivaloir, to be equivalent.* | *revaloir, to return like for like.*

272. *Prévaloir*, to prevail, follows the same conjugation, excepting that in the Subjunctive Present it makes, *que je prévale, que tu prévaies, qu'il prévale ; que nous prévalions, que vous prévaliez, qu'ils prévalent ;* and not, *que je prévaille, que tu prévailles, etc.*

### EXERCISE XCI.

This cloth is worth twenty shillings a yard. — Actions  
*drap m. schelling l' aune. art. effet m.*  
 are better than words. — His horse was not worth ten  
*valoir art. parole f.*  
 guineas.—That victory procured him the staff of a marshal  
*guinée victoire f. valoir lui bâton m. \*maréchal*  
 of France.—One ounce of gold is equivalent to fifteen ounces  
*once f. or*  
 of silver. — That answer will be equivalent to a refusal.—  
*argent. réponse f. refus m.*  
 Favour often prevails over merit. — His advice  
 art. 2 1 sur art. mérite m. avis m.  
 prevailed. — That consideration has prevailed over all  
*considération f. art*  
 others. — Doubt not that truth will prevail at last.  
*douter art. \* ne subj-1 à la longue*

### 273. VOIR, TO SEE.

Part. Pres. voyant.

Part. Past, vu.

IND. }	Je vois,	tu vois,	il voit ;
Pres. }	nous voyons,	vous voyez,	ils voient.
Imp. }	Je voyais,	tu voyais,	il voyait ;
	nous voyions,	vous voyiez,	ils voyaient.

<i>Pret.</i>	Je vis,	tu vis,	il vit ;
	nous vîmes,	vous vîtes,	ils virent.
<i>Fut.</i>	Je verrai,	tu verras,	il verra ;
	nous verrons,	vous verrez,	ils verront.
<i>COND. }</i>	Je verrais,	tu verrais,	il verrait ;
<i>Pres. }</i>	nous verrions,	vous verriez,	ils verraient.
<i>IMPER.</i>		vois,	qu'il voie ;
	voyons,	voyez,	qu'ils voient.
<i>SUBJ. }</i>	Je voie,	tu voies,	il voie ;
<i>Pres. }</i>	nous voyions,	vous voyiez,	ils voient.
<i>Imp.</i>	Je visse,	tu visses,	il vit ;
	nous vissions,	vous vissiez,	ils vissent.

274. Conjugate in the same manner, *entrevoir*, to have a glimpse of; *revoir*, to see again; and, *prévoir*, to foresee. Observe, however, that this last verb makes in the Future, *je prévoirai*, *tu prévoiras*, &c., and in the Conditional, *je prévoirais*, &c.

*Note.*—Many poets, ancient and modern, for the sake of rhyme, write without *s*, *je voi*, *j'aperçoi*, *je prévoi*, etc.

275. *Surseoir*, to put off (a law term), though a compound of *seoir*, is conjugated like *voir*, except in the Future, *je surseoirai*, and in the Conditional, *je surseoirais*.

## EXERCISE XCII.

I see it now. — I saw it with my own eyes.—That  
*maintenant.* ind-4 *de propre*  
 reform (will take place), but we shall not see it. — You shall  
*réforme f.* *aura lieu*  
 see what I can do. — Let us see your purchases.—See the  
*ce que sais faire.* *emplette f.*  
 admirable order of the universe: does it not announce a  
<sup>2</sup>— <sup>1</sup>*ordre m.* *univers m.* *annoncer*  
 supreme architect? — When shall we see your sisters again?  
*Quand*  
 — To finish their affairs, it would be necessary that they  
*Pour* *affaire f.* *falloir*  
 should see each other. — Wise men foresee events. —  
*s'entrevoir subj-2 art.* <sup>2</sup> <sup>1</sup> *art.*  
 I shall not put off the pursuit of that affair.  
*poursuite f. pl.*



276. *VOULOIR*, TO WILL; TO BE WILLING; TO WISH.*Part. Pres. voulant.**Part. Past, voulu.*

IND. }	Je veux,	tu veux,	il veut;
Pres. }	nous voulons,	vous voulez,	ils veulent.
Imp.	Je voulais,	tu voulais,	il voulait;
	nous voulions,	vous vouliez,	ils voulaient.
Pret.	Je voulus,	tu voulus,	il voulut;
	nous voulûmes,	vous voulûtes,	ils voulurent.
Fut.	Je voudrai,	tu voudras,	il voudra;
	nous voudrons,	vous voudrez,	ils voudront.
COND. }	Je voudrais,	tu voudrais,	il voudrait;
Pres. }	nous voudrions,	vous voudriez,	ils voudraient.
IMPER.	Veillez,	{ The second pers. pl. is the only one used, and signifies, <i>be so good as, be so kind as to.*</i>	
SUBJ. }	que je veuille,	tu veuilles,	il veuille;
Pres. }	que nous voulions,	vous vouliez,	ils veuillent.
Imp.	que je voulusse,	tu voulusses,	il voulût;
	que nous voulussions,	vous voulussiez,	ils voulussent.

Observe that the Subjunctive Present is *que je veuille*; but the plural is *que nous voulions, que vous vouliez*; and not *que nous veuillions, que vous veuilliez*, as some writers have it.

## EXERCISE XCIII.

I can and *will* tell the truth. — He *wishes* to set out  
 pron. *dire vérité f.* \*

to-morrow. — If you *are willing*, he *will be willing* also. —  
*demain. le le aussi.*

We *wish* to be free. — He *wished* to accompany me. — They  
 \* *libre* \* *accompagner* On

will give you whatever you *wish*. — I *should wish* (him to come).  
*tout ce que ind-7 qu'il vînt.*

— He *would wish* to speak to you in private. —  
 \* \* *en particulier.*

Have the goodness to read this letter. — Heaven *will* it so.  
*Vouloir* \* *lire* art. *ainsi.*

\* Some admit of a second Imperative, *veux, voulons, voulez*, but they use it only in very rare instances, as in this phrase, *VOULONS, et nous pourrons.*

# § IV. IRREGULAR AND DEFECTIVE VERBS OF THE FOURTH CONJUGATION.

## 277. *ABSOUUDRE*, TO ABSOLVE.

<i>Part. Pres.</i> absolvant.		<i>Part. Past</i> , absous, <i>m.</i> ; absoute, <i>f.</i>	
IND. }	J'absous,	tu absous,	il absout ;
Pres. }	nous absolvons,	vous absolvez,	ils absolvent.
Imp.	J'absolvais,	tu absolvais,	il absolvait ;
	nous absolvions,	vous absolviez,	ils absorvaient.
(No Preterite Definite.)			
Fut.	J'absoudrai,	tu absoudras,	il absoudra ;
	nous absoudrons,	vous absoudrez,	ils absoudront.
COND. }	J'absoudrais,	tu absoudrais,	il absoudrait ;
Pres. }	nous absoudrions,	vous absoudriez,	ils absoudraient.
IMPER.		absous,	qu'il absolve ;
	absolvons,	absolvez,	qu'ils absolvent.
SUBJ. }	Je j'absolve,	tu absolves,	il absolve ;
Pres. }	nous absolvions,	vous absolviez,	ils absolvent.
(No Imperfect of the Subjunctive.)			

## 278. Conjugate in the same manner, *dissoudre*, to dissolve.

*ABSTRAIRE*, to *abstract*, is conjugated like *traire*, but is little used ; it is more customary to say *faire abstraction de*.

*ACCROIRE* is used in the Present of the Infinitive only, with any of the tenses of the verb *faire*, when it signifies, *faire croire ce qui n'est pas*, to make one believe what is not true, to impose upon one.

*ACCROÎTRE*, to *increase*, is conjugated like *croître*.

*ADMETTRE*, to *admit*, like *mettre*:

*ATTEINDRE*, to *reach*. See *Peindre*.

279. *ATTRAIRE*, to *attract*, to *allure*, is used only in the Infinitive : *Le sel est bon pour attirer les pigeons*, salt is good for attracting pigeons. *Attirer* often supplies its place, and is more harmonious.

280. *BATTRE*, TO BEAT.*Part. Pres. battant.**Part. Past, battu.*

IND. }	Je bats,	tu bats,	il bat;
Pres. }	nous battons,	vous battez,	ils battent.
Imp.	Je battais,	tu battais,	il battait;
	nous battions,	vous battiez,	ils battaient.
Pret.	Je battis,	tu battis,	il battit;
	nous battîmes,	vous battîtes,	ils battirent.
Fut.	Je battrai,	tu battras,	il battrà;
	nous battrons,	vous battriez,	ils battront.
COND. }	Je battrais,	tu battrais,	il battrait;
Pres. }	nous battrions,	vous battriez,	ils battraient.
IMPER.		bats,	qu'il batte;
	battons,	battez,	qu'ils battent.
SUBJ. }	que je batte,	tu battes,	il batte;
Pres. }	que nous battions,	vous battiez,	ils battent.
Imp.	que je battisse,	tu battisses,	il battit;
	que nous battissions,	vous battissiez,	ils battissent.

281. Conjugate in the same manner:—

Abattre,	to pull down.	rabattre,	to abate.
combattre,	to fight.	rebattre,	to beat again.
débattre,	to debate.	se débattre,	to struggle.

## EXERCISE XCIV.

I *pardon* you in consideration of your repentance. —  
*absoudre* *faveur* *repentir*.

She was *acquitted*.—These acids *dissolve* metals.—After the  
ind-3 *absoudre* *acide* art.

death of Alexander, his empire was *dissolved*.—Why do you  
— m.

*beat* my dog? — Our left wing *beat* the right wing  
chien m. <sup>2</sup>*gauche* <sup>1</sup>*aile* f. ind-3 <sup>2</sup>*droit* <sup>1</sup>

of the enemy. — Believe me, general, we *shall beat* them. —  
pl. *Croyez-moi* 87

The cannon *beat down* the walls of the fortress. —  
*canon* m. *abattre* ind-3 *muraille* f. *forteresse* f.

They *fought* bravely on both sides. — They have  
On ind-4 *vaillamment de part et d'autre*. *Ils*  
*discussed* that question. — *Beat* these mattresses again.  
*débattre* — f. *matelas* m.

282. *BOIRE*, TO DRINK.

<i>Part. Pres. buvant.</i>		<i>Part. Past, bu.</i>	
IND. }	Je bois,	tu bois,	il boit ;
Pres. }	nous buvons,	vous buvez,	ils boivent.
Imp.	Je buvais,	tu buvais,	il buvait ;
	nous buvions,	vous buviez,	ils buvaient
Pret.	Je bus,	tu bus,	il but ;
	nous bûmes,	vous bûtes,	ils burent.
Fut.	Je boirai,	tu boiras,	il boira ;
	nous boirons,	vous boirez,	ils boiront.
COND. }	Je boirais,	tu boirais,	il boirait ;
Pres. }	nous boirions,	vous boiriez,	ils boiraient.
IMPER.		bois,	qu'il boive ;
	buvons,	buvez,	qu'ils boivent.
SUBJ. }	Je boive,	tu boives,	il boive ;
Pres. }	nous buvions,	vous buviez,	ils boivent.
Imp.	Je busse,	tu busses,	il bât ;
	nous bussions,	vous bussiez,	ils bussent.

283. *CONCLURE*, TO CONCLUDE.

<i>Part. Pres. concluant.</i>		<i>Part. Past, conclu, m. ; conclue, f.</i>	
IND. }	Je conclus,	tu conclus,	il conclut ;
Pres. }	nous concluons,	vous concluez,	ils concluent.
Imp.	Je concluais,	tu concluais,	il concluait ;
	nous concluions,	vous concluïez,	ils concluaien.
Pret.	Je conclus,	tu conclus,	il conclut ;
	nous conclûmes,	vous conclûtes,	ils conclurent.
Fut.	Je conclurai,	tu concluras,	il conclura ;
	nous conclurons,	vous conclurez,	ils concluront.
COND. }	Je conclurais,	tu conclurais,	il conclurait ;
Pres. }	nous conclurions,	vous concluriez,	ils concluraient.
IMPER.		conclus,	qu'il conclue ;
	concluons,	concluez,	qu'ils concluent
SUBJ. }	Je conclue,	tu conclues,	il conclue ;
Pres. }	nous concluions,	vous concluïez,	ils concluent.
Imp.	Je conclusse,	tu conclusses,	il conclût ;
	nous conclussions,	vous conclussiez,	ils conclussent.

Conjugate in the same manner, *exclure*, to exclude.

## EXERCISE XCV.

I have the honour of *drinking* your health. — His best  
*de inf-1 à santé f.*  
 wine is *drunk*. — This paper *blots*. — They *drank* two bottles  
*vin m. boire bouteille*  
 of champaign. — I *shall drink* a glass of white wine. — *Let us*  
*champagne. verre m. 2 1*  
*drink* to the health of our friends. — Come, *drink*. — I never  
*santé f. Allons*  
*drink* wine. — Since he has not arrived, I *conclude* that he will  
 154 *Puisqu' est en*  
 not come. — What do you *conclude* from all this? — They have  
*Que 101*  
*concluded* the bargain. — He was *excluded* from the assembly.  
*marché m. assemblée f.*

## 284. CONDUIRE, TO CONDUCT; TO LEAD.

*Part. Pres. conduisant. Part. Past, conduit, m.; conduite, f.*

IND. }	Je conduis,	tu conduis,	il conduit;
Pres. }	nous conduisons,	vous conduisez,	ils conduisent.
Imp.	Je conduisais,	tu conduisais,	il conduisait;
	nous conduisions,	vous conduisiez,	ils conduisaient.
Pret.	Je conduisis,	tu conduisis,	il conduisit;
	nous conduisîmes,	vous conduisîtes,	ils conduisirent.
Fut.	Je conduirai,	tu conduiras,	il conduira;
	nous conduirons,	vous conduirez,	ils conduiront.
COND. }	Je conduirais,	tu conduirais,	il conduirait;
Pres. }	nous conduirions,	vous conduiriez,	ils conduiraient.
IMPER.		conduis,	qu'il conduise;
	conduisons,	conduisez,	qu'ils conduisent.
SUBJ. }	Je conduise,	tu conduises,	il conduise;
Pres. }	nous conduisions,	vous conduisiez,	ils conduisent.
Imp.	Je conduisisse,	tu conduisisses,	il conduisit;
	nous conduisissions,	vous conduisissiez,	ils conduisissent.

## 285. Conjugate in the same manner:—

Construire,	<i>to construct.</i>	introduire,	<i>to introduce.</i>
cuire,	<i>to cook, to bake.</i>	produire,	<i>to produce.</i>
déduire,	<i>to deduct.</i>	reconduire,	<i>to reconduct.</i>
détruire,	<i>to destroy.</i>	réduire,	<i>to reduce.</i>
instruire,	<i>to instruct.</i>	traduire,	<i>to translate.</i>

286. *Nuire*, to hurt, is conjugated like *conduire*; but its past participle is *nui*, which has no feminine.

## EXERCISE XCVI

This road *leads* to the town. — Moses *conducted* the  
*chemin m.* *Moïse*

people of Israel. — They *built* several ships. — This  
*peuple m.* *Israël.* *construire* *vaisseau m.*

baker *bakes* twice a day. — *Deduct* what you have  
*boulangier* *deux fois par* *ce que*

received. — Time *destroys* everything. — The overflowing  
*art.* *tout.* *débordement m.*

of the river *destroyed* his crop. — Those who *instruct*  
*rivière f.* *récolte f.* *art.*

youth, (must arm themselves) with patience. — I *shall inform*  
*jeunesse f.* *doivent s'armer* *de* — *instruire*

his family of his conduct. — He *introduced* me into the king's  
*famille f.* *conduite f.* *dans* <sup>2</sup>

closet. — This country has *produced* many great men. —  
<sup>1</sup>*cabinet m.* *pays m.* *beaucoup de*

What book *are* you *translating*? — This is well *translated*. —  
*livre m.* 101

*Translate* this. — That affair has *hurt* his reputation.  
 96 *affaire f.* *à*

287. *CONFIRE*, TO PICKLE, TO PRESERVE.

*Part. Pres. confisant.* *Part. Past, confit, m. ; confite, f.*

IND. }	Je confis,	tu confis,	il confit ;
Pres. }	nous confisons,	vous confisez,	ils confisent.
Imp.	Je confisais,	tu confisais,	il confisait ;
	nous confisions,	vous confisiez,	ils confisaient.
Pret.	Je confis,	tu confis,	il confit ;
	nous confimes,	vous confites,	ils confirent.
Fut.	Je confirai,	tu confiras,	il confira ;
	nous confirons,	vous confirez,	ils confiront.
COND. }	Je confirais,	tu confirais,	il confirait ;
Pres. }	nous confirions,	vous confiriez,	ils confiraient.

IMPER.	confis,	qu'il confise ;
	confisez,	qu'ils confisent.
SUBJ. } <i>je</i> confise,	tu confises,	il confise ;
Pres. } <i>nous</i> confisions,	vous confisiez,	ils confisent.
Imp. <i>je</i> confisse,	tu confisses,	il confit ;
<i>nous</i> confissions,	vous confissiez,	ils confissent.

288. *Suffire*, to suffice, to be sufficient, is conjugated like *confire* ; but its past participle is *suffi*, which has no feminine.

## EXERCISE XCVII.

*I shall preserve* some fruits this year. — *Will you preserve*  
 ——— *année f.*

these cherries with sugar or with brandy? — *Preserve*  
*cerise f. à art. art. eau-de-vie f.*

some apricots and peaches. — Have you pickled any  
*abricot m. 32 pêche f.*

cucumbers? — Little suffices to the wise. — A hundred  
*concombre m. Peu de bien s. \**

pounds a year suffice him for his maintenance. —  
*livres sterling par an subsistance f.*

If he lose that lawsuit, all his property will not suffice. —  
*perd procès m. bien m. y*

That would not suffice me. — That sum is not sufficient to  
*somme f. pour*

pay your debts. — Here are three thousand francs, will that  
*dette f. Voici —*

be enough? — That is enough. — Do you like pickled walnuts?  
*suffire aimer art. 2 1noix f.*

## 289. CONNAÎTRE, TO KNOW.

*Part. Pres. connaissant.*

*Part. Past, connu.*

IND. }	Je connais,	tu connais,	il connaît ;
Pres. }	nous connaissons,	vous connaissez,	ils connaissent.
Imp.	Je connaissais,	tu connaissais,	il connaissait ;
	nous connaissions,	vous connaissiez,	ils connaissaient.
Pret.	Je connus,	tu connus,	il connut ;
	nous connûmes,	vous connûtes,	ils connurent.

IND. }	Je connaîtraï,	tu connaîtras,	il connaîtra;
Fut. }	nous connaîtrons,	vous connaîtrez,	ils connaîtront.
COND. }	Je connaîtrais,	tu connaîtrais,	il connaîtrait;
Pres. }	nous connaîtrions,	vous connaîtriez,	ils connaîtraient
IMPER.		connais,	qu'il connaisse;
	connaissons,	connaissez,	qu'ils connaissent.
SUBJ. }	que je connaisse,	tu connaisses,	il connaisse;
Pres. }	que nous connaissions,	vous connaissiez,	ils connaissent.
Imp.	que je connusse,	tu connusses,	il connût;
	que nous connussions,	vous connussiez,	ils connussent.

See No. 263, for Remark on *Savoir* and *Connaître*.

### 290. Conjugate in the same manner :—

Disparaître, *to disappear.* | reconnaître, *to know again.*  
paraître, *to appear.* | reparaître, *to appear again.*

### EXERCISE XCVIII.

I *know* him perfectly. — He *knows* his (weak side.)—  
*parfaitement.* *faible m.*

We *know* nobody in this neighbourhood. — Do you *know* our  
116 *voisinage m.*

house?—He *knew* me by my voice. — I *would know* him  
*à \* art. voix f.*

among a thousand. — The compass was not *known* to the  
*entre \* boussole f. de*

ancients.—At the approach of our troops, the enemy *disappeared.*  
*approchef. pl.*

— It *seems* you are wrong. — You do not appear  
*paraître que avoir tort.*

convinced.—Do you not *recognise* me?—I *recognise* you.—  
*convaincu reconnaître*

Do they *acknowledge* their errors?—He *knew* his horse *again.*  
*reconnaître*

CONTREDIRE, *to contradict*; see *Dire*.



291. *COUDRE*, TO SEW.

<i>Part. Pres. cousant.</i>		<i>Part. Past, cousu.</i>	
IND. }	Je couds,	tu couds,	il coud ;
Pres. }	nous cousons,	vous cousez,	ils cousent.
Imp.	Je cousais,	tu cousais,	il cousait ;
	nous cousions,	vous cousiez,	ils cousaient.
Pret.	Je cousis,	tu cousis,	il cousit ;
	nous cousîmes,	vous cousîtes,	ils cousirent.
Fut.	Je coudrai,	tu coudras,	il coudra ;
	nous coudrons,	vous coudrez,	ils coudront.
COND. }	Je coudrais,	tu coudrais,	il coudrait ;
Pres. }	nous coudrions,	vous coudriez,	ils coudraient.
IMPER.		couds,	qu'il couse ;
	cousons,	cousez,	qu'ils cousent.
SUBJ. }	Que je couse,	tu couses,	il couse ;
Pres. }	Que nous cousions,	vous cousiez,	ils cousent.
Imp.	Que je cousisse,	tu cousisses,	il cousît ;
	Que nous cousissions,	vous cousissiez,	ils cousissent.

292. *Découdre*, to unsew, and *recoudre*, to sew again, are conjugated in the same manner.

293. *CRAINdre*, TO FEAR.

<i>Part. Pres. craignant.</i>		<i>Part. Past, craint, m.; crainte, f.</i>	
IND. }	Je crains,	tu crains,	il craint ;
Pres. }	nous craignons,	vous craignez,	ils craignent.
Imp.	Je craignais,	tu craignais,	il craignait ;
	nous craignions,	vous craigniez,	ils craignaient.
Pret.	Je craignis,	tu craignis,	il craignit ;
	nous craignîmes,	vous craignîtes,	ils craignirent.
Fut.	Je craindrai,	tu craindras,	il craindra ;
	nous craindrons,	vous craindrez,	ils craindront.
COND. }	Je craindrais,	tu craindrais,	il craindrait ;
Pres. }	nous craindrions,	vous craindriez,	ils craindraient.
IMPER.		crains,	qu'il craigne ;
	craignons,	craignez,	qu'ils craignent.
SUBJ. }	Que je craigne,	tu craignes,	il craigne ;
Pres. }	Que nous craignions,	vous craigniez,	ils craignent.
Imp.	Que je craignisse,	tu craignisses,	il craignît ;
	Que nous craignissions,	vous craignissiez,	ils craignissent.



296. REMARK.—Some people put the preposition *de* after the verb *croire*, when followed by an infinitive; but this is contrary to the practice of the best writers; we must say: *j'ai cru bien faire*, and not *j'ai cru DE bien faire*, I thought I was doing well.

297. *CROÎTRE*, TO GROW.

*Part. Pres.* croissant. *Part. Past*, crû, *m.*; crûe, *f.*

IND. }	Je crois,	tu crois,	il croît ;
Pres. }	nous croissons,	vous croissez,	ils croissent.
Imp.	Je croissais,	tu croissais,	il croissait ;
	nous croissions,	vous croissiez,	ils croissaient.
Pret.	Je crus,	tu crus,	il crût ;
	nous crûmes,	vous crûtes,	ils crurent.
Fut.	Je croîtrai,	tu croîtras,	il croîtra ;
	nous croîtrons,	vous croîtrez,	ils croîtront.
COND. }	Je croîtrais,	tu croîtrais,	il croîtrait ;
Pres. }	nous croîtrions,	vous croîtriez,	ils croîtraient.
IMPER.		crois,	qu'il croisse ;
	croissons,	croissez,	qu'ils croissent.
SUBJ. }	Que je croisse,	tu croisses,	il croisse ;
Pres. }	Que nous croissions,	vous croissiez,	ils croissent.
Imp.	Que je crûsse,	tu crûsses,	il crût ;
	Que nous crûssions,	vous crûssiez,	ils crûssent.

298. Conjugate in the same manner, *accroître*, to increase, and *décroître*, to decrease.

*Accru* and *décrû*, past Participles of *accroître* and *décroître*, are written without any accent.—(*Acad.*)

### EXERCISE C.

I *believe* you. — She *believes* only what she sees. — Do  
you *think* that I wish to deceive you? — He *thought*  
to gain his lawsuit. — They *thought* they heard some cries. —  
I *should think* (I would be wanting) in my duty. — *Believe*  
nothing of all that. — He *thought* he was doing well. — The

vine does not grow in cold countries. — These plants  
*vigne f.* art. <sup>2</sup> <sup>1</sup>*pays m.* *plante f.*

grow on the margin of streams. — His fortune increases  
*bord m.* art. *ruisseau m.* — *f. s'*

every day. — The river has fallen two inches. —  
*tous les jours.* *rivière f.* *décroître de* *pouce m*

After Midsummer, the days begin to shorten.  
*la Saint-Jean* *décroître*

*Finis pour 16 juil 1876*

### 299. DIRE, TO SAY, TO TELL.

*Part. Pres. disant.*

*Part. Past, dit, m.; dite, f.*


IND. }	Je dis,	tu dis,	il dit;
Pres. }	nous disons,	vous dites,	ils disent.
Imp.	Je disais,	tu disais,	il disait;
	nous disions,	vous disiez,	ils disaient.
Pret.	Je dis,	tu dis,	il dit;
	nous dîmes,	vous dites,	ils dirent.
Fut.	Je dirai,	tu diras,	il dira;
	nous dirons,	vous direz,	ils diront.
COND. }	Je dirais,	tu dirais,	il dirait;
Pres. }	nous dirions,	vous diriez,	ils diraient.
IMPER.		dis,	qu'il dise;
	disons,	dites,	qu'ils disent.
SUBJ. }	que je dise,	tu dises,	il dise;
Pres. }	que nous disions,	vous disiez,	ils disent.
Imp.	que je disse,	tu dissés,	il dît;
	que nous dissions,	vous dissiez,	ils dissent.

300. *Redire*, to say again, is conjugated like *dire*; but

contredire, to contradict,	} make in the 2d pers. plur. of the pres. of the Ind. and of the Imper.	contredisez.
dédire, to disown,		dédissez.
interdire, to prohibit,		interdisez.
médire, to slander,		médissez.
prédire, to foretell,		prédissez.

301. *Maudire*, to curse, is conjugated like *dire*, except that it takes double *s* in the Part. pres. *maudissant*; in the IND. pres. *nous maudissons, vous maudissez, ils maudissent*; in the Imperf. *je maudissais*, etc.; in the IMPER. *qu'il maudisse, maudissons*, etc., and in the SUBJ. *que je maudisse, que tu maudisses*, etc.

## EXERCISE CI.

He *tells* all *ce qu'* he knows. — Those who *say*: I shall not  
*travailler* *malade* work, are the most miserable. — Tell us which you would  
*prefer.* — You always *contradict* me. — That physician *prohibits*  
*préférer* *3* *2* *1* *médecin* wine to all his patients. — He *slanders* everybody.  
*art.* *malade* *de tout le monde.*  
 — The makers of almanacs *foretell* rain and fine  
*faiseur* *almanach* *art.* *pluie f.* *art.*  
 weather. — Do not *say*: That man is of one people, and  
*temps m.* *Celui-là* *peuple m.*  
 I am of another people: for all people have had on  
*moi* *car* *art.*  
 earth the same father, who was Adam, and have in  
*art.* *ind-2* —  
 heaven the same father, who is God.   
*art.* *ciel m.*

DISSOUDRE is conjugated like *absoudre*; see p. 146.

302. *ÉCLORE*, to be hatched, as birds, or to blow like a flower, is used only in the present of the Infinitive; in the Part. past, *éclos*, f. *éclo**se*, and in the third persons of the following tenses:—IND. pres. *il éclôt*, *ils éclosent*; Fut. *il éclôra*, *ils éclôront*; COND. *il éclôrait*, *ils éclôraient*; SUBJ. pres. *qu'il éclore*, *qu'ils éclosent*. But its compound tenses, which are formed with *être*, are much in use.

The primitive of *éclore* is *clore*, to close, to shut. Another compound is *enclore*, to enclose.

303. *ÉCRIRE*, TO WRITE.

<i>Part. Pres. écrivant.</i>		<i>Part. Past, écrit.</i>	
IND. }	J'écris,	tu écris,	il écrit;
Pres. }	nous écrivons,	vous écrivez,	ils écrivent.
Imp.	J'écrivais,	tu écrivais,	il écrivait;
	nous écrivions,	vous écriviez,	ils écrivaient.
Pret.	J'écrivis,	tu écrivis,	il écrivit;
	nous écrivîmes,	vous écrivîtes,	ils écrivirent.

<i>Fut.</i>	J'écrirai, nous écrirons,	tu écriras, vous écrirez,	il écrira ; ils écriront.
<i>COND. } Pres. }</i>	J'écrirais, nous écririons,	tu écrirais, vous écririez,	il écrirait ; ils écriraient.
<i>IMPER.</i>	écrivons,	écris, écrivez,	qu'il écrive ; qu'ils écrivent.
<i>SUBJ. } Pres. }</i>	je j'écrive, nous écrivions,	tu écrives, vous écriviez,	il écrive ; ils écrivent.
<i>Imp.</i>	je j'écrivisse, nous écrivissions,	tu écrivisses, vous écrivissiez,	il écrivit ; ils écrivissent.

## 304. Conjugate in the same manner :—

Circonscrire, <i>to circumscribe.</i>	proscrire, <i>to proscribe.</i>
décrire, <i>to describe.</i>	récrire, <i>to write again.</i>
inscrire, <i>to inscribe.</i>	souscrire, <i>to subscribe.</i>
prescrire, <i>to prescribe.</i>	transcrire, <i>to transcribe.</i>

## EXERCISE CII.

Silk-worms *are hatched* in the beginning of  
 art. *ver à soie* ind-1 à commencement m. art.  
 spring. — These flowers *will soon blow*. — That man  
*printemps* m. <sup>2</sup>bientôt <sup>1</sup>

speaks well, but he *writes badly*. — Saint John *wrote his*  
*mal.* — ind-3

gospel at the age of ninety, and joined the quality of an  
*évangile* m. ans ind-3 *qualité* f. \*

evangelist to that of an apostle and a prophet. — I *shall*  
 \* *apôtre* *de* \*

*write* to you from Naples. — *Write* that on a sheet of paper. —  
*feuille* f.

This poet *describes* a battle well. — His physician has  
<sup>2</sup> *bataille* f. <sup>1</sup> *médecin*

*prescribed* to him another regimen. — Sylla *proscribed* three or  
 86 *régime* m. — ind-3

four thousand Roman citizens. — He *is not writing again*, it is  
<sup>2</sup> *romain* <sup>1</sup> *citoyen* m. <sup>c</sup>

a sign that he is coming. — I *shall subscribe* for that atlas. —  
 \* *signe* — m.

I have *transcribed* several passages from Cicero and Tacitus.  
 — *Cicéron de Tacite.*

ENSUIVRE (s'), *to follow from, to ensue* ; see *Suivre*.

ÊTRE, *to be*, is conjugated at length, p. 64.

305. *FAIRE*, TO DO, TO MAKE.*Part. Pres. faisant.**Part. Past, fait.*

IND. } Je fais,	tu fais,	il fait;
Pres. } nous faisons,	vous faites,	ils font.
Imp. Je faisais,	tu faisais,	il faisait;
nous faisions,	vous faisiez,	ils faisaient.
Pret. Je fis,	tu fis,	il fit;
nous fîmes,	vous fîtes,	ils firent.
Fut. Je ferai,	tu feras,	il fera;
nous ferons,	vous ferez,	ils feront.
COND. } Je ferais,	tu ferais,	il ferait;
Pres. } nous ferions,	vous feriez,	ils feraient.
IMPER.	fais,	qu'il fasse;
faisons,	faites,	qu'ils fassent.
SUBJ. } que je fasse,	tu fasses,	il fasse;
Pres. } que nous fassions,	vous fassiez,	ils fassent.
Imp. que je fisse,	tu fisses,	il fît;
que nous fissions,	vous fissiez,	ils fissent.

*Note.*—The diphthong *ai* having the sound of *e* mute, in *faisant*, *nous faisons*, *je faisais*, as well as in the derivatives *bienfaisant*, *bienfaisance*, *contrefaisant*, etc. *Voltaire*, and many writers, after his example, have substituted *e* mute instead of *ai*. But *Dumarsais*, *Condillac*, *Girard*, *Beauzée*, *D'Olivet*, and *Domergue*, have constantly opposed the adoption of this change, and the *French Academy*, the best judges in this matter, have formally rejected it.

306. Conjugate like *faire*:—

contrefaire, to counterfeit, to	refaire, to do again.
[mimic.]	satisfaire, to satisfy.
défaire, to undo, to defeat.	surfaire, to exact, to overcharge.

## EXERCISE CIII.

I do my duty; do yours.—Everything she does, she  
*devoir m. Tout ce qu'*  
 does well.—Pliny relates that Cæsar took above  
*le Pline rapporter faire ind-3 plus de*  
 800,000 prisoners. — The emperor has made him a knight  
 \* *chevalier*  
 of the legion of honour.—She mimics everybody. — What  
*tout le monde. Ce que*





SUBJ. }	<sup>ne</sup> je lise,	tu lises,	il lise ;
Pres. }	<sup>ne</sup> nous lisions,	vous lisiez,	ils lisent.
Imp. }	<sup>ne</sup> je lusse,	tu lusses,	il lût ;
	<sup>ne</sup> nous lussions,	vous lussiez,	ils lussent.

*Note.*—The regular mode of interrogation is, *lis-je bien ?* and not *lisè-je bien ?* I. *lis-je bien* be thought harsh to the ear, another turn of expression may be adopted. —(ACAD., *Th. Corneille*.) See page 87, Rem. 6th.

309. *Élire*, to elect, and *relire*, to read again, are conjugated like *lire*.

### 310. *LUIRE*, TO SHINE.

<i>Part. Pres. luisant.</i>		<i>Part. Past, lui, m. No feminine.</i>	
IND. }	Je luis,	tu luis,	il luit ;
Pres. }	nous luisons,	vous luisez,	ils luisent.
Imp. }	Je luisais,	tu luisais,	il luisait ;
	nous luisions,	vous luisiez,	ils luisaient.
<i>(No Preterite Definite.)</i>			
Fut. }	Je luirai,	tu luiras,	il luira ;
	nous luirons,	vous luirez,	ils luiront.
COND. }	Je luirais,	tu luirais,	il luirait ;
Pres. }	nous luirions,	vous luiriez,	ils luiraient.
<i>(No Imperative.)</i>			
SUBJ. }	Que je luisse,	que tu lises,	qu'il luisse ;
Pres. }	que nous luisions,	que vous luisiez,	qu'ils luisent.
<i>(No Imperfect of the Subjunctive.)</i>			

311. *Reluire*, to shine, to glitter, is conjugated like *luire*, but the Participle present has never been used in a figurative sense.

*MAUDIRE*, to curse ; see page 156.

### EXERCISE CIV.

Get that fish *fried*.—The soles are not yet *fried*.—  
*Faites* <sup>2</sup> *poisson* m. <sup>inf-1</sup> —f. *encore*  
 I am *reading* the Roman history.—She *reads* well.—They *read*  
<sup>2</sup> <sup>1</sup>  
 distinctly. — What author do you *read* in your class?—  
*distinctement.* *auteur* m. *classe* f.  
 We are *reading* Don Quixote. — He is a man who has *read*  
 — *Quichotte.* C' <sup>2</sup>

(a great deal).—He can neither *read* nor write.—*Read* that  
*beaucoup* *ne sait ni ni*  
 letter again.—They *elected* him for their representative.—We  
*ind-3* *représentant*.  
*shall elect* the most worthy.—The sun *shines* for everybody. —  
*digne.* *tout le monde*.  
 Everything *shines* in that house.—All that *glitters* is not gold.  
*Tout* *ce qui*

312. *METTRE*, TO PUT.

	<i>Part. Pres. mettant.</i>		<i>Part. Past, mis.</i>
IND. }	Je mets,	tu mets,	il met;
Pres. }	nous mettons,	vous mettez,	ils mettent.
Imp.	Je mettais,	tu mettais,	il mettait;
	nous mettions,	vous mettiez,	ils mettaient.
Pret.	Je mis,	tu mis,	il mit;
	nous mîmes,	vous mîtes,	ils mirent.
Fut.	Je mettrai,	tu mettras,	il mettra;
	nous mettrons,	vous mettrez,	ils mettront.
COND. }	Je mettrais,	tu mettrais,	il mettrait;
Pres. }	nous mettrions,	vous mettriez,	ils mettraient.
IMPER.		mets,	qu'il mette;
	mettons,	mettez,	qu'ils mettent.
SUBJ. }	que je mette,	tu mettes,	il mette;
Pres. }	que nous mettions,	vous mettiez,	ils mettent.
Imp.	que je misse,	tu misses,	il mît;
	que nous missions,	vous missiez,	ils missent.

## 313. Conjugate in the same manner:—

Admettre,	<i>to admit.</i>	omettre,	<i>to omit.</i>
commettre,	<i>to commit.</i>	permettre,	<i>to permit.</i>
compromettre,	<i>to compromise.</i>	promettre,	<i>to promise.</i>
se démettre,	<i>{ to resign; to put</i>	remettre,	<i>to put again; to put</i>
	<i>out of joint.</i>	soumettre,	<i>to submit. [off.</i>
s'entremettre,	<i>to intermeddle.</i>	transmettre,	<i>to transmit.</i>

## EXERCISE CV.

*Put* on your *hat*. — You have *put* (the cart before the  
 \* *chapeau m.* *la charrue devant les*  
 horse). — I do not *admit* that principle. — They *committed*  
*bœufs.* *principe m.* *ind-3 de*

great excesses. — I *shall* not *compromise* you. — Diocletian  
*excès m. Dioclétien*  
*resigned* the empire. — I *shall omit* nothing that depends  
*ind-3 de — m. de ce qui dépendre*  
upon me to serve you. — The law of Mahomet does not  
*ind-7 de pour —*  
*allow* wine. — *Allow* me to tell you. — He *promises* enough,  
*permettre art. de assez*  
but he seldom keeps his word. — Do not *defer* till to-  
*2rarement 1 parole f. remettre à*  
morrow what you can do to-day. — They *submit* to your  
*ce que aujourd'hui. se*  
decision. — His actions *will transmit* his name to posterity.  
*art.*

314. *MOUDRE*, TO GRIND (corn, coffee, &c.)*Part. Pres. moulant.**Part. Past, moulu.*

IND. }	Je mouds,	tu mouds,	il moud ;
Pres. }	nous moulons,	vous moulez,	ils moulent.
Imp.	Je moulais,	tu moulais,	il moulait ;
	nous moulions,	vous mouliez,	ils moulaient.
Pret.	Je moulus,	tu moulus,	il moulut ;
	nous moulûmes,	vous moulûtes,	ils moulurent.
Fut.	Je moudrai,	tu moudras,	il moudra ;
	nous moudrons,	vous moudrez,	ils moudront.
COND. }	Je moudrais,	tu moudrais,	il moudrait ;
Pres. }	nous moudrions,	vous moudriez,	ils moudraient.
IMPER.		mouds,	qu'il moule ;
	moulons,	moulez,	qu'ils moulent.
SUBJ. }	que je moule,	tu moules,	il moule ;
Pres. }	que nous moulions,	vous mouliez,	ils moulent.
Imp.	que je moulusse,	tu moulusses,	il moulût ;
	que nous moulussions,	vous moulussiez,	ils moulussent.

## 315. Conjugate in the same manner :—

*Émoudre, to grind* (knives, razors, &c.) | *rémoudre, to grind again*  
*remoudre, to grind again* (corn, &c.) | (knives, razors, &c.)

316. *NAÎTRE*, TO BE BORN.*Part. Pres. naissant.**Part. Past, né.*

IND. }	Je nais,	tu nais,	il naît ;
Pres. }	nous naissons,	vous naissez,	ils naissent.

IND. }	Je naissais,	tu naissais,	il naissait ;
Imp. }	nous naissions,	vous naissiez,	ils naissaient.
Pret.	Je naquis,	tu naquis,	il naquit ;
	nous naquîmes,	vous naquîtes,	ils naquirent.
Fut.	Je naîtrai,	tu naîtras,	il naîtra ;
	nous naîtrons,	vous naîtrez,	ils naîtront.
COND. }	Je naîtrais,	tu naîtrais,	il naîtrait ;
Pres. }	nous naîtrions,	vous naîtriez,	ils naîtraient.
IMPER.		nais,	qu'il naisse ;
	naissions,	naissiez,	qu'ils naissent.
SUBJ. }	que je naisse,	tu naisses,	il naisse ;
Pres. }	que nous naissions,	vous naissiez,	ils naissent.
Imp.	que je naquisse,	tu naquisses,	il naquit ;
	que nous naquissions,	vous naquissiez,	ils naquissent.

317. This verb takes the auxiliary *être* ; but *renâître*, to be born again, has no participle past, and, therefore, no compound tenses.

NUIRE, *to hurt* ; see page 150, No. 286.

INSTRUIRE, *to instruct*, is conjugated like *Conduire*.

### EXERCISE CVI.

This mill does not *grind* fine enough. — *Grind* some  
*moulin* m. *fin* <sup>1</sup>

pepper. — Are my scissors *ground*? — From labour  
*pouvre* m. *ciseaux* m. pl. art: *travail* m.

*springs* health ; from health contentment, source of  
*naître* art. art. art. —

every joy. — Abraham *was born* about three hundred and  
*tout* joief. — ind-3 *environ* \*

fifty years after the deluge. — Moses *was born* a hundred years  
*an* m. *Moïse* \*

after the death of Jacob. — Napoleon Bonaparte *was born* at  
— *Napoléon* —

Ajaccio, in Corsica, on the 15th of August 1769. — They  
— *en Corse* \*

*were born* on the same day. — Many diseases *spring*  
\* *Beaucoup de maladie*

from intemperance. — Everything *revives* in spring.  
*Tout renâître* à art.

318. *PAÎTRE*, TO GRAZE.

<i>Part. Pres. paissant.</i>		<i>Part. Past, pu, m. No feminine.</i>	
IND. }	Je pais,	tu pais,	il paît;
Pres. }	nous paissions,	vous paisez,	ils paissent.
Imp.	Je paissais,	tu paissais,	il paissait;
	nous paissions,	vous paissiez,	ils paissaient.
<i>(No Preterite Definite.)</i>			
Fut.	Je paîtrai,	tu paîtras,	il paîtra;
	nous paîtrons,	vous paîtrez,	ils paîtront.
COND. }	Je paîtrais,	tu paîtrais,	il paîtrait;
Pres. }	nous paîtrions,	vous paîtriez,	ils paîtraient.
IMPER.		pais,	qu'il paise;
	paissions,	paisez,	qu'ils paissent.
SUBJ. }	que je paise,	tu paisses,	qu'il paise;
Pres. }	que nous paissions,	vous paissiez,	qu'ils paissent.
<i>(No Imperfect of the Subjunctive.)</i>			

319. *Repâître*, to feed, is conjugated in the same manner, and has, besides, a Preterite Definite, *je repus*, and an Imperfect of the Subjunctive, *que je repusse*.

*PARAÎTRE*, to appear, is conjugated like *Connaître*.

320. *PEINDRE*, TO PAINT.

<i>Part. Pres. peignant.</i>		<i>Part. Past, peint, m. ; peinte, f.</i>	
IND. }	Je peins,	tu peins,	il peint;
Pres. }	nous peignons,	vous peignez,	ils peignent.
Imp.	Je peignais,	tu peignais,	il peignait;
	nous peignions,	vous peigniez,	ils peignaient.
Pret.	Je peignis,	tu peignis,	il peignit;
	nous peignîmes,	vous peignîtes,	ils peignirent.
Fut.	Je peindrai,	tu peindras,	il peindra;
	nous peindrons,	vous peindrez,	ils peindront.
COND. }	Je peindrais,	tu peindrais,	il peindrait;
Pres. }	nous peindrions,	vous peindriez,	ils peindraient.
IMPER.		peins,	qu'il peigne;
	peignons,	peignez,	qu'ils peignent.
SUBJ. }	que je peigne,	tu peignes,	il peigne;
Pres. }	que nous peignions,	vous peigniez,	ils peignent.
Imp.	que je peignisse,	tu peignisses,	il peignît;
	que nous peignissions,	vous peignissiez,	ils peignissent.

321. Conjugate after the same manner all verbs ending in *eindre*; as,

Astreindre, to bind, to subject. | éteindre, to extinguish, to put  
atteindre, to attain, to reach. | feindre, to feign. [out.

### EXERCISE CVII.

The sheep quietly feed on the grass  
mouton m. <sup>3</sup>tranquillement <sup>1</sup>paître \* <sup>2</sup>herbe h m.  
under the care of the shepherd and the dogs. — The  
sous garde f. berger m. pr.  
flocks were grazing in the meadows.—He feeds himself  
troupeau m. prairie f. se repaître  
with vain hopes. — She paints from nature.— Joy  
d' <sup>2</sup> <sup>1</sup>espérance f. d'après — art. se  
was painted in his eyes.—He has attained his fifteenth year. —  
ind-2 année f.  
We shall reach that village before night. — Put out all  
— m. art.  
the candles. — The fire is out.—He feigns to be sick.  
chandelle f. d' malade.  
— He pretended not to see him.  
feindre ind-3 de ne pas \*

### 322. PLAIRE, TO PLEASE.

Part. Pres. plaisant.

Part. Past, plu.

IND. }	Je plais,	tu plais,	il plaît;
Pres. }	nous plaisons,	vous plaisez,	ils plaisent.
Imp.	Je plaisais,	tu plaisais,	il plaisait;
	nous plaisions,	vous plaisiez,	ils plaisaient.
Pret.	Je plus,	tu plus,	il plut;
	nous plûmes,	vous plûtes,	ils plurent.
Fut.	Je plairai,	tu plairas,	il plaira;
	nous plairons,	vous plairez,	ils plairont.
COND. }	Je plairais,	tu plairais,	il plairait;
Pres. }	nous plairions,	vous plairiez,	ils plairaient.
IMPER.		plais,	qu'il plaise;
	plaisons,	plaisez,	qu'ils plaisent.
SUBJ. }	Je plaise,	tu plaises,	il plaise;
Pres. }	Je nous plaisions,	vous plaisiez,	ils plaisent.
Imp.	Je plusse,	tu plusses,	il plût;
	Je nous plussions,	vous plussiez,	ils plussent.


323. Conjugate in the same manner, *déplaire*, to displease, and *complaire*, to humour.

### 324. *PRENDRE*, TO TAKE.

<i>Part. Pres. prenant.</i>		<i>Part. Past, pris.</i>	
IND. } Je prends,	tu prends,	il prend;	
Pres. } nous prenons,	vous prenez,	ils prennent.	
Imp. } Je prenais,	tu prenais,	il prenait;	
	nous prenions,	ils prenaient.	
Pret. } Je pris,	tu pris,	il prit;	
	nous prîmes,	ils prirent.	
Fut. } Je prendrai,	tu prendras,	il prendra;	
	nous prendrons,	ils prendront.	
COND. } Je prendrais,	tu prendrais,	il prendrait;	
Pres. } nous prendrions,	vous prendriez,	ils prendraient.	
IMPER. }	prends,	qu'il prenne;	
	prenez,	qu'ils prennent.	
SUBJ. } je prenne,	tu prennes,	il prenne;	
Pres. } nous prenions,	vous preniez,	ils prennent.	
Imp. } je prisse,	tu prisses,	il prit;	
	nous prissions,	ils prissent.	

### 325. Conjugate in the same manner:—

Apprendre, to learn.	[ <i>prehend.</i>	se méprendre, to mistake.
comprendre, to understand, to com-	reprendre, to take back,	
désapprendre, to <i>unlearn</i> , to forget.	to reply; to censure.	
entreprendre, to undertake.	surprendre, to surprise.	

 The *n* of the above verbs is always doubled, as in *prendre*, when it comes before the *mute* terminations *e*, *es*, *ent*.

### EXERCISE CVIII.

That painting *pleases* me more than the other.—*Let us tableau m.*

not *give offence* by *airs* of haughtiness. — He *took*  
*déplaire* 32 — *hauteur*, *h a.* 32

guides who conducted him.—I *shall take* a hackney-coach.—  
*fiacre m.*

*Take* the first street on the right. — The cat has *caught* a  
*rue f. à \* droite.* *prendre*

mouse. — The place was taken.—*Let us learn* our lesson.—*souris* f. — f. ind-2

I do not *understand* these two words. — Philosophy  
not m. art.

*comprehends* logic, ethics, physics, and  
art. *logique* f. art. *morale* f. s. art. *physique* f. s.

metaphysics. — They *undertake* (too many) things at  
art. *métaphysique* f. s. trop de à

once. — I took up my gun again. — You surprise me  
art. *fois* f. \* fusil m.

very much by telling me that. — Virtue *pleases* everybody.  
*beaucoup en* art. à

### 326. *RÉSOUTRE*, TO RESOLVE.

<i>Part. Pres. résolvant.</i>		<i>Part. Past, résolu, or résous.</i>	
IND. }	Je résous,	tu résous,	il résout;
Pres. }	nous résolvons,	vous résolvez,	ils résolvent.
Imp.	Je résolvais,	tu résolvais,	il résolvait;
	nous résolvions,	vous résolviez,	ils résolvaient.
Pret.	Je résolus,	tu résolus,	il résolut;
	nous résolûmes,	vous résolûtes,	ils résolurent.
Fut.	Je résoudrai,	tu résoudras,	il résoudra;
	nous résoudrons,	vous résoudrez,	ils résoudront.
COND. }	Je résoudrais,	tu résoudrais,	il résoudrait;
Pres. }	nous résoudrions,	vous résoudriez,	ils résoudraient.
IMPER.		résous,	qu'il résolve;
	résolvons,	résolvez,	qu'ils résolvent.
SUBJ. }	que je résolve,	tu résolves,	il résolve;
Pres. }	que nous résolvions,	vous résolviez,	ils résolvent.
Imp.	que je résolusse,	tu résolusses,	il résolût;
	que nous résolussions,	vous résolussiez,	ils résolussent.

327. *N.B.*—When *résoudre* signifies to determine, to decide, the Part. past, *résolu*, m. *résolue*, f. is to be employed; but if it mean to change, to reduce, or turn one thing into another, then the Participle *résous* (without feminine), is to be used:

Ce jeune homme a *résolu* de  
changer de conduite.

Le soleil a *résous* le brouillard  
en pluie.

*This young man has resolved to  
change his conduct.*

*The sun has turned the fog  
into rain.*



328. *RIRE*, TO LAUGH.

	<i>Part. Pres. riant.</i>	<i>Part. Past, ri, m.</i>	<i>No feminine</i>
IND. }	Je ris,	tu ris,	il rit ;
Pres. }	nous rions,	vous riez,	ils rient.
Imp.	Je riaais,	tu riaais,	il riait ;
	nous riions,	vous riiez,	ils riaient.
Pret.	Je ris,	tu ris,	il rit ;
	nous rimes,	vous rîtes,	ils rirent.
Fut.	Je rirai,	tu riras,	il rira ;
	nous rirons,	vous rirez,	ils riront.
COND. }	Je rirais,	tu rirais,	il rirait ;
Pres. }	nous ririons,	vous ririez,	ils riraient.
IMPER.		ris,	qu'il rie ;
	rions,	riez,	qu'ils rient
SUBJ. }	que je rie,	tu ries,	il rie ;
Pres. }	que nous riions,	vous riiez,	ils rient.
Imp.	que Je risse,	tu risses,	il rit ;
	que nous rissions,	vous rissiez,	ils rissent.

*Rire* is also used with a double pronoun, in the sense of to laugh at, to ridicule ; as, *JE ME RIS de ses menaces*, I laugh at his threats.

*Sourire*, to smile, is conjugated in the same manner.

*SUFFIRE*, to suffice, to be sufficient ; see No. 288.

## EXERCISE CIX.

We resolved to set out immediately. — Have they resolved  
 ind-3 *de* *sur-le-champ.* *A-t-on*  
 on peace or war? — Everybody is laughing at his  
 \* art. art. *Tout le monde* à  
 expense. — She was laughing most heartily. — They were  
*dépens* m. pl. *de tout son cœur.*  
 laughing (in their sleeves).—They laughed even to tears.—  
*sous cape.* \* art. *larme*  
 You make me laugh. — Fortune smiles on him.—She smiled  
 art. — f. \* *lui* ind-2  
 at my embarrassment.—He smiled to him, in sign of approbation.  
*de* *embarras* m. ind-3 *en* —  
 —He came up to me smiling.  
 ind-3 *au-devant* *de moi en*

329. *SUIVRE*, TO FOLLOW.

<i>Part. Pres. suivant.</i>		<i>Part. Past, suivi.</i>	
IND. }	Je suis,	tu suis,	il suit;
Pres. }	nous suivons,	vous suivez,	ils suivent.
Imp.	Je suivais,	tu suivais,	il suivait;
	nous suivions,	vous suiviez,	ils suivaient.
Pret.	Je suivis,	tu suivis,	il suivit;
	nous suivîmes,	vous suivîtes,	ils suivirent.
Fut.	Je suivrai,	tu suivras,	il suivra;
	nous suivrons,	vous suivrez,	ils suivront.
COND. }	Je suivrais,	tu suivrais,	il suivrait;
Pres. }	nous suivrions,	vous suivriez,	ils suivraient.
IMPER.		suis,	qu'il suive;
	suivons,	suivez,	qu'ils suivent.
SUBJ. }	Je suive,	tu suives,	il suive;
Pres. }	nous suivions,	vous suiviez,	ils suivent.
Imp.	Je suivisse,	tu suivisses,	il suivît;
	nous suivissions,	vous suivissiez,	ils suivissent.

Conjugate in the same manner, *poursuivre*, to pursue, to prosecute.

*S'ensuivre*, to ensue, to result, follows the same conjugation, but is used only in the third persons singular and plural of every tense; as,

Un grand bien *s'ensuivit*.—(ACAD.) | *Much good* resulted from it.

*SURVIVRE*, to survive, is conjugated like *Vivre*.

330. *TAIRE*, TO CONCEAL, TO KEEP SECRET.

<i>Part. Pres. taisant.</i>		<i>Part. Past, tû, m. ; tue, f.</i>	
IND. }	Je tais,	tu tais,	il tait;
Pres. }	nous taisons,	vous taisez,	ils taisent.
Imp.	Je taisais,	tu taisais,	il taisait;
	nous taisions,	vous taisiez,	ils taisaient.
Pret.	Je tus,	tu tus,	il tut;
	nous tûmes,	vous tûtes,	ils turent.
Fut.	Je tairai,	tu tairas,	il taira;
	nous tairons,	vous tairez,	ils tairont.
COND. }	Je tairais,	tu tairais,	il tairait;
Pres. }	nous tairions,	vous tairiez,	ils tairaient.
IMPER.		tais,	qu'il taise;
	taisons,	taisez,	qu'ils taisent.

SUBJ. }	Je taise,	tu taises,	il taise ;
Pres. }	Nous taisions,	vous taisiez,	ils taisent.
Imp. }	Je tusse,	tu tusses,	il tût ;
	Nous tussions,	vous tussiez,	ils tussent.

Conjugate in the same manner, *se taire*, to be silent, to hold one's tongue.

## EXERCISE CX.

An ass-driver said: I am not what I *follow*, for if I were  
*anier m. ce que car étais*  
 what I *follow*, I would not be what I am. — Trouble  
*art. embarras m.*  
*attends riches.* — Several princes of Germany  
*suivre art. richesses f. pl. — Allemagne*  
*follow the doctrine of Luther.* — I *shall follow* you very  
*— f. — de fort*  
 closely.—Always *follow* the advice of your father.—  
*près. 2 1 avis m. monsieur*  
*Let us pursue* our journey. — Well ! what (*is the consequence*)?  
*chemin m. Eh bien ! que s'ensuire*  
 I *shall not conceal* from you my way of thinking. — After  
*\* façon f. inf-1*  
 having said that, he *held his tongue*.—*Let us be silent.*  
*inf-1*

## 331. TRAIRE, TO MILK.

<i>Part. Pres. trayant.</i>		<i>Part. Past, trait, m. ; traite, f.</i>	
IND. }	Je trais,	tu trais,	il trait ;
Pres. }	nous trayons,	vous trayez,	ils traient.
Imp. }	Je trayais,	tu trayais,	il trayait ;
	nous trayions,	vous trayiez,	ils trayaient.
<i>(No Preterite Definite.)</i>			
Fut. }	Je trairai,	tu trairas,	il traira ;
	nous trairons,	vous trairez,	ils trairont.
COND. }	Je trairais,	tu trairais,	il trairait ;
Pres. }	nous trairions,	vous trairiez,	ils trairaient.
IMPER. }	trayons,	trayez,	qu'il traie ;
			qu'ils traient.
SUBJ. }	Je traie,	tu traies,	il traie ;
Pres. }	Nous trayions,	vous trayiez.	ils traient.
<i>(No Imperfect of the Subjunctive.)</i>			

## 332. Conjugate in the same manner:—

Abstraire, to abstract.	retraire, to finedraw, to darn.
distraindre, to distract, to divert.	retraire, to redeem.
extraire, to extract.	soustraire, to subtract.

(See Remarks on *Abstraire* and *Attraire*, p. 146.)

333. *VAINCRE*, TO VANQUISH, TO CONQUER.*Part. Pres.* vainquant.*Part. Past*, vaincu.

IND. }	Je vaines,	tu vaines,	il vaine ;
Pres. }	nous vainquons,	vous vainquez,	ils vainquent.
Imp.	Je vainquais,	tu vainquais,	il vainquait ;
	nous vainquions,	vous vainquiez,	ils vainquaient.
Pret.	Je vainquis,	tu vainquis,	il vainquit ;
	nous vainquîmes,	vous vainquîtes,	ils vainquirent.
Fut.	Je vaincrai,	tu vaincras,	il vaincra ;
	nous vaincrons,	vous vaincrez,	ils vaincront.
COND. }	Je vaincrais,	tu vaincrais,	il vaincrait ;
Pres. }	nous vaincristions,	vous vaincristiez,	ils vaincristaient.
IMPER.	(The 2d pers. s. is not in use.)		qu'il vainque ;
	vainquons,	vainquez,	qu'ils vainquent.
SUBJ. }	ne je vainque,	tu vainques,	il vainque ;
Pres. }	ne nous vainquions,	vous vainquiez,	ils vainquent.
Imp.	ne je vainquisse,	tu vainquisses,	il vainquît ;
	ne nous vainquissions,	vous vainquissiez,	ils vainquissent.

The Present and Imperfect of the Indicative of this verb are seldom used.

*Convaincre*, to convince, to convict, is conjugated in the same manner.

## EXERCISE CXI.

Is the cow *milked*? — The least thing *diverts* his  
*vache* f. *moindre* le \*

attention.—He has *extracted* that passage from a dialogue of  
 \* — m. — m.

Plato. — Arithmetic teaches to add,  
 Platon. art. *arithmétique* f. à *additionner*,  
*subtract*, multiply, and divide. — Scipio *vanquished*  
 pr. pr. *multiplier*, pr. *diviser*. Scipion ind-3

Hannibal at the battle of Zama, in Africa. — The Greeks  
*Annibal* — *Afrique*. *Grec*  
*vanquished* the Persians at Marathon, Salamis,  
 ind-3 *Perse* à — pr. *Salamine*,  
 Platea, and Mycale.—How many people cannot be  
 pr. *Platée*, pr. — *Combien de gens ne peuvent*  
*convinced* but by experience!—He was *convicted* of treason.  
 m. pl. *que* art.

334. *VIVRE*, TO LIVE.

<i>Part. Pres. vivant.</i>		<i>Part. Past, vécu.</i>	<i>No feminine.</i>
IND. }	Je vis,	tu vis,	il vit ;
Pres. }	nous vivons,	vous vivez,	ils vivent.
Imp.	Je vivais,	tu vivais,	il vivait ;
	nous vivions,	vous viviez,	ils vivaient.
Pret.	Je vécus,	tu vécus,	il vécut ;
	nous vécûmes,	vous vécûtes,	ils vécurent.
Fut.	Je vivrai,	tu vivras,	il vivra ;
	nous vivrons,	vous vivrez,	ils vivront.
COND. }	Je vivrais,	tu vivrais,	il vivrait ;
Pres. }	nous vivrions,	vous vivriez,	ils vivraient.
IMPER.		vis,	qu'il vive ;
	vivons,	vivez,	qu'ils vivent.
SUBJ. }	que je vive,	tu vives,	il vive ;
Pres. }	que nous vivions,	vous viviez,	ils vivent.
Imp.	que je vécusse,	tu vécusses,	il vécût ;
	que nous vécussions,	vous vécussiez,	ils vécussent.

So are conjugated, *revivre*, to revive ; and *survivre*, to survive.

*Ils ont vécu*, in the sense of *ils sont morts* (they are dead), is an expression purely Latin : the Romans avoided, from superstition, the use of words reckoned inauspicious. We say more generally, *ils sont morts* ; however, *ils ont vécu* has become a French phrase, owing to its adoption by a great number of authors ; besides, it produces a finer effect than the expression for which it stands.

335. To live *on* or *upon*, is expressed by *vivre DE* ; as, *Il vit DE légumes* (ACAD.), he lives upon vegetables.

C'est une fille accoutumée à *vivre DE* salade, *DE* lait, *DE* fromage et *DE* pommes.—(Molière.)

*VIVE le Roi !* is an exclamation to express that we wish the king long life and prosperity. *Vive* is also a term made use of to mark that we highly esteem a person, or set a great value upon something.

*Vive la liberté ! Vivent nos libérateurs !*—(Acad.)

Malgré tous les chagrins, *vive la vie !*—(Gresset.)

*Vivent les gens d'esprit !*—(Palissot.)

*Vivent les gens qui ont de l'industrie !*—(Pluche.)

*Vive* or *vivent*, in the above and similar phrases, is the third person of the present of the Subjunctive of the verb *vivre*. (ACAD., Féraud, Trévoux, etc.)

## EXERCISE CXII.

I *live* with economy. — He *lives* like a great lord. — She *lives upon* her income. — We *live* in the country. — Those animals *live upon* herbs and roots. — Saint Louis (Louis IX.) *lived* in the thirteenth century. — So good a prince *will live* for ever in history. — It is dear *living* in this town. — The people shouted, *Long live* the Emperor! — Fathers *live again* in their children. — He *will* never survive the loss of his reputation. — The husband has survived his wife. — He did not long *survive* a person who was so dear to him. — *Let us live* as good Christians.

ind-2 à rentes f. pl. à herbe f. pr. racine f. siècle m. 2 3 1 fait inf-1 dans peupl. m. crier ind-3 revivre dans à perte f. ind-3 à f. ind-2 86 en

## EXERCISE CXIII.

He was in great dejection of mind; but the news which he has just received, have revived him. — Homer lived probably about eight hundred and fifty years before the Christian era. — That man *lives on* little. — He *lives* from hand to mouth. — She *lives on* bread and water. — They *live at* the expense of others. — She *lived* more than a hundred years. — The Latin tongue *will live* for ever. — *Long live* Champagne and Burgundy for good wines. — They called out to him, *Who goes there?* he replied, France. — This work *will live*.

ind-2 un accablement m. vient de inf-1 fait inf-1 Homère ind-2 environ \* avant 2 1 peu. au jour le jour. d' dépens pl. 115 ind-4 \* toujours. crier vivre

## CHAPTER VI.

## OF THE ADVERB.

336. The *Adverb* is an invariable word, so called, because it is most frequently added to a verb, to express some quality, manner, or circumstance; as, *il écrit BIEN*, he writes well; *elle parle DISTINCTEMENT*, she speaks distinctly.

The adverb serves also to modify an adjective, and even another adverb; as, *il est TRÈS éloquent*, he is very eloquent; *elle chante FORT bien*, she sings very well.

Some adverbs consist of a single word, as *bien*, well; *toujours*, always; others are compound, and consist of two or more words, and are commonly called, *adverbial expressions*; such are, *pêle-mêle*, promiscuously; *sur-le-champ*, immediately; *tout-à-coup*, suddenly.

## 337. PLACE OF THE ADVERB.

Adverbs, in French, are generally placed after the verb, in *simple tenses*, and between the auxiliary and the participle, in *compound tenses*; as,

Il parle souvent de vous.		<i>He often speaks of you.</i>
Il a souvent parlé de vous.		<i>He has often spoken of you.</i>

But *adverbial expressions* are placed after the participle in compound tenses; as,

Vous avez jugé à la hâte.		<i>You have judged hastily.</i>
---------------------------	--	---------------------------------

## 338. CLASSIFICATION OF ADVERBS.

Adverbs may be classified according to their different uses; we shall give a list of those most in use.

339. *Adverbs of Affirmation and Consent.*

Certes,	<i>certainly.</i>		soit,	<i>be it so.</i>
oui,	<i>yes.</i>		volontiers,	<i>willingly.</i>
sans doute,	<i>undoubtedly.</i>		d'accord,	<i>done, agreed.</i>

340. *Adverbs of Denial.*

Non, ne, ne pas, } ne point,	no, not.		nullement, point du tout,	by no means, not at all.
---------------------------------	----------	--	------------------------------	-----------------------------

341. *Adverbs of Doubt.*

Peut-être,	perhaps.		probablement,	probably.
------------	----------	--	---------------	-----------

## EXERCISE CXIV.

That is *undoubtedly* a very fine action. — You wish it: *be it*  
*C'est là* — f.

so.—I *willingly* consent to that bargain. — No, no, I shall not  
*marché* m.

consent to it.—Will you give up your rights to him?—*By no*  
 109 *céder* *droit* m.

*means*. — Do you fear his resentment? — No, not at all.—  
*ressentiment* m.

You *perhaps* think that he is one of your friends; you are in a  
*croire* \*

mistake. — He will *probably* succeed in his undertaking.  
 art. *erreur* f. *réussir*

342. *Adverbs of Interrogation.*

~~as~~ These adverbs are always placed before the verb.

Combien,	how much, how		d'où,	whence.
comment,	how. [many.		pourquoi,	why.
où,	where.		quand,	when.

343. *Adverbs of Quantity.*

Assez,	enough.		peu,	little.
beaucoup,	much, very much.		presque,	almost.
bien, fort, très,	very.		tant,	so much, so many.
davantage,	more.		trop,	too, too much, too
				[many.

## EXERCISE CXV.

*How much* have you got in your purse? — *How many*  
 \*

verbs have you learned?—*How* is he?—*Where* do you  
*de verbe* m. *se porter*

live? — *Whence* do you come?—*Why* do you make so much  
*demeurer* *faire*

noise? — *When* shall I have the pleasure of seeing you  
*de* *inf-l*



again?—You have played *enough*.—Gentlemen, *where* are you  
*jouer* *monsieur*  
 running to?—I am *very* glad to meet you.— Science is  
*courir* \* *de* art. — f.  
 estimable, but *virtue* is much *more* so. — *Almost* all the  
 — art. *l' bien* \*  
 philosophers think so. — He has *so many* friends! — He  
*ainsi.* *d'*  
 drinks *too much*.—She speaks *much* and reflects *little*.

344. *Adverbs of Comparison.*

Ainsi,	<i>thus, so.</i>	de mieux en mieux,	<i>[better. better and</i>
aussi,	<i>as, too, also.</i>	moins,	<i>less.</i>
autant,	<i>as much, as many.</i>	pis,	<i>worse.</i>
comme,	<i>as, like.</i>	plus,	<i>more.</i>
mieux,	<i>better.</i>	si,	<i>so.</i>

## EXERCISE CXVI.

The president spoke *thus*. — That book has merit; but  
*président* *du*  
 there are others *as* good. — If he has done that, I can do  
*en* \* *d'* *en*  
*as much*. — There were *as many* ladies as gentlemen.—  
*ind-2 de que de monsieur*  
 Don't read *like* him. — Women speak *better* than they  
*art.* *qu'*  
*n'* write.—She sings *better and better*. — Since the invention of  
*Depuis* — f.  
 powder, battles are *less* bloody than they were.—  
*art. poudre f. art. sanglant qu' ne l' ind-2*  
 His affairs are going from bad to *worse*. — You do not offer  
*mial en*  
 enough, give something *more*. — I was *so* far from them!  
*de ind-2 loin 86*

345. *Adverbs of Order, or Rank.*

Premièrement,	<i>first.</i>	après,	<i>after.</i>
secondement, &c.	<i>secondly, &amp;c.</i>	ensuite,	<i>afterwards</i>
d'abord,	<i>at first, first.</i>	auparavant,	<i>before.</i>

346. *Adverbs of Place.*

Ailleurs,	<i>elsewhere.</i>		loin,	<i>far.</i>
ici,	<i>here.</i>		partout,	<i>everywhere.</i>
là,	<i>there.</i>		y,	<i>there.</i>

REMARK.—*Y* adverb comes from the Latin *ibi*, there; it must not be confounded with the relative pronoun *Y*, which has the sense of *to him, to her, to it, to them, &c.*—See No. 109.

## EXERCISE CXVII.

Do *first* what we have agreed upon. — Work *first*, you  
*ce dont* 252 \* *d'abord*  
 will amuse yourself *afterwards*. — You will go before, and he  
*devant* *lui*  
*after*.—The painter had brought together in the same picture  
*ind-2 rassembler un tableau m.*  
 several different objects; *there* a troop of bacchants, *here* a  
*2 1 f bacchante*  
 group of young people; *there* a sacrifice; *here* a disputation of  
*gens — m. dispute f.*  
 philosophers.—Alexander gave to Porus a kingdom larger  
*Alexandre ind-3 — plus grand*  
 than the one he had before. — Don't go far. — I have  
*celui qu' ind-2*  
 looked for it *everywhere*. — Will you go *there after* dinner?  
*chercher Vouloir y*

347. *Adverbs of Time.**Present.*

Aujourd'hui,	<i>to-day.</i>		maintenant,	<i>now.</i>
--------------	----------------	--	-------------	-------------

*Past.*

Autrefois,	<i>formerly.</i>		hier,	<i>yesterday. [terday.</i>
dernièrement,	<i>lately.</i>		avant-hier,	<i>the day before yes-</i>

*Future.*

Demain,	<i>to-morrow.</i>		bientôt,	<i>soon, very soon.</i>
après-demain,	<i>the day after</i>		désormais,	<i>hereafter.</i>
	<i>to-morrow.</i>		dorénavant,	<i>henceforth.</i>

*Indeterminate.*

Alors,	<i>then.</i>		rarement,	<i>seldom.</i>
longtemps,	<i>long.</i>		souvent,	<i>often.</i>
quelquefois,	<i>sometimes.</i>		toujours,	<i>always.</i>

## EXERCISE CXVIII.

We expect him to-day or to-morrow. — Formerly, the  
*attendre*  
 education of females was neglected, but now it is very much  
 art. *femme* ind-2 *négligé* on \* *beaucoup*  
 (attended to). — He set out the day before yesterday. — Let us  
<sup>1</sup>*s'en* <sup>2</sup>*occupe* *est parti*  
 be wiser hereafter. — Be more exact henceforth. — Where were  
<sup>2</sup> you then? — He goes sometimes on foot, sometimes in a coach. —  
<sup>1</sup> *à* *en* \* *voiture*.  
 That seldom occurs. — People often deceive themselves by  
<sup>1</sup> *arriver* On *se tromper* *en*  
 judging from appearances. — The wisest kings are often  
<sup>sur</sup> art. *apparence* f.  
 deceived. — The moon always revolves round the earth  
*tromper* *tourner autour de*

## 348. Adverbs of Manner and Quality.

Bien,	<i>well.</i>	à la mode,	<i>fashionably.</i>
mal,	<i>badly, ill.</i>	à tort,	<i>wrongfully.</i>
à la hâte,	<i>hastily.</i>	exprès,	<i>on purpose.</i>

To this class must be added the adverbs formed from adjectives, by annexing *ment*. There are, in French, few adjectives, from which adverbs of this nature have not been formed. This termination in *ment* corresponds to the *ly* of the English, and comes from the Italian substantive *mente*, itself derived from the Latin substantive *mens*, *mentis*, which signifies *mind*, *intention*, *manner*; so that *tendrement*, *fortement*, have the same meaning as “in a tender manner,” “in a strong manner.”

These adverbs are formed from adjectives in the following manner:—

349. RULE I. When the adjective ends with a vowel, in the masculine, the adverb is formed by simply adding *ment* to it; as,

poli,	<i>polite;</i>	poliment,	<i>politely.</i>
sage,	<i>wise;</i>	sagement,	<i>wisely.</i>
vrai,	<i>true;</i>	vraiment,	<i>truly.</i>

*Exception.*—*Impuni*, unpunished, makes *impunément*, with impunity.

The six following adverbs take an *é* accented before the termination *ment*, instead of the *e* mute of the adjectives :—

Aveuglément, <i>blindly</i> .	énormément, <i>enormously</i> .
commodément, <i>commodiously</i> .	incommodément, <i>incommodiously</i> .
conformément, <i>conformably</i> .	opiniâtrément, <i>obstinately</i> .

*Bellement*, softly; *follement*, foolishly; *mollement*, effeminately; and *nouvellement*, newly, are formed from the adjectives, *bel*, *fol*, *mol*, *nouvel*, according to the following rule.

350. RULE II. When the adjective ends with a consonant, in the masculine, the adverb is formed from the feminine, by adding *ment* to it; as,

franc, <i>m.</i>	franche, <i>f.</i>	<i>frank</i> ;	franchement, <i>frankly</i> .
heureux, <i>m.</i>	heureuse, <i>f.</i>	<i>happy</i> ;	heureusement, <i>happily</i> .
naïf, <i>m.</i>	naïve, <i>f.</i>	<i>artless</i> ;	naïvement, <i>artlessly</i> .

*Exception.*—*Gentil*, makes *gentiment*, prettily.

The six following adverbs take an *é* accented, instead of the *e* mute of the feminine of the adjectives from which they are formed :—

Communément, <i>commonly</i> .	obscurément, <i>obscurely</i> .
confusément, <i>confusedly</i> .	précisément, <i>precisely</i> .
expressément, <i>expressly</i> .	profondément, <i>profoundly</i> .

351. RULE III. Adjectives ending in *ant* or *ent*, in the masculine, form their adverbs by changing *ant* into *amment*, and *ent* into *emment*; as,

constant, <i>constant</i> ;	constamment, <i>constantly</i> .
éloquent, <i>eloquent</i> ;	éloquemment, <i>eloquently</i> .

*Lent*, slow, and *présent*, present, are the only exceptions to this rule; they follow the second rule, making *lentement*, slowly, and *présentement*, presently.

*N.B.* Most adverbs of manner, and a few of the other classes, have the three degrees of comparison, which are formed as in the adjectives.

352. The following adverbs are irregular in French, as well as in English:—

<i>Positive.</i>	<i>Comparative.</i>	<i>Superlative.</i>
bien, <i>well.</i>	mieux, <i>better.</i>	le mieux, <i>the best.</i>
mal, <i>badly.</i>	pis, <i>worse.</i>	le pis, <i>the worst.</i>
peu, <i>little.</i>	moins, <i>less.</i>	le moins, <i>the least.</i>

(See previous Remarks on these Adverbs, No. 70.)

### EXERCISE CXIX.

(N. B.—In the two following Exercises, some Adjectives are given, from which the Student will form Adverbs, according to the foregoing rules.)

All goes *well*. — I say it *on purpose*. — He has done that  
*aller* *dire* *faire*  
 very *cleverly*. — He acts *conformably* to your orders. — Speak  
*fort habile* *agir*  
 to me *frankly*. — He is *dangerously* wounded. — Corneille and  
*dangereux*  
 Racine are the two best French tragic poets; the pieces of  
*s* *2tragique* *1* *pièce f.*  
 the former are *strongly*, but *incorrectly* written; those of the  
*premier* *2fort* *3* *4incorrect* *1*  
 latter are more *regularly* beautiful, more *purely* expressed,  
*dernier* *régulier* *beau* *pur* *exprimé*  
 and more delicately conceived. — You walk too *slowly*.  
*délicat* *pensé*

### EXERCISE CXX.

I want shoes that I can put on *easily*. — He receives  
*vouloir* 32 subj-1 \* *aisé*  
<sup>2</sup>everybody <sup>1</sup>(very *politely*). — Read *attentively*. — The lion is  
*tout le monde* *attentif*  
*naturally* courageous. — The ancients believed that the swan  
*naturel* *ancien* ind-2 *cygne m.*  
 sang *melodiously*, when it was about to die. — We see *evidently*  
 ind-2 *mélodieux* *lorsqu'* ind-2 *près de* *évident*  
 that three times three make nine. — That affair goes *badly*. —  
*fois* *affaire f.*  
 Sit upon this sofa; you will be *better* than on that  
*Asseyez-vous* — m.  
 chair. — Of all our great writers, he is the one I like *best*.  
*chaise f.* *écrivain c'* *celui que* *le*

## CHAPTER VII.

## OF THE PREPOSITION.

353. The *Preposition* is an invariable part of speech, so called, because, as its Latin derivation implies, it is generally *placed before* the word whose relation to other words it points out.

It is by means of *prepositions* that we supply the *cases* which are wanting in the French language; for instance, the preposition *de* often corresponds to the genitive or ablative of the Latin. *Le livre DE Pierre. — Je viens DE Rome.*

Prepositions are either *simple* or *compound*. The simple consist of a single word; as, *à*, to; *de*, of; *avec*, with. Compound prepositions consist of two or more words; such are, *quant à*, as to; *vis-à-vis*, opposite; *à l'égard de*, with regard to.

The prepositions are divided into classes, according to the manner in which they express relation or connexion.

## 354. To denote Place.

Auprès,	near.
autour,	round, around.
chez,	at.
dans,	in.
devant,	before.
derrière,	behind.
entre,	between.
hors,	out.
jusque,	till, until.
parmi,	among.

près,	near.
proche,	near.
sous,	under.
sur,	on, upon, over.
vers,	towards.
	(Vers is also a prep. of time.)
vis-à-vis,	opposite.
voici,	behold, here is or are.
voilà,	behold, there is or are.

## EXERCISE CXXI.

Chicanery	prowls incessantly	around	justice,	envy
art. <i>chicane</i> f.	<i>rôder sans cesse</i>		<i>de Thémis</i>	art.
around	prosperity,	calumny	around	virtue,
<i>de</i> art.	art.		<i>de</i> art.	art.

error *around* the mind of man, and injustice *around*  
*de esprit* m. art. art. — f.

his heart: what ravages do these monsters not commit  
*de* — m. \* *ne font-ils pas,*

when once they can gain access! — *In* prosperity it is  
*une fois* *pénétrer!* art. *il*

agreeable to have a friend; *in* misfortune it is a necessity.—  
*d'* art. *malheur* m. *c'* *besoin* m.

Write injuries *upon* sand, and benefits *upon*  
 art. art. art. *bienfait* m. art.

brass. — The loadstone points *towards* the north. —  
*airain* m. *aimant* m. *se tourner*

Paper was invented *towards* the end of the fourteenth  
 art. ind-4 *fin* f.

century; and printing *towards* the middle of the  
*siècle* m. art. *imprimerie* f. *milieu* m

fifteenth century.—Go *before* me, and not *behind* him.

### 355: To denote Order.

Avant, <i>before</i> .		depuis, <i>since</i> .
après, <i>after</i> .		dès, <i>from</i> .

### 356. To denote Union.

Avec, <i>with</i> .		outré, <i>besides</i> .
durant, <i>during</i> .		selon, } <i>according to</i> .
pendant, <i>whilst, during</i> .		suivant, }

## EXERCISE CXXII.

Augustus began to reign forty-two years *before* Jesus Christ.—  
*Auguste* ind-3 *Jésus* —

I fear God, and *after* God, I fear principally those who do not  
*ceux*

fear him. — Man *from* his birth has the feeling of  
 art. *sentiment* m. art.

pleasure and of pain. — The soldier defends his country  
 art. *douleur* f. \* art. *patrie* f.

*with* his sword; the man of letters enlightens it *with* his pen.—  
*éclairer*

It is *during* youth that we must lay the foundations of  
*pendant* art. *il faut poser* *fondement*

an honourable and happy life. — The wise man acts  
 according to the dictates of reason. — Talents  
*maxime f. art. art. — m.*  
 (are productive) according to their cultivation.  
*produisent \* art. culture f.*

### 357. To denote Separation or Privation.

Sans, without.		hors, except, save.
excepté, except.		hormis, except, but.

### 358. To denote Opposition.

Contre, against.		nonobstant, notwithstanding.
malgré, in spite of.		[standing.]

## EXERCISE CXXIII.

No virtue without religion, no happiness without virtue.—  
*Point de*

A child without innocence is a flower without perfume.—Where  
*parfum.*

(will you find) roses without thorns?—We must always be  
*trouver inf-1 des — Il faut 2 1*

ready to serve our friends, except against our conscience.—  
*ses sa — f.*

All is lost save honour. — Truth, notwithstanding  
*art. art.*

prejudice, error and falsehood, (clears its way)  
*art. préjugé m. art. art. mensonge m. se fait jour*

and penetrates at last. — The hedgehog knows how to  
*percer à la fin. hérisson m. h a. 265 \* \**

defend himself without fighting.—He has done it in spite of me.  
*se combattre.*

### 359. To denote the End.

Envers, towards.		concernant, concerning.
pour, for.		touchant, about, respecting.

### 360. To denote Cause and Means.

Par, by.		attendu, on account of.
moyennant, by means of.		vu, considering.



## EXERCISE CXXIV.

Fulfil your duties *towards* God, *towards* your parents,  
*Remplir* \_\_\_\_\_

and *towards* your country. — That letter is not *for* you.  
 \* art. *patrie* f.

— It was at the entrance of Edward III. into Calais,  
*Ce* ind-3 *entrée* f. *Edouard* *dans*

in 1347, that (the drum was heard to beat) *for* the first  
*l'an* *l'on entendit battre le tambour*

time. — He has written to him *respecting* that business. — She  
*fois* f. *affaire* f.

charms everybody *by* her kindness and her gentleness. —  
*tout le monde* *bonté* f. *douceur* f.

They will succeed *by means of* your counsels. — The fleet  
*réussir* *avis* m.

cannot sail *on account of* contrary winds.  
*partir* art. 2 1

361. The preposition *à* is used to express several relations, the principal of which are:—

1. *place*; as, *aller à Paris*, to go *to* Paris; *demeurer à Londres*, to live *in* London.

2. *time*; as, *se lever à six heures*, to rise *at* six o'clock.

3. *matter*; as, *bâtir à chaux*, to build *with* lime.

4. *manner*; as, *s'habiller à la française*, to dress *after* the French fashion.

5. *cause*; as, *un moulin à vent*, a windmill; *des armes à feu*, firearms.

6. *use, destination*; as, *un moulin à papier*, a paper-mill; *un sac à ouvrage*, a work-bag.

7. *means*; as, *peindre à l'huile*, to paint *in* oil.

8. *possession*; as, *ce livre est à Alfred*, this book belongs *to* Alfred.

## EXERCISE CXXV.

There are two railways from Paris *to* Versailles. — How far  
 186 *chemin de fer* — *Combien*  
 is it from London *to* Edinburgh? — The neglect of all religion  
*y a-t-il* *Edimbourg?* *oublie* m. — f.  
 soon leads *to* the neglect of all the duties of man. —  
*bientôt* 284 *devoir* m. art.

Hypocrisy is a homage that vice pays to  
 art. *hommage* m. art. — m. *rendre* art.  
 virtue. — Come back *at* six o'clock. — We left him  
*Revenir* *heure* *quitter* ind-4  
*at* (twelve o'clock). — That is *at* the rate of five per cent. —  
*midi.* *C'* • *raison* *pour*  
 The walls of this ancient castle are built *with* lime and  
*mur* m. *château* m. *bâtir* prep.  
 cement. — It is a steam-engine of (twenty-horse power).  
*ciment.* *C'* *machine à vapeur* f. *la force de vingt chevaux.*

362. The principal use of DE is to express:—

1. *place*; as, *venir de Lyon*, to come from Lyons.
2. *time*; as, *il est parti de jour*, he went away in the day-time.
3. *matter*; as, *une table de marbre*, a marble table; *une tabatière d'or*, a gold snuffbox.
4. *possession*; as, *le livre de Berthe*, Bertha's book.
5. *subject*; as, *parlons de cette affaire*, let us speak of that affair.
6. *cause, motive*; as, *je suis charmé de sa fortune*, I am happy at his fortune.

### EXERCISE CXXVI.

We come *from* Dublin, where we have spent a week very  
 — *où* *passer huit jours*  
 agreeably. — I intend to go *from* France to Switzerland;  
*se proposer d'* *en Suisse*  
 and *from* Switzerland to Italy. — The seven wonders of the  
*Italie.* *merveille* f.  
 world were, the walls and gardens of Babylon; the  
 ind-2 *muraille* f. art. *Babylone*;  
 pyramids of Egypt; the pharos of Alexandria; the  
*pyramide* f. *Egypte*; *phare* m.  
 mausoleum which Artemisia erected for Mausolus, her husband;  
*tombeau* m. *Artémise fit élever Mausole*  
 the temple of Diana at Ephesus; the statue of Jupiter  
 — m. *Ephèse*; — f. —  
 Olympius, by Phidias; and the colossus at Rhodes.  
*Olympien,* — *colosse* m. *de* —

363. The preposition EN serves to mark the relations of *place, time, situation, &c.*, and is variously expressed in English.

1. *place* ; as, *voyager en Allemagne*, to travel in Germany ; *aller en Italie*, to go to Italy.
2. *time* ; as, *en hiver*, in winter ; *en temps de paix*, in time of peace.
3. *situation, manner* ; as, *être en bonne santé*, to be in good health ; *agir en maître*, to act as a master.

364. REMARK.—The noun which follows *en* seldom admits of the article, whereas the noun which comes after *dans* is generally preceded by the article.

## EXERCISE CXXVII.

<sup>2</sup>(The same prejudices) <sup>1</sup>(are found) *in* Europe, *in* Asia, *in* *préjugé* m. *on trouve* —  
Africa, and even *in* America. — I have travelled *in* England, *jusqu' Amérique*.  
Scotland, and Ireland. — Queen Elizabeth was born *pr. Ecosse* *pr. Irlande*. art. *Elisabeth naître* ind-3  
*in* 1533, and died *in* 1603. — Narcissus was metamorphosed *ind-3* *Narcisse* ind-3 *métamorphosé*  
*into* a flower. — He has acted, on this occasion, *like* a great *agir dans* — f. \*  
man. — Conscience warns us *as* a friend before punishing *art.* — f. *avertir* \* *de* inf-1  
us *as* a judge. — My grandmother is alive and *in* good health. \*

## EXERCISE CXXVIII.

My father is *in* Russia, my brother *in* Prussia, and my sister *in* *Russie* *Prusse*  
*Austria*. — (It is computed) that there are *in* France four hundred *Autriche*. *On compte* \* \* \*  
towns, and forty-three thousand villages. — I can \* go *in* one *pouvoir*  
day from Edinburgh to London, and *in* two days from London to *à*  
Geneva. — He spends the whole day in going from house to *passer* *à* inf-1  
house, from street to street, and from place to place.

## CHAPTER VIII.

## OF THE CONJUNCTION.

365. The *Conjunction* is an invariable part of speech, which serves to connect words or sentences. When I say :—

Travaillons, si nous voulons acquérir des talents, CAR le temps s'enfuit, ET persuadons-nous bien qu'il ne revient plus.

*Let us work, if we wish to possess acquisitions, for time flies, and let us never forget that it returns no more.*

In this phrase the words *si*, if, *car*, for, *et*, and, *que*, that, are conjunctions, as they serve to unite the different parts of the sentence.

366. Some conjunctions are *simple*, that is, they consist of a single word ; as, *ou*, or ; *mais*, but ; others are *compound*, that is, composed of two or more words, such are, *au reste*, besides ; *à moins que*, unless.

Some grammarians reckon as many sorts of conjunctions as there are ways in which the sentence is affected by them, but as these properties are common to both languages, we shall content ourselves with giving here a list of the conjunctions most in use in the French language.

## 367. TABLE OF CONJUNCTIONS.

Afin de,	<i>to, in order to.</i>	ni,	<i>nor, neither.</i>
afin que,	<i>that, in order that.</i>	or,	<i>now, then.</i>
ainsi,	<i>so, thus.</i>	ou,	<i>or.</i>
car,	<i>for.</i>	ou bien,	<i>or else.</i>
cependant,	<i>however, yet.</i>	parce que,	<i>because.</i>
c'est-à-dire,	<i>that is to say.</i>	pendant que,	<i>while, whilst.</i>
comme,	<i>as.</i>	pourtant,	<i>however, yet.</i>
d'ailleurs,	<i>besides.</i>	pourvu que,	<i>provided that.</i>
de plus,	<i>moreover.</i>	puisque,	<i>since.</i>
de sorte que,	<i>so that.</i>	quand,	<i>though, although.</i>
donc,	<i>then, therefore.</i>	que,	<i>that.</i>
et,	<i>and.</i>	quoique,	<i>though, although.</i>
jusqu'à ce que,	<i>till, until.</i>	savoir,	<i>namely, to wit, viz.</i>
lorsque,	<i>when.</i>	si,	<i>if.</i>
mais,	<i>but.</i>	sinon,	<i>if not, or else.</i>
néanmoins,	<i>nevertheless.</i>	soit,	<i>whether.</i>

## EXERCISE CXXIX.

I have brought this book *in order* to consult it.—To listen  
*livre m. Écouter*  
 with joy to a slanderer, *and* to applaud him, is to cherish  
*\* médisant m. \* lui c' réchauffer*  
 the serpent that stings, *in order that* he may sting more  
*— m. piquer*  
 effectually. — David was a king *and* a prophet. — All the  
*sûrement. — ind-2 \**  
 evils are (long ago) out of the box of Pandora, *but*  
*mal m. depuis longtemps hors boîte f.*  
 hope is yet within. — The compass was not  
*art. encore dedans. boussole f. n' ind-4 point*  
 invented by a mariner, *nor* the telescope by an astronomer, *nor*  
*trouvée marin m. télescope m.*  
 the microscope by a (natural philosopher), *nor* printing  
*— m. physicien m. art. imprimerie f.*  
 by a man of letters, *nor* gunpowder by a military man.  
*homme de lettres art. poudre à canon f. \**

## EXERCISE CXXX.

Which of the two was most intrepid, Cæsar or Alex-  
*ind-3 le*  
 ander? — The memory of Henry IV. is *and* always will be  
*Henri*  
 dear to the French, *because* he placed his glory *and*  
*pl. mettre ind-2 91*  
 happiness in rendering his people happy. — *Provided* you  
*à inf-1 qu'on*  
 know the ruling passion of anyone you are sure to  
*sache dominant — f. quelqu'un, on assuré de*  
 please him. — The Gauls worshipped Apollo, Minerva,  
*lui Gaulois adorer ind-2 Apollon,*  
 Jupiter, *and* Mars; they believed *that* Apollo kept off  
*— — ind-2 chasser ind-2*  
 diseases; *that* Minerva presided over works; *that*  
*art. maladie f. ind-2 à art. travail m.*  
 Jupiter was the sovereign of heaven; *and* Mars the arbiter  
*ind-2 art. pl.*  
 of war. — *If* you wish to be happy, love virtue.  
*art. 276 \**

## CHAPTER IX.

## OF THE INTERJECTION.

368. The *Interjection* is a word which serves to express some sudden emotion of the mind.

The interjections most commonly used in French, are :—

I. *For Joy.*

Ah!        *ah!*  
bon!       *well!*

II. *For Grief and Pain.*

Ah!        *ah!*  
aïe!       *ay! oh dear!*  
hélas!     *alas!*

III. *For Fear.*

Ah!        *ah!*  
hé!        *oh!*

IV. *For Aversion, Contempt, and Disgust.*

Fi!        *fy!*  
fi donc!   *fy! fy!*

V. *For Derision.*

Oh!        *oh!*  
hé!        *hah!*  
zest!      *pshaw!*  
bah!      *nonsense!*

VI. *For Surprise.*

Oh!        *oh!*  
ha!        *ha!*

VII. *For Admiration.*

Oh!        *oh!*  
ah!        *ha!*

VIII. *For Silence.*

Chut!      *hush!*  
st!        *hist!*

IX. *For Encouraging.*

Ça!        } *now! well!*  
oh ça!    } *go on!*

X. *For Warning.*

Gare!      *take care!*  
holà!      *hold!*  
hem!      *hem!*  
oh!        *oh!*

XI. *For Calling.*

Holà!      *holla!*  
hé!        *eh! ho!*

XII. Ô (with a circumflex accent) is an interjection which serves to express various emotions of the mind; it is seldom used but in conjunction with a substantive.

Although several of the preceding interjections are the same for different emotions, yet they vary much in the utterance.

Certain words and phrases that are not interjections in their nature, become such when expressed with emotion, and in an unconnected manner; as, *paix!* peace! *courage!* cheer up! *tout beau!* gently! not so fast! Such are also many words used by the great dramatist *Molière*; as, *morbleu!* *parbleu!* *corbleu!*

### EXERCISE CXXXI.

*Ah!* how glad I am to see you! — *Ah!* the cowards,  
*que* <sup>2</sup>*aise* <sup>1</sup> *de* *lâche*  
exclaimed Pompey. — *Ay!* you hurt me! — *Alas!* I have  
*s'écrier* *Pompée.* *blessé*  
lost everything. — *Ha!* you (are there). — *Oh, oh!* I  
<sup>2</sup> <sup>1</sup>*tout* *voilà.*  
thought the contrary. — *Hush!* some one is coming. —  
*croire* ind-2 *quelqu'un*  
*Holla!* who is there? — O my son, adore God. — O supreme  
*là?*  
pleasure to practise virtue! — Come, my friends, *cheer up!*  
*de pratiquer art.* *Allons,*

### EXERCISE CXXXII.

*Ha!* how beautiful <sup>1</sup>that is! — *Now!* do tell me what <sup>2</sup>  
*que* <sup>3</sup>*cela* <sup>4</sup>*ce que*  
you think. — *Hush!* peace! — *Hah!* I think your lordship  
*penser* *croire que*  
(is making game) of me. — *Holla!* where are you? — *Ah* my  
*se moque*  
friend! why dost thou wish to undertake that fatiguing  
*vouloir* <sup>5</sup>*fatigant*  
journey? — *Beware* of the bomb! — *Fy!* what infamy!  
<sup>6</sup>*voyage m.* <sup>7</sup>*bombe f.*  
plague take the rogue, to wish to beat his wife. — *Fy!* *fy!* —  
*soit du coquin de* <sup>8</sup>  
*Gently,* Sir, speak of him with more respect. — *Courage.*  
*lui* <sup>9</sup>*344 de*  
soldiers, fear nothing!

## PART II.

### OF SYNTAX.

369. The word *Syntax* comes from a Greek word which means *arrangement, construction*. *Syntax* teaches the regular construction of the different parts of speech, conformably to the rules of grammar, and the genius of a language.

### CHAPTER I.

#### OF THE ARTICLE.

370. GENERAL PRINCIPLE.—The article is to be used, in French, before every *common* noun, taken in a *determinate sense*, unless there be another word performing the same office; but it is not to be used before nouns taken in an *indeterminate sense*.

#### CASES IN WHICH THE ARTICLE IS TO BE USED.

371. RULE I. The article is used, in French, before all nouns employed in a general sense, or in the full extent of their signification, although not used in English; as,

L'homme est mortel.  
La guerre est un fléau.

<i>Man is mortal.</i> <i>War is a scourge.</i>
---

*Man* is here employed in a general sense for all mankind, and *War* is taken for war in general, and not for any particular war.



## EXERCISE CXXXIII.

*Ladies* have always revered *fashion*. — *Liberty* is the  
*révérer* *mode* f.  
 natural state of *man*. — *Heroes* have their moments of fear,  
<sup>2</sup> *état* m. *héros* *crainte*,  
 and *cowards* their moments of bravery. — *Children* owe  
*lâche* *bravoure*. *doivent*  
*respect* to their masters. — *Fear* and *ignorance* are the sources  
*maître* —  
 of *superstition*. — *Interest* is the touchstone of *friendship*.  
 — f. *intérêt* m. *pierre de touche* f.  
 — *Honour* is badly guarded, when *religion* is not at the  
*honneur* h mu. *mal* *gardé*, *lorsque*  
 out-posts. — *Contentment* prolongs *life*. — *Vice* is odious.  
*avant-postes*. *prolonger* m. *odieux*.

## EXERCISE CXXXIV.

*Bread* is the staff of *life*. — *Necessity* is the mother of  
*soutien* m. f.  
*invention*. — *Custom* is the legislator of *languages*. —  
*usage* m. *législateur* m. *langue* f.  
*Success* repays us for all our troubles. — There is nothing  
*succès* m. *paie* *de* *peine* f. *Il*  
 that *man* gives so liberally as *counsel*. — *Innoculation*  
*que* *aussi libéralement que conseil* pl. — f.  
 passed from Constantinople to London in 1721, and to  
*passer* ind-3 *à* *en*  
 Paris in 1755. — The Persians who worshipped *fire*, and the  
*Perse* *qui adorer* ind-2  
 Egyptians who worshipped *crocodiles*, were idolaters.  
*Egyptien* — m. ind-2 *idolâtre*

372. RULE II. The article is used in both languages before nouns denoting a particular thing or object, one particular individual or class; as,

LA terre tourne autour du soleil, et	The earth turns round the sun, and
LA lune tourne autour de la terre.	the moon turns round the earth.
L'homme dont vous parlez, est un	The man of whom you speak is a
de mes amis.	friend of mine.

## EXERCISE CXXXV.

*The diseases of the mind are more difficult to cure than*  
*maladie f. âme f. difficile guérir que*  
 those of the body. — *The empire of Alexander was divided*  
 99 — m. ind-3 *partagé*  
 among his generals. — *The Parthenon was in the citadel of*  
*entre Parthénon m. ind-2 citadelle f.*  
*Athens. — The city of Rome was founded 753 years before*  
*Athènes. ville f. a été fondé an m.*  
*Jesus Christ. — Fabius was appointed dictator in the war*  
*Jésus-Christ. — ind-3 nommé dictateur*  
 against Hannibal. — *The Roman empire extended from the*  
*Annibal. 2 1 s'étendait depuis*  
 Western Ocean to the Euphrates. — (According to)  
 2 *occidental* 1 *Océan m. jusqu' à Euphrate. Selon*  
 the poets, the car of Venus was drawn by doves.  
*poète m. char m. Vénus ind-2 attelé de colombe f.*

## EXERCISE CXXXVI.

*The birth of JESUS CHRIST is the era of the Christians,*  
*naissance f. ère f.*  
 and the flight of Mahomet is that of the Mahometans,  
*fuite f. 99 mahométan*  
 commonly called the hegira. — *The first year of*  
 2 *ordinairement* 1 *appelée hégire h mu. année f.*  
*the hegira corresponds to the year 622 of JESUS CHRIST. —*  
*répond*  
*In the time of Philip the Fair†, there were only the dukes,*  
*De Philippe-le-Bel, il n'y avait que duc*  
*the counts, and the barons whose ladies had the*  
*comte — dont art. femme eussent*  
 right to (treat themselves) with four gowns a year. —  
*droit m. de se donner \* robe f. par an.*  
*The invention of the barometer is due to Pascal.*  
*— f. baromètre m. —*

---

† Ascended the throne in 1285; died in 1314.

373. RULE III. The article is used, in French, before the names of arts, sciences, virtues, vices, metals; and also before adjectives, infinitives, adverbs, prepositions, and conjunctions, used substantively; as,

L'ivrognerie est un vice affreux.  
Le vert plaît aux yeux.  
Le savoir a son prix.

*Drunkenness is a dreadful vice.*  
*Green pleases the eye.*  
*Knowledge has its value.*

374. *N.B.*—Adjectives, verbs, adverbs, etc. used substantively, are masculine in French.

## EXERCISE CXXXVII.

Before studying *navigation* and *fortification* (it is necessary to)  
*Avant d'étudier* — f. — pl. *il faut*  
know *mathematics*. — *Grammar* teaches to speak correctly,  
265 *mathématiques* pl. *apprendre à* *correctement*  
*rhetoric* to speak elegantly. — *Chronology* and *geography*  
*rhétorique* f. *élégamment.* *chronologie* f. *géographie* f.  
are the eyes of history. — *Faith, hope, and charity* are  
*yeux* art. *foi* f. *espérance* f. *des*  
cardinal virtues. — *Intemperance* and *idleness* are the two  
*théologale* <sup>1</sup> *paresse* f.  
most dangerous enemies of life. — The principal metals are:  
*plus* *ennemi* m. art. f.  
*gold, silver, copper, tin, iron, and lead.* — He  
*or* m. *argent* m. *cuivre* m. *étain* m. *fer* m. *plomb* m.  
knows *Latin* and *French*. — She (is fond of) *blue.* — *Eating,*  
*savoir* *aime* *bleu.* *manger*  
*drinking, and sleeping, are necessary to.* man.  
*boire* *dormir* art.

375. RULE IV. The article is put before the names of countries, provinces, islands, mountains, rivers, and winds; but countries having the same name as their capitals do not take the article; as,

L'Angleterre et la France sont  
deux états puissants.  
Naples est un pays délicieux.

*England and France are two*  
*powerful states.*  
*Naples is a delightful country.*

## EXERCISE CXXXVIII.

*Europe* contains the following states: on the north,  
 contenir <sup>2</sup>suivant <sup>1</sup>état m. à nord m.  
*Norway, Sweden, Denmark, Russia, and the British*  
*Norwège f. Suède f. Danemark m. Russie f. <sup>2</sup>Britanniques*  
*Islands; in the middle, France, Belgium, Holland,*  
<sup>1</sup>îles à milieu m. — f. Belgique f. Hollande f.  
*Germany or the (German States), Prussia, Poland,*  
*Allemagne f. \* Confédération germanique, Prusse f. Pologne f.*  
*Hungary, Austria, and Switzerland; on the south,*  
*Hongrie f. h asp. Autriche f. Suisse f. à midi m.*  
*Spain, Portugal, Italy, Greece, and Turkey in Europe.*  
*Espagne f. — m. Italie f. Grèce f. Turquie f. d'*  
*—Lapland is the country of the reindeer. — Burgundy*  
*Laponie f. patrie f. renne m. Bourgogne f.*  
*produces excellent wine. — Sicily is the granary of Italy.*  
*produire d' Sicile f. grenier m.*

## EXERCISE CXXXIX.

*France* is separated from *Italy* by the Alps, and from  
 séparé Alpes f. pl.  
*Spain* by the Pyrenees. — The principal rivers of *Europe*  
 Pyrénées f. pl. rivière f.  
 are: the Volga, the Dnieper or Boristhenes, the Don or  
 — m. Dniéper m. Borysthènes — m.  
 Tanaïs, in Russia; the Danube, the Rhine, and the Elbe,  
 — en — m. Rhin m. — m.  
 in Germany; the Vistula, in Poland; the Loire, the Seine,  
 Vistule f. — f. — f.  
 the Rhone, and the Garonne, in France; the Ebro, the  
 Rhône m. — f. Ebre m.  
 Tagus, and the Douro, in Spain; the Po, and the Tiber,  
 Tage m. — m. Pô m. Tibre m.  
 in Italy; the Thames, the Mersey, and the Severn, in England;  
 Tamise f. — f. Saverne f.  
 and the Shannon, in Ireland. — The first pheasants came  
 — m. Irlande. faisan m. sont venus  
 from the banks of the Phasis, a river of Colchis.  
 bord m. Phase m. \* fleuve m. Colchide f.

## EXCEPTIONS AND REMARKS.

376. (1.) The article is not used before the names of countries when they are preceded by the preposition *en*; as, *Demeurer en Angleterre*, to live *in* England; *Aller en Allemagne*, to go to Germany. •

With the names of towns, the preposition *à*, and not *en*, is used; as, *Demeurer à Londres*, to live *in* London; *Etre à Paris*, to be *in* Paris.

377. (2.) When the names of countries are governed by some preceding noun, and have the meaning of an adjective, they are used without the article; as, *roi d'Espagne*, king of Spain; *vins de France*, French wines; *laine d'Angleterre*, English wool.

378. (3.) The article is not used when we speak of countries as of places one comes or sets out from; as, *Il vient d'Italie*, he comes from Italy; *j'arrive de France*, I am just arrived from France. In this case, however, we use the article before the names of the five great divisions of the world; as, *je viens de l'Asie*, *il arrive de l'Amérique*.

379. (4.) Most names of countries out of Europe, keep the article; therefore, instead of the prepositions *en* and *de*, used alone, as in the preceding cases, we employ the prepositions *à* and *de*, with the article; thus we say, *je vais au Japon* (and not *en Japon*), I am going to Japan; *j'arrive du Canada* (and not *de Canada*), I am just arrived from Canada.

## EXERCISE CXL.

*In Norway*, they cover the houses with the bark of the  
*En* on couvrir avec écorce f.

birch-tree. — We intend going to Switzerland and  
*bouleau m.* se proposer d' inf-1 en

*Italy*. — Three English miles are a little more than  
<sup>2</sup>d'Angleterre <sup>1</sup>mille m. font plus d'

one French league. — My brother will soon return from  
<sup>2</sup>de France <sup>1</sup>lieue f. revenir

*Russia*. — I sailed from Holland for the Cape of  
 partir ind-3 cap m.

Good Hope. — We had set out *from Africa*, when he  
*Bonne-Espérance.* ind-2 *partir*  
 arrived there. — He is gone *to China*. — Chocolate was  
 ind-3 *y* aller *Chine* f. *chocolat* m. ind-3  
 brought *from Mexico to Europe* by the Spaniards.  
*apporter Mexique m. en Espagne*

380. RULE V. Nouns used in a *partitive* sense, that is, denoting only a *part* of anything, which is marked in English by the words *some* or *any*, sometimes expressed and oftener understood, must be preceded in French by *du, de la, de l', des*, according to the gender and number of the noun.

## EXAMPLES.

Donnez-moi <i>du pain, de la viande,</i> et <i>des habits.</i>		<i>Give me some bread, meat, and</i> <i>clothes.</i>
A-t-il <i>de l'argent</i> ou <i>des amis</i> ?		<i>Has he any money or any friends?</i>

381. *Exception.*—When a noun in the *partitive* sense is preceded by an adjective, instead of *du, de la, de l', des*, the preposition *de* only is used ; as,

Donnez-moi <i>de bon pain, de bonne</i> <i>viande, et de bons habits.</i>		<i>Give me some good bread, good</i> <i>meat, and good clothes.</i>
--	--	--

(For farther explanations, see No. 32, and the Remarks, p. 63.)

In these expressions : *des petits pois, des petites raves, des petits-pâtés, des petits-mâîtres, des jeunes gens*, etc., the substantives are so united with the adjectives, as to form but one and the same word, and take the article according to Rule V.

We likewise say : *l'opinion DES anciens philosophes ; la suite DES grandes passions ; le propre DES belles actions*, etc., because, in expressions of this kind, the nouns are not used in a *partitive* but in a *general* sense.

## EXERCISE CXLI.

I have bought *some* books. — Have you *any* change? —  
*monnaie* f.

Provence and Languedoc produce *oranges, olives, almonds*,  
 — f. — m. *produire* — f. — f. *amande* f.

*chesnuds, figs, peaches, apricots, and grapes.* — He asks  
*châtaigne, f. figue f. pêche f. abricot m. raisin m.*

for red wine. — To write well, one must have good paper, good  
 \* 2 1 *Pour* 2 1 *il faut* \*

ink, and good pens. — A great heart, said a king of Persia,  
*encre f. cœur m. ind-2 Perse*

receives little presents with one hand, and makes large ones  
*d' en faire grand \**

with the other. — (He is always seen) with wits or  
*de On le voit toujours beaux-esprits*

great lords. — Have you any green peas?  
*grands-seigneurs. petits pois*

382. RULE VI. The English make use of the indefinite article *a* or *an*, before nouns of measure, weight, and number; but the French use the article *le, la*; as,

Un schelling L'aune.

Six sous LA livre.

Cinq schellings LE cent.

A shilling a yard.

Six-pence a pound.

Five shillings a hundred.

383. But, in speaking of time, *a* or *an* is expressed in French by *par*; as, so much *a-week*, *tant PAR semaine*.

A-head, is rendered by *par tête*;—so much each, *tant par personne*;—so much a lesson, *tant par leçon*.

## EXERCISE CXLII.

Corn sells at seven shillings *a* bushel. — The best  
 art. *blém. se vend \** *boisseau m.*

French wines sell for five shillings *a* bottle. — That  
 2 *de France* 1 *se vendent \** *bouteille f.*

grocer, sells sugar at three pounds *a* hundred-weight,  
*épiciér m. vend art. \** *livres sterling quintal m.*

coffee at two shillings *a* pound, and pepper at two-pence  
 art. \* *livre f. art. poivre m. \**

*an* ounce. — How much *a* dozen? — (Here are) excellent  
*once f. douzaine f. Voici*

oysters at one shilling *a* hundred. — He gives him *a* hundred  
*huitre f. \**

pounds *a* year; it is more than eight pounds *a* month.  
*livres sterling c' de*

384. RULE VII. When the article is used before the first of a series of nouns, it must be repeated before each; as,

Je vis hier le roi, a reine, et les princes. | I saw the king, queen, and princes, yesterday.

So you will not say: *les officiers et soldats; le père et mère; les frères et sœurs*; but you will say: *les officiers et les soldats; le père et la mère; les frères et les sœurs*.

*Note.*—This rule applies to the prepositions *à* and *de*, and to all the words which hold the place of the article. We must therefore say: *J'ai parlé à la reine et à la princesse*, I have spoken to the queen and the princess. *Son père et sa mère*, his father and mother.

### EXERCISE CXLIII.

The gentleman and lady are gone. — Gold, silver,  
*monsieur dame partis. art.*  
 health, honours, and pleasures, cannot make a man happy,  
*santé f. ne peuvent rendre l'*  
 without virtue. — Self-love and pride are  
*art. art. amour-propre m. orgueil m.*  
 always the offspring of a weak mind. — Innocence of  
*partage m. ?faible l'esprit m. art. — f.*  
 manners, sincerity, and abhorrence of vice  
*art. mœurs pl. horreur h mu. art. — m.*  
 inhabit this happy region. — Poetry, painting, and music  
*habiter région f. art. poésie f. peinture f. musique f.*  
 are (sister arts).—The love for one's father and mother is  
*sœurs. amour m. son*  
 the basis of every virtue.—The city of Andrew and Peter.  
*base f. tout art. pl. ville f.*

385. RULE VIII. When two adjectives are united by the conjunction *et* (and), and one of them is intended to qualify a substantive expressed and the other a substantive understood, the article must be repeated, in French, before each adjective; as,

L'histoire ancienne et LA moderne. | Ancient and modern history.  
 Le premier et LE second étage. | The first and the second floor.  
 Les philosophes anciens et LES modernes. | Ancient and modern philosophers.



There are *two histories, two floors, philosophers* both ancient and modern; the one expressed, the other understood; therefore the article must be repeated.

~~Observe~~ Observe that the substantive is not put in the plural: *l'histoire ancienne et la moderne, le premier et le second étage*, because these phrases are elliptical, and stand for *l'histoire ancienne et l'histoire moderne, le premier étage et le second étage*.

386. But, when the adjectives united by *et* (and), qualify only one substantive, and no other is understood, the article is not repeated; so we say with the modern grammarians: *Le sage et pieux Fénélon*, the wise and pious Fénélon; and with Boileau:

*Le doux et tendre ouvrage*—(The sweet and tender work)—

because it is the same person that is wise and pious, and the same work which is sweet and tender.

*Note*.—This rule, on the repetition or non-repetition of the Article, applies also to *mon, ton, son, leur, ce, cet, un, une*, etc.

## EXERCISE CXLIV.

: The first *and* the second volume.—The first *and* the fourth  
— m.

class.—The fifteenth *and* the sixteenth century were marked  
*classe* f. *siècle* m. ind-4 *marqué*

by great discoveries. — The faults of Peter the Great  
381 *découverte* f. *défaut* m. *Pierre*

tarnished his great *and* admirable qualities. — Can anyone  
*ternir* ind-4 *qualité* f. *Peut-on*

contemplate the heavens, without being convinced that  
*contempler* *ciel* m. sing. inf-1 *convaincre*

the universe is governed by a supreme *and* divine Intelligence?  
*gouverner* — — f.

— Homer has described men such as they were with *their*  
*Homère* *peindre* *tel qu'* ind-2

good *and* bad qualities.—*My* brother and sister are going to Pau.  
*qualité* f.

## CASES IN WHICH THE ARTICLE IS NOT USED.

387. RULE I. The article is omitted before substantives, when, in using them, nothing is said as to the extent of their signification.

## EXAMPLES.

Un tyran n'a ni parents ni amis.	[friends.
Les chemins sont bordés de lauriers, de grenadiers, de jasmîns, et d'autres arbres toujours verts et toujours fleuris. — (Fénélon.)	A tyrant has neither relations nor The highways are bordered with laurels, pomegranates, jessamines, and other trees which are always green, and always in bloom.

It follows from this rule that the article is not used before substantives:—

388. (1.) When they are in the form of a title or an address; as,

OBSERVATIONS SUR l'état de l'Europe.	Observations on the situation of Europe.
Il demeure RUE Piccadilly, QUARTIER Saint-James.	He lives in Piccadilly, St James's.

389. (2.) When they are governed by the preposition *en*; as,

Etre en ville.	To be in town.
Vivre en prince.	To live like a prince.

390. (3.) When they are used as an apostrophe or interjection; as,

*Courage, soldats, tenez ferme!* | *Courage, soldiers, stand firm!*

We say, however, to a person whom we do not know, and with whom we are on no ceremony: *Ecoutez, l'homme!* Hark ye, my man!—*La fille, arrêtez!* Stop, girl! etc.—(*Dict. de l'Elocution Française.*)

391. No article is used, but simply the preposition *de*, after the words *sorte*, *genre*, *espèce*, *mélange*, and such like; as, *une sorte DE fruit*, a kind of fruit.

## EXERCISE CXLV.

(We see there) neither *marble*, nor *columns*, nor *pictures*, nor  
*On n'y voit* *marbre* *colonne* *tableau*  
*statues.*—The fleets of Solomon, under the conduct of the  
*flotte f.* *Salomon* *conduite f.*  
 Phœnicians, made frequent voyages to the land of Ophir and  
*Phénicien ind-2* — *m.* *terre f.* —  
 Tharsis, in Ethiopia, whence they returned at the end  
*de — en* *d'où* *revenir ind-2* *bout m.*

of three years, laden with gold, silver, ivory, precious  
*chargé de ivoire m.* <sup>2</sup>  
 stones, and other kinds of merchandise. — I will pay you in  
*espèce f. marchandises.* <sup>en</sup>  
 gold. — He lived and died like a philosopher. — Come,  
*vivre ind-3 ind-3 Allons,*  
 children, work. — That kind of work does not please  
*genre m. ouvrage plaire*  
 everybody. — History of the Roman emperors.  
*à tout le monde.* <sup>2 1</sup>

392. RULE II. No article is used before proper names of deities, persons, animals, towns, and particular places.

## EXAMPLES.

<i>Dieu est tout-puissant.</i>	<i>God is all-powerful.</i>
<i>Jupiter et Vénus étaient des divinités païennes.</i>	<i>Jupiter and Venus were heathen divinities.</i>
<i>Edimbourg est une belle ville.</i>	<i>Edinburgh is a fine city.</i>

Some proper names of towns and particular places always keep the article as an inseparable part of the name; as, *La Rochelle, La Flèche, la Haye, le Caire, la Mecque, &c.*

393. Proper names, however, take the article, when used in a particular sense, or to denote an individual distinction; as,

<i>Le Dieu des Chrétiens.</i>	<i>The God of the Christians.</i>
<i>Le Jupiter d'Homère.</i>	<i>Homer's Jupiter.</i>
<i>La Vénus de Médicis.</i>	<i>The Venus de' Medici.</i>

394. *Observation.*—In imitation of the Italians, the French use the article before the names of several celebrated Italian poets and painters, the word *poète* or *peintre*, being then understood; as, *le Dante, le Tasse, l'Arioste, le Titien, le Guide.* However, we say *Pétrarque, Bocace, Michel-Ange, Raphaël*, etc.; it is usage that decides here, as in many other cases.

## EXERCISE CXLVI.

*God said. let there be light, and there was light.* — *The*  
*ind-3 que la lumière soit,* \* <sup>2ind-3 1</sup>  
*God of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, was the only true God.*  
*ind-2 seul vrai*  
*—Plato, Aristotle, Homer, Demosthenes, Cicero, Virgil, and*  
*Platon, Aristote, Démosthène, Cicéron, Virgile,*

*Livy*, are classical authors.—*Achilles* is the hero  
*Tite-Live*, des<sup>2</sup>*classique* <sup>1</sup> *Achille* *héros* h asp.  
 of the *Iliad*; *Aeneas* is the hero of the *Eneid*. — *Helen* was  
*Iliad*ef. *Enée* *Enéide*f. *Hélène* ind-4  
 the ruin of *Troy*. — *Bucephalus* (would carry none but) *Alex-*  
*Troie*. *Bucéphale* ne voulait porter qu'  
*ander*. — *Carthage* was the rival of *Rome*. — *Dante*, *Tasso*,  
 ind-2 *rivale*f.  
 and *Ariosto*, hold the first rank among the Italian poets.  
*tenir* *rang* m. *parmi* <sup>2</sup> <sup>1</sup>

395. RULE III. The article is not used, in French, before the ordinal numbers *first*, *second*, *third*, *fourth*, etc., when they come after the name of a sovereign, or after the words *book*, *chapter*, or such like; as,

Édouard premier.  
 Richard trois.  
 Livre premier.  
 Chapitre second.

Edward the *first*.  
 Richard the *third*.  
 Book the *first*.  
 Chapter the *second*.

396. Observe that, in French, we make use of the *cardinal* numbers instead of the *ordinal*, in speaking of sovereigns, with the exception of the *first* of the series. With the *second*, it is optional to use *deux* or *second*, for we say indifferently *Henri deux* or *Henri second*.—(*Acad.*)

397. The cardinal or ordinal numbers are indifferently used, the *first* excepted, after the words *livre*, *chapitre*, *page*, or such like. We say, *livre premier*, *section première*, and not *livre un*, *section une*. But we say either *livre huit* or *huitième*; *chapitre dix* or *dixième*; *page trois* or *troisième*; *tome second* or *tome deux*, etc.—(*Acad.*)

(For farther Remarks, see pages 34, 35.)

### EXERCISE CXLVII.

Pope Leo the *tenth* and Luther were coteremporaries. —  
 art. *pape Léon* — *contemporain*<sup>o</sup>

William the *third* married the princess Mary, daughter  
*Guillaume* épouser ind-3 *Marie*  
 of James the *second*, and granddaughter of Charles the *first*.  
*Jacques* *petite-fille*

—Louis *the eleventh* had a Scotch guard. — Louis *the fifteenth*  
ind-2 <sup>1</sup>écossais <sup>1</sup>garde f.

was the great grandson of Louis *the fourteenth*. — Book *the*  
ind-2 *arrière-petit-fils*

sixth, chapter *the fifth*. — Volume *the third*, section *the seventh*,  
— f.

article *the first*. — Rule *the fourth*, page *the ninth*.  
*règle f.*

398. RULE IV. No article is used before nouns preceded by any of the possessive, demonstrative, or indefinite adjectives *mon, ton, son, notre, votre, leur, ce, nul, aucun, chaque, tout* (used for *chaque*), *certain, plusieurs, tel*, nor before those which are preceded by a cardinal number; as,

<i>Mon frère et ma sœur apprennent la géographie.</i>	<i>My brother and sister are learning geography.</i>
<i>Cette montre est bonne; donnez-la à votre sœur.</i>	<i>This watch is good; give it to your sister.</i>
<i>Tout homme peut mentir, mais tout homme ne ment pas.</i>	<i>Every man can lie, 'but every man does not lie.</i>
<i>J'ai trois chevaux.</i>	<i>I have three horses.</i>

(See Observations, pp. 42, 43, and Rule, p. 44.)

### EXERCISE CXLVIII.

It is *my* turn to speak. — Give me the number of *his*  
*C' à tour m. à numéro m.*

house. — The Seine has *its* source in Burgundy, and *its*  
f. — f. *en*

mouth at Havre-de-Grâce. — All the husbands were at  
*embouchure f. au mari ind-2*

the ball with *their* wives. — *These* ladies (are waiting for)  
*bal m. femme dame attendent*

*their* carriages. — Those *two* boys have lost *their* hats. —  
*voiture f.*

The Saracens occupied Spain during *several* centuries. —  
*Sarrasins ont occupé pendant siècle m.*

The city of Troy sustained a siege of *ten* years. —  
*ville f. Troie soutint an m.*

The pound sterling (is worth) about *twenty-five* francs.  
*vaut environ*

399. RULE V. The indefinite article, *a* or *an*, used in English, before nouns expressing *title, profession, trade, country*, or any attribute of the noun preceding, is omitted in French; as,

Le duc d'York, prince du sang.

*The Duke of York, a prince of the blood.*

Je suis médecin.

*I am a physician.*

Il est libraire.

*He is a bookseller.*

Etes-vous Français?

*Are you a Frenchman?*

Je viens de Caen, ville de Normandie.

*I come from Caen, a town of Normandy.*

400. But when an adjective is joined to the noun, or when it is specified by some circumstance, then *a* or *an* must be expressed in French; as,

Je suis *un* prince infortuné.

*I am an unfortunate prince.*

M. Walewski est *un* Polonais d'une illustre maison.

*M. Walewski is a Pole of an illustrious family.*

*A* or *an* is also expressed in French after *c'est*; as,

C'est *un* évêque.

*He is a bishop.*

401. RULE VI. The English indefinite article *a* or *an* is omitted in French, after *quel, quelle*, what, used as an exclamation; as,

Quel malheur!

*What a misfortune!*

Quelle beauté!

*What a beauty!*

Quelle belle maison!

*What a beautiful house!*

Quelle folie d'agir ainsi!

*What a folly to act thus!*

### EXERCISE CXLIX.

Napoleon was (at once) *an* emperor, *a* warrior, and *a* statesman. — Socrates was *a* philosopher; Apelles, *a* *ind-2 à la fois* *guerrier*, *homme d'état*. *Socrate ind-2* *Apelle*

painter; Phidias, *a* sculptor; Cicero, *an* orator; Livy, *an* *peintre* — *Tite-Live* historian; and Virgil, *a* poet. — His father was *a* barrister. — *historien poète. ind-2 avocat.*

I am *an* Englishman, and *a* merchant. — The best coffee *négociant. café m.* comes from Mocha, *a* town of Arabia Felix. — I am *an* *Moka, heureuse.*

unhappy Spaniard, who seek an asylum, where I may  
*malheureux Espagnol, cherche asile m. où puisse*  
 end my days in peace.—He is an officer.—He is a captain.—  
*finir en C' officier. Il*

What a noise you make! — What a beautiful morning!  
*bruit m. matinée f.*

402.. RULE VII. No article is used, but only the preposition *de*, after the following adverbs:—

assez,	<i>enough.</i>	moins,	<i>less, fewer.</i>
autant,	<i>as much, as many.</i>	pas or point,	<i>no.</i>
beaucoup,	<i>much, very much,</i>	peu,	<i>little, few.</i>
	<i>many.</i>	plus,	<i>more.</i>
combien,	} <i>how much, how</i>	rien,	<i>nothing.</i>
que,		tant,	<i>so much, so many.</i>
jamais,	<i>never.</i>	trop,	<i>too much, too</i>
			<i>many.</i>

## EXAMPLES.

Beaucoup DE nations.	<i>Many nations.</i>
Plus D'effets et moins DE paroles.	<i>More deeds and fewer words.</i>
Trop DE peine.	<i>Too much trouble.</i>

*Bien*, in the sense of *beaucoup*, is the only adverb of quantity which, besides the preposition *de*, requires the article; as,

Elle a bien DE l'esprit.	<i>She has a great deal of wit.</i>
Il a bien DES amis.	<i>He has many friends.</i>

But, should the substantive that comes after the adverb be particularized by what follows, it requires the article; as,

J'ai encore beaucoup DE l'argent que j'ai apporté de France.	<i>I have still a good deal of the money which I brought from France.</i>
---	---

## EXERCISE CL.

I have *enough* money.—The elephant has *much* intelligence.—  
*éléphant — f.*

For one Plato in opulence, *how many* Homers and Æsops  
*dans — f. Homères h mu. Esopes*  
 in indigence! — The honest man is esteemed, even by those  
*dans — f. honnête estimé de*

who have *no* probity. — There is *no* church (that can be)  
*pas* *Il n'y a point église qu'on puisse*  
 compared to Saint Peter's of Rome. — He has *few* friends. —  
*inf-1* \*

Mothers have often *too much* indulgence for their children. —  
*371* — f.

Study presents *so many* advantages that one cannot  
*371 étude f. offrir* *avantage m.* *on ne saurait*  
 (give himself up to it) with *too much* ardour.  
*s'y livrer*

403. RULE VIII. No article is used before nouns joined to verbs with which they express but one idea, and form idiomatical expressions; as,

Ajouter foi, *to give credit.*  
 Avoir besoin, *to want, to be in*  
*need of.*  
 — carte blanche, *to have full*  
*power.*  
 — chaud, *to be warm.*  
 — froid, *to be cold.*  
 — compassion, *to commiserate.*  
 — dessein, *to intend.*  
 — envie, *to wish.*  
 — faim, *to be hungry.*  
 — soif, *to be thirsty.*  
 — honte, *to be ashamed.*  
 — patience, *to have patience.*  
 — peur, *to be afraid.*  
 — pitié, *to pity.*  
 — raison, *to be in the right.*  
 — tort, *to be in the wrong.*  
 — soin, *to take care.*  
 Donner carte blanche, *to give*  
*full power.*  
 Faire attention, *to attend, to*  
*mind.*  
 — peur, *to frighten.*

Faire plaisir, *to do a favour.*  
 — semblant, *to pretend, to*  
 — tort, *to wrong.* [feign.  
 — voile, *to set sail.*  
 Mettre fin, *to put an end.*  
 Parler allemand, *to speak Ger-*  
*man.*  
 — anglais, *to speak English.*  
 — français, *to speak French.*  
 Porter bonheur, *to bring good*  
*luck.*  
 — malheur, *to bring bad luck.*  
 — envie, *to bear envy.*  
 Prendre courage, *to take cou-*  
*rage, to cheer up.*  
 — garde, *to take care.*  
 — jour, *to appoint a day.*  
 — patience, *to take patience,*  
*to bear or wait patiently.*  
 — plaisir, *to delight.*  
 — racine, *to take root.*  
 Rendre visite, *to pay a visit.*  
 Tenir tête, *to cope with one, to*  
*oppose.*

404. REMARK.—The article is sometimes omitted before substantives, in order to render the language more striking and expressive. When we say, *Pauvreté n'est pas vice* ; *Contentement passe richesse*, we express ourselves with more life than if we were to say, *La pauvreté n'est*



*pas un vice ; Le contentement passe la richesse.* See also this phrase of FLÉCHIER: *Citoyens, étrangers, ennemis, peuples, rois, empereurs, le plaignent et le révèrent.* It has much more liveliness, energy, and grace, than it would have by re-establishing the articles: *Les citoyens, les étrangers, etc., le plaignent et le révèrent.*

## EXERCISE CLI.

I *want* a hat. — We *intend* to travel. — We must always  
*d'* *de* *Il faut*  
*pity* the unfortunate. — I (do not know) who *is in the wrong.*  
*de malheureux pl. ne sais qui*  
 — The king has *given full power* to that general. — That man  
*général.*  
*pretends* to sleep. — The night *put an end* to the battle. —  
*de ind-3 combat m.*  
*Take care* of yourself. — He will come in a moment, *have*  
*Prendre à vous. ind-7 dans prendre*  
*patience.* — *Towers, spires, trees, flocks, huts, houses,*  
*Tour f. clocher m. troupeau m. cabane f.*  
*palaces,* everything was swallowed up by the waves of the sea.  
*tout ind-3 englouti flot m. mer f.*

## EXERCISE CLII.

You *are wrong*, it is he who *is right.* — The fox sometimes  
*c' lui*  
*feigns* to be dead. — *Speak French* to us. — She *speaks Italian,*  
*d'*  
*Spanish, German, and English.* — Let us say no ill of Boileau,  
*espagnol, de mal*  
 said Voltaire, that *brings bad luck.* — My vine *wants* cutting. —  
*cela d' être taillée.*  
*Are you cold?* I am neither cold nor warm. — *Are you hungry,*  
*ni*  
*my boy?* No, but I am very *thirsty.* — *Mind* what he says to  
*mais à*  
 you. — We must not *wrong* our neighbour. — The service that  
*Il à son prochain. m.*  
 I have rendered him *seems* to have brought me good luck.  
*sembler \**  
 — Vice cannot *take root* in a heart like his.  
 art. — m. *ne saurait comme* 94

## CHAPTER II.

## OF THE SUBSTANTIVE OR NOUN.

## § I. FUNCTIONS OF THE SUBSTANTIVE.

405. The Substantive is either the subject of the verb, or is governed by the verb, in which case it is called the regimen.

In this phrase: *la mère aime ses enfants*, the mother loves her children; *la mère* is the subject, or nominative case; and *enfants* is the regimen, object, or accusative case. *Ses enfants* is also called the *regimen direct*, because there is no preposition intervening between it and the verb *aime*.

In *les enfants obéissent à la mère*, the children obey the mother; *les enfants* is the subject, and *à la mère* is the regimen; and this regimen is called *indirect* because it has a preposition (*à*) before it.

## § II. OF THE GENDER OF SUBSTANTIVES.

406. We have already said (p. 11) that there are in French only two genders, the *masculine* and the *feminine*.

The masculine gender expresses the male kind, and the feminine gender denotes the female kind.

The French language has no neuter; consequently, inanimate objects are either masculine or feminine.

407. Generally speaking, French substantives have but one gender; a few of them, however, are masculine in one signification, and feminine in another. The following are those most in use:—

AIGLE (eagle) is feminine in the sense of a standard, an ensign in war: *l'aigle ROMAINE*, *l'aigle IMPÉRIALE*. In every other sense it is masculine: *Aigle NOIR*; *aigle ROYAL*; *l'aire d'un aigle*. *C'est un aigle*, in speaking of a man of genius, of superior talent.

COUPLE is feminine when it means a brace, two of a sort; as, *UNE couple de perdrix*; *UNE couple d'œufs*. It is masculine when speaking of a man and wife; as, *Ce fut UN HEUREUX couple*.

CRÊPE, *masc.* crape; *fem.* pancake.

ENFANT is masculine, when speaking of a boy: *c'est UN bon enfant*; and feminine, when it is said of a girl: *voilà UNE belle enfant*.

GENS (people) requires all words preceding it and relating to it to be in the feminine, and all words following it to be in the masculine: *les VIEILLES gens sont SOUPÇONNEUX*; *TOUTES les MÉCHANTES gens*. However, instead of *toutes*, *tous* is employed, 1st, When that adjective is the only one that precedes the substantive *gens*: *Tous les gens qui raisonnent*; *Tous les gens pieux*. 2dly, When *gens* is preceded by an adjective which has only one and the same termination for both genders, such as *aimable*, *brave*, *honnête*, etc. *Tous les honnêtes gens*; *Tous les habiles gens*.—(*Acad.*)

LIVRE, *masc.* a book; *fem.* a pound.

MANCHE, *masc.* the handle of a tool; *fem.* a sleeve, the English Channel.

MÉMOIRE, *masc.* a memoir, a bill; *fem.* the memory.

MOUSSE, *masc.* a young apprentice sailor; *fem.* moss, froth.

PAGE, *masc.* a page, an attendant; *fem.* the page of a book.

PERSONNE (nobody, a person), see No. 116, p. 52.

PIQUE, *masc.* spade at cards; *fem.* a pike, or long lance.

QUELQUE CHOSE is masculine, when it signifies something: *Quelque chose m'a été DIT*; *quelque chose de MERVEILLEUX*. It is feminine, when it means whatever thing: *Quelque chose qu'il ait DITE*, etc.—(*Acad.*)

~~Observe~~ Observe that when *Quelque chose* (something) is immediately followed by an adjective, it takes the preposition *de* before that adjective; as, *Quelque chose de curieux*, something curious.—(*Acad.*)

SOURIS, *masc.* a smile; *fem.* a mouse.

TOUR, *masc.* a tour, turn, trick; *fem.* a tower.

TROMPETTE, *masc.* a trumpeter; *fem.* a trumpet.

VOILE, *masc.* a veil; *fem.* a sail.

(For the gender of some particular words, see pp. 22, 23, and 24.)

## EXERCISE CLIII.

Several Roman *eagles* were taken by the Germans, after the  
ind-3 *Germaines*

defeat of Varus, under the reign of Augustus.—A couple  
*défaite f.* — *règne m.* *Auguste.*

of sheep which they roasted themselves, composed the  
*mouton m.* *qu'* *faisaient rôtir* ind-2

feasts of the heroes of Homer. — We have shot a brace of  
*festin m.* *héros d'* *tué*

pheasants.—Dear *child*, said a mother to her daughter, without  
ind-2

thee there is no happiness for me.—What wicked *people*!—  
*toi il n' point* *Quel méchant*

They are the best *people* in the world. — Young *people* are  
*Ce* *de* *art.*

often lazy.— Military men wear the *crape* (round their) arm.  
*art.* *\* porter* *au*

## EXERCISE CLIV.

We have eaten excellent *pancakes*.—This *book* is stereotyped.  
*stéréotypé.*

—At Paris and in the greatest part of France, the *pound*  
*partie f.* *art.*

was sixteen ounces.—The *Memoirs* of Sully are (very much)  
ind-2 *de* *fort*

esteemed. — That passage is at the bottom of *page* 164.—  
*bas m.* *art.*

*Nobody* is more unhappy than a miser. — Have you seen the  
*qu'* *avare m.*

*person* that I sent to you? — I will give you *something*  
*que* *'ai* *'envoyée* *\** *1*

good. — The *tower* of Cordouan serves as a lighthouse at  
*de* *\** *phare*

the mouth of the Gironde.  
*embouchure f.* *f.*

## § III. OF NUMBER IN SUBSTANTIVES.

408. Although there be plurality in the idea, certain French substantives do not take the mark of the plural; these are:—

409. (1.) Proper names; as, *l'Espagne s'honore d'avoir vu naître les deux SÉNÈQUE. Les deux CORNEILLE sont nés à Rouen.* Except when they are used as common nouns, that is to say, to designate individuals similar to those whose name is employed; as, *la France a eu ses CÉSARS et ses POMPÉES*; that is, generals such as Cæsar and Pompey. *Les Corneilles et les Miltons sont rares*; that is, poets such as CORNEILLE and MILTON.

REMARK. — It sometimes happens that poets and orators place the article *les* before proper names which designate but one individual. This is an irregularity, or at least a license, which can only be tolerated when productive of a fine effect, as in the following phrase of *Voltaire*:

*Il manque à CAMPISTRON ces expressions heureuses qui font l'âme de la poésie et le mérite des HOMÈRE, des VIRGILE, des TASSE, des MILTON, des POPE, des CORNEILLE, des RACINE, des BOILEAU.*

You discover that there is unity in the idea when the sense permits to suppress the article *les*; here we might say: *le mérite d'Homère, de Virgile, etc.*

✎ Although a proper name cannot, in French, take the mark of the plural, with the exception of the case in which it is used as a common noun, yet we write with the sign of the plural *les Stuarts, les Bourbons*, and some others, for the same reason that we say *les Allemands, les Italiens*, because these words are no longer the proper name of an individual, but the proper name of a class of individuals.

410. (2.) Words taken from the Latin, or from any foreign language, and which have not yet been naturalized by frequent use; as,

des *adagio*.  
des *alibi*.  
des *auto-da-fé*.†  
des *post-scriptum*.

des *quiproquo*.  
des *solo*.  
des *Te Deum*.  
des *vade-mecum*.

Æ The French Academy write des *bravos*, des *duos*, des *opéras*, des *pensums*, because these words are frequently used.

411. (3.) Words naturally invariable, and which are only accidentally employed as substantives; such as, les *pourquoi*, les *car*, les *oui*, les *non*, les *on dit*, etc.

Les *si*, les *car*, les *pourquoi*, sont la porte  
Par où la noise entra dans l'univers.—(*La Fontaine*.)

### EXERCISE CLV.

Spain is proud of having produced *Lucan*, *Martial*, the  
s'honore inf-1 *Lucain*, —  
two *Senecas*, etc. — The first of the four *Williams* came  
*Sénèque* *Guillaume est venu*  
from Normandy. — *Ciceros* and *Virgils* will always be  
art. art.  
scarce. — The *mistakes* of apothecaries are very  
rare *quiproquo* m. *apothicaire* sing. très  
dangerous. — After the victory, they sung *Te Deums* in all the  
on ind-3  
churches. — It was *Cardinal Mazarin* who introduced in  
*église* f. C'est art. ind-3  
France the taste for *operas*. — That violinist performed  
*goût* m. de art. *violiniste* m. a *exécuté*  
several *solos* at the last concert. — He puts *postscripts* to all  
— m. 32  
his letters. — Where shall we now find *Bonapartes* and  
*trouver*  
*Wellingtons*? — He was the friend of the *Bourbons*.

† *Auto-da-fé*; three Spanish words which signify Act of Faith.

# § IV. OF THE FORMATION OF THE PLURAL OF COMPOUND SUBSTANTIVES.

412. Compound substantives which have not yet passed to the state of words, that is to say, whose distinct parts are connected by a hyphen, are written in the singular or in the plural, according as the nature and particular sense of the words of which they are composed require the one or the other number.† Such is the general principle, whose application will be facilitated by the following rules.

413. RULE I. When a word is composed of a substantive and an adjective, both take the mark of the plural; as,

<i>un petit-maitre,</i>	<i>a dandy,</i>	pl. <i>des petits-maitres.</i>
<i>une chauve-souris,</i>	<i>a bat,</i>	— <i>des chauves-souris.</i>
<i>une basse-cour,</i>	<i>a poultry-yard,</i>	— <i>des basses-cours.</i>

To this rule there are a few exceptions; as, *UNE grand'mère*, plural *DES grand'mères*.

GRAND, without apostrophe, always agrees in gender and number with its substantive, but GRAND' is always invariable.

414. RULE II. When a compound word is formed of two substantives placed immediately one after the other, both take the mark of the plural; as,

<i>un chef-lieu,</i>	<i>a county town,</i>	pl. <i>des chefs-lieux.</i>
<i>un chou-fleur,</i>	<i>a cauliflower,</i>	— <i>des choux-fleurs.</i>
<i>une dame-jeanne,</i>	<i>a large bottle,</i>	— <i>des dames-jeannes.</i>

The exceptions to this rule are but few, among which is *UN Hôtel-Dieu* (*un hôtel de Dieu*), a name given to the principal hospital, or infirmary, of several towns in France; plural *DES Hôtels-Dieu*.

415. RULE III. When a compound word is formed of two substantives joined by a preposition, the first only takes the mark of the plural; as,

<i>un arc-en-ciel,</i>	<i>a rainbow,</i>	pl. <i>des arcs-en-ciel.</i>
<i>un chef-d'œuvre,</i>	<i>a master-piece,</i>	— <i>des chefs-d'œuvre.</i>

† In compound nouns, the only words susceptible, by their nature, of taking the mark of the plural, are the *substantive* and the *adjective*.

*Exceptions.*—UN tête-à-tête, a conversation or interview between two persons; plural DES tête-à-tête. UN coq-à-l'âne, an unconnected, nonsensical speech, passing from one thing to another quite opposite, as from a cock to an ass; plural DES coq-à-l'âne.

## EXERCISE CLVI.

Those two men are *brothers-in-law*. — I know his two  
beau-frère  
*grand-fathers*. — There are in France eighty-six *capitals* of  
grand-père Y avoir chef-lieu m.  
departments. — Rainbows are formed by the reflection of the  
sing. art. réflexion f.  
(rays of the sun) in the clouds. — In warm countries  
rayons solaires dans nuage m. Dans art. <sup>2</sup> <sup>1</sup>pays m.  
<sup>2</sup>*silk-worms* <sup>1</sup>(are reared) upon (mulberry trees). —  
art. ver-à-soie m. on élève sur des mûrier m.  
The *great nightshade* (originally came) from Mexico. —  
belle de nuit pl. sont originaires art. Mexique m.  
He is always making *cock and bull stories*.  
\* fait 32 coq-à-l'âne

416. RULE IV. When a compound word is formed of a substantive joined either to a verb, a preposition, or an adverb, the substantive only takes the sign of the plural, if there be plurality in the idea. So we write with an *s* in the plural:

un avant-coureur,	a forerunner,	pl. des avant-coueurs.
un contre-coup,	a counter-blow,	— des contre-coups.
une contre-danse,†	a country-dance,	— des contre-danses.

But we write without an *s* in the plural, because the expressions are elliptical, and there is unity in the idea:

Des réveille-matin (clocks which awake in the morning),	} alarm-clocks.
Des contre-poison (remedies against poison),	
	} counter-poisons.

---

† On croit que ce mot est une altération de l'anglais, *country-dance* (danse de la contrée, de la campagne).



Finally, we write with an *s*, in the singular as well as in the plural, because there is always plurality in the idea :

*un essuie-mains* (that which } *a towel*,      pl. *des essuie-mains*.  
wipes the hands) }  
*un porte-mouchettes* (that } *A snuffers* } — *des porte-mou-*  
which carries the snuffers) } *stand*, } *chettes*.

417. RULE V. When a compound substantive contains only such parts of speech as the *verb*, *preposition*, or *adverb*, none of its components takes the mark of the plural ; as,

*un passe-passe*, a sleight of hand,      pl. *des passe-passe*.  
*un passe-partout*, a master-key, a pass-key, — *des passe-partout*.

### EXERCISE CLVII.

The Cossacks are generally the scouts of the Russian  
*Cosaque ordinairement avant-coureur* <sup>2</sup>*russe*  
armies.—Rear-admirals are below vice-admirals.  
<sup>1</sup> *contre-amiral au-dessous de art. vice-amiral*  
—Snow-drops bear flowers in the midst of the  
*perce-neige f. porter de art. à milieu m.*  
rigours of winter. — In time of war, the savages of  
*rigueur f. art. En sauvage m. art.*  
America are armed with tomahawks.—Gold is the surest of all  
*de casse-tête* \*  
*pass-keys*. — These (are mere) *hearsays*.  
art. *Ce ne sont que de art. ouï-dire*

### § V. THE KING'S PALACE; THE QUEEN'S CROWN, ETC.

418. This form of the possessive or genitive case, is rendered in French in an inverted manner, the last word coming first, as if it were the palace OF THE king, *le palais DU roi* ; the crown OF THE queen, *la couronne DE LA reine*.

### EXERCISE CLVIII.

(Here are) Joséphine's gloves and Alfred's hat. — Where is  
*Voici*

John's book?—My uncle's house. — The mayor's authority. —  
*maison f. maire autorité f.*

The king of England's palaces. — The queen's presence of  
*palais m.*

mind. — Helen's beauty (was the cause of) Troy's  
*esprit Hélène h mu. causa Troie*

destruction. — Have you read Milton's Paradise Lost? — Will  
*Paradis m. Vouloir*

you lend me La Fontaine's Fables? — Are you going to Mrs  
*prêter — f.*

Bell's party? — Paul's sister's son entered into the castle.  
*soirée f. dans forteresse f.*

## § VI. EAR-RINGS; DINING-ROOM, ETC.

419. These are a kind of compound words, the order of which is likewise inverted in French. *Boucles d'oreilles. Salle à manger.*

Here also, two different prepositions are used, *à* and *de*, the choice of which depends upon the nature of the expression.

420. *De* is used when *of, of the, made of, composed of, coming from*, can be understood.

### EXAMPLES.

<i>Boat-builder, i. e. builder of</i>	}	<i>Constructeur de bateaux.</i>
<i>boats,</i>		
<i>The house-door, i. e. the door</i>	}	<i>La porte de la maison.</i>
<i>of the house.</i>		
<i>Silk-stockings, i. e. stockings</i>	}	<i>Bas de soie.</i>
<i>made of silk.</i>		
<i>Madeira wine, i. e. wine com-</i>	}	<i>Vin de Madère.</i>
<i>ing from Madeira.</i>		

### EXERCISE CLIX.

The *golden age* is one of the (most agreeable) fictions  
*âge m. <sup>2</sup>les plus agréables <sup>1</sup>— f.*  
of mythology. — He has bought a *country-house*. — He is a  
*art. campagne*  
*wine-merchant*. — The *garden-seat* is broken. — My uncle has  
*marchand banc m.*  
given me a *gold watch*, and a *silver chain*. — Do you like  
*chaîne f.*

*Newfoundland cod?* — I like *Burgundy wine*. — The English  
*Terre-Neuve morue f.* *Bourgogne*

import a great quantity of *Malta oranges* and *Turkey figs*.  
*importer* *Malte* *figue f.*

421. *A* is used in compound words, when *for*, *for the purpose of*, *by means of*, *with*, may be understood.

## EXAMPLES.

*Paper-mill*, i. e. mill *for the purpose of making paper*. } *Moulin à papier.*

*Steam-boat*, i. e. boat *moved by means of steam*. } *Bateau à vapeur.*

*Three thread-stockings*, i. e. } *Bas à trois fils.*  
*stockings with three threads.* }

*Note.* — Some compound words take the article besides the preposition *à*; as, *un pot au lait*, a milk-jug. In the following Exercise, when the article is required it has been pointed out.

## EXERCISE CLX.

The inventor of *gunpowder* was a German monk, named  
*canon poudref. ind-2* <sup>2</sup> *moine*

Schwartz. — I have always *fire-arms* in my *bed-room*. — Give  
*coucher chambre f.*

me a *wine glass*, and a *soup spoon*. — The *hay-market*  
*verre m.* *cuiller f.* *au foin marché m.*

is on your left, and the *horse-fair* is before you. — There  
*à gauche* *aux pl. foire f.* *devant*

are (a great many) *windmills* in France. — Have you ever  
*beaucoup de* *jamais*

seen a *steam-mill*? No; but I have seen several *water-mills*. —  
*mais* *plusieurs eau*

Honour to the inventor of the *steam-engine*! — I like *rice-soup*.  
*Honneur* *machine f.* *au riz*

— Take the *coffee cups* into the *dining-room*. — Where is  
*Porter* *café tasse* *manger salle f.* *Où*

my sister's *work-bag*? — My brother has given me a *penknife*  
*ouvrage sac m.* *canif m.*

with an *ivory handle*. — The waiter has broken the *milk-jug*.  
*\* ivoire manche m.*

## CHAPTER III.

## OF THE ADJECTIVE.

## § I. CONCORD OF THE ADJECTIVE WITH THE NOUN.

422. GENERAL RULE.—The Adjective, in French, must be of the same gender and number as the noun or pronoun to which it relates, for which purpose it often changes its termination. In English, on the contrary, the adjective is never varied on account of gender or number.

## EXAMPLES.

Le BON père.	The GOOD father.
La BONNE mère.	The GOOD mother.
De BEAUX jardins.	FINE gardens.
De BELLES fleurs.	FINE flowers.

*Bon* is masculine singular, because *père* is masculine, and in the singular; *bonne* is feminine singular, because *mère* is feminine, and in the singular.

*Beaux* is masculine plural, because *jardins* is masculine and plural; *belles* is feminine plural, because *fleurs* is feminine and plural.

(For the formation of the feminine, and plural of the adjectives, see p. 20—25.)

## EXERCISE CLXI.

The *formidable*<sub>2</sub> empire<sub>1</sub> which Alexander conquered,  
 (did not last) longer than his life, which was very short.  
*ne dura pas plus longtemps* f. ind-3 court  
 —The victory which Cæsar obtained on the plains  
 f. remporter ind-3 dans plaine f.  
 of Pharsalia was baneful to his country, pernicious to the  
*Pharsale* ind-3 *funeste* pays m. *pernicieux*

Romans, and *disastrous* to mankind.— (It is believed)  
*Romain désastreux pour art. genre humain m. On croit*  
 that the *first* bayonets were made at Bayonne. — That  
*baïonnette f. ind-3 fabriquer*  
 custom is very *ancient* among us.—It is a *mere* evasion, for  
*coutume f. parmi C' franc défaite f. car*  
 the thing is *public*. — Give these *fine* roses to those *good* girls.

423. 1st REMARK.—When the adjectives *demi*, half, *nu*, bare, are placed *before* a substantive, and when the adjective *feu*, late, comes *before* the article or a pronominal adjective, they always remain invariable; as, *une DEMI-livre*, half-a-pound; *il va NU-pieds*, he goes bare-foot; *FEU la reine*, the late queen. But the agreement takes place, if *demi* and *nu* be placed *after* the substantive, and *feu* after the article or pronominal adjective; as, *une livre et demie*, one pound and a half; *il a les pieds nus*, his feet are bare; *la feuë reine*, the late queen; *ma feuë nièce*, my late niece.

*Observation.*—The adjective *demi*, placed after the substantive, never takes the mark of the plural; because it does not agree with the substantive which precedes it, but with a substantive following, which is understood, and which is always of the singular number. This phrase: *Il a étudié quatre ans et demi*, he has studied four years and a half, is equivalent to this: *Il a étudié quatre ans et un demi an*, he has studied four years and one half year.

424. 2d REMARK.—Adjectives used adverbially are invariable, that is to say, remain always in the masculine singular; as, *Ces dames parlent BAS*, those ladies speak low; *ces fleurs sentent BON*, these flowers smell well.

## EXERCISE CLXII.

An Irishman said to a Scotchman: Lend me three guineas.—  
*Irlandais ind-2 Ecossais Prêter guinée f.*

That is impossible, for I (only possess) *half* a guinea.—Well,  
*Cela car ne possède qu' \**

lend it me, and you will owe me two guineas and a  
*toujours devoir*

*half*. — They go bare-foot and bare-headed. — I have heard  
*tête f. ouï dire*

your <sup>à</sup> <sup>2</sup> <sup>1</sup> <sup>\*</sup> late sister say that her daughter and I were born the <sup>moi naquitmes</sup>  
 same year. — The late princess was universally regretted. —  
*année f. ind-3*

She sings (*out of tune*). — They spoke *loud*. — Mary, speak *low*.  
*fauz fem. ind-3 haut*

425. Besides the general rule upon the agreement of the Adjective with the substantive which it qualifies, there are particular rules which it is indispensable to know, because they serve to explain the general rule.

426. (I.) An adjective referring to two or more substantives singular, of the same gender, must be put in the plural, and agree with them in gender; as,

Le riche et le pauvre sont <i>égaux</i> devant Dieu.		The rich and the poor are equal before God.
La rose et la tulipe sont <i>belles</i> .		The rose and the tulip are beautiful.

427. If the substantives are of *different* genders, the adjective is to be put in the masculine plural; as,

Ma sœur et mon frère sont <i>attentifs</i> .		My sister and brother are attentive.
Il a montré une prudence et un courage <i>étonnants</i> .		He has shown astonishing prudence and courage.

428. REMARK.—When the substantives are of *different* genders, and the adjective qualifying them has not the same termination for the masculine and feminine, the ear requires that the masculine substantive should be placed last in French, that is to say, immediately before the adjective; so it is better to say: *la bouche et les yeux OUVERTS*, than, *les yeux et la bouche OUVERTS*.

### EXERCISE CLXIII.

Pilpay and Confucius are very *celebrated* among the nations  
 of Asia.—Uprightness and piety are (very much) *esteemed*,  
 art. <sup>†</sup>*droiture* <sup>†</sup>*piété f.* <sup>très</sup>  
 even by the wicked. — Ignorance and self-love are  
*même de méchant pl. † — f. † amour-propre m.*

equally *presumptuous*.—The inhabitants of (Davis' Strait)  
*présomptueux* *habitant* art. *détroit de Davis* m.  
 eat their flesh and their fish *raw*.—The room and  
*viande* f. *poisson* m. *cru* *chambre* f.  
 the closet are *open*, but the window and the drawer are  
*cabinet* m. *ouvert* *fenêtre* f. *tiroir* m.  
*shut*. — His sister and brother are very *polite*.  
*fermé* *poli*

429. (II.) The Adjective placed after two or more substantives which are synonymous or nearly so, agrees with the last substantive only; as,

Toute sa vie n'a été qu'un travail, qu'une occupation CONTINUELLE. ( <i>Massillon</i> .)		<i>His whole life has been nothing but continual labour and occupation.</i>
--	--	---

In this case, there is really but one word to qualify, because there is only one and the same idea expressed, and it is with the last substantive that the agreement takes place, as striking the mind most.

430. (III.) When substantives are united by the conjunction *ou* (or), the adjective agrees with the last; as,

Un courage ou une prudence ÉTONNANTE.		<i>An astonishing courage or prudence.</i>
---------------------------------------	--	--

That conjunction *ou* gives the exclusion to one of the substantives, and it is upon the last, as fixing the attention most, that the qualification falls.

431. REMARK.—When an adjective relates to two or more substantives, and is one of those that must absolutely be placed before the substantive, it is repeated, in French, before each substantive, and agrees with it; as,

De GRANDS événements, et de GRANDES révolutions suivirent la mort de César.		<i>GREAT events and revolutions followed the death of Cæsar.</i>
---	--	--

#### EXERCISE CLXIV.

Our Queen honours literature with that attachment and  
*les lettres de* m. *attachement*, \* *de*

patronage capable of <sup>2</sup>making <sup>1</sup>it flourish. — Birds  
*cette protection* f. inf-1 †*les fleurir.* oiseau m.  
 build their nests with <sup>3</sup>admirable <sup>1</sup>art and <sup>2</sup>address.  
*construire* nid m. avec un art, \* *une adresse* f.  
 —The demi-gods of the ancients were only men who  
*ancien* m. ind-2 *ne que des*  
 (had distinguished themselves) by <sup>4</sup>extraordinary <sup>1</sup>valour <sup>2</sup>or  
*s'étaient distingués* une  
<sup>3</sup>virtue. — Louis XIV. had in France an <sup>3</sup>absolute  
*une* ind-2 *un absolu*  
<sup>1</sup>power and <sup>2</sup>authority.  
*pouvoir,* \* *une*

## § II. PLACE OF ADJECTIVES.

432. Some Adjectives are placed before the noun, and some after it; others are either put before or after, according as taste or ear may require. However, it may be laid down as a rule that the French more generally place the Adjective after the noun.

### ADJECTIVES WHICH ARE PLACED BEFORE THE NOUN.

433. (1.) *Adjectives* of one syllable, as *beau, bon, grand, gros*, etc., generally precede their substantive. We say, *un BEAU jardin, un BON ouvrage, un GRAND chapeau, un SAINT personnage*, etc.

434. (2.) Plural *Adjectives* generally unite harmoniously with substantives beginning with a vowel; as, *BRILLANTS atours*. It is the same with the *Adjectives* which, although singular, terminate with an *x* which is pronounced like a *z*; as, *HEUREUX artifice*, etc.

(See Remark 5th, p. 227.)

## EXERCISE CLXV.

Have you seen the *beautiful* lake of Geneva? — The Loire  
*lac* m. *Genève*  
 is a *fine* river. — You arrive at a *good* moment. — The Turks  
*rivière* f. *le* — m. *Turc*  
 make a *great* use of opium. — The *big* fishes eat the  
*usage* m. — *gros poisson* m.

† It is only when *les* is an *article*, that the contraction of *de les* into *des* takes place. The same rule applies to *de le*, and to *à le, à les*.



little ones. — What a *holy* man father Bernard is! —  
 \* *saint* *que* art. \*

He is an *old* soldier. — My *dear* friend, you are mistaken. —  
*C'* *vicux* *cher* *se méprendre*

He is in *continual* alarms. — That child has *fine* eyes.  
*Il* *dans de* *alarmef.* 132

## ADJECTIVES WHICH ARE PLACED AFTER THE NOUN.

435. The *Adjectives* which are placed after the substantive are :—

1st, *Adjectives* which express names of nations ; as, *Le gouvernement ANGLAIS*, the English government ; *La révolution FRANÇAISE*, the French revolution.

REMARK.—When the name of a nation is an *adjective*, it does not require a capital letter in French, but it takes one if it be a *substantive*. So we write : *La nation française, anglaise, espagnole, italienne, allemande*. And, with a capital, *un Anglais* (an Englishman), *un Espagnol* (a Spaniard), etc.—(ACAD.)

## EXERCISE CLXVI.

*English* bravery ; *Spanish* gravity ; *Italian* policy ; *Roman*  
*bravouref.* *f.* *politiquef.*  
*beauty* ; *German* music ; *Dutch* manners ; *Prussian*  
*f.* *hollandais* *mœurs f. pl.* *prussien*  
*troops* ; *Swedish* soldiers ; *Chinese* ceremonies.—The *French*  
*troupef.* *suédois* *soldat* *chinois* *f.*  
*monarchy* began under Pharamond, in the year 420. — That  
*monarchie f. ind-3* *en l' an*  
*young German* requests you to inscribe your name in his  
*prier* *d' inscrire* *sur*  
*album.* — Paul spoke to them in the *Hebrew* tongue.—I have  
 — *m.* 86 *en \* hébraïque*  
*seen Moscow* with its *Chinese* pagodas, its *Italian* terraces, and  
*Moscou* *pagodef.* *terrasse f.*  
*its Dutch* farms. — Nothing stops the *Russian* coachman, his  
*fermef.* *n'* *russe* *cocher*  
*driving* is a steeple chase ; ditch, hillock, overturned tree,  
*course f.* *course au clocher fossé terre* *renversé* <sup>1</sup>  
 he leaps over everything. — Long live the *Irish* nation!  
*franchir* *tout.* 335 *irlandais* — *f.*

436. 2dly, *Adjectives* denoting colour are placed after the noun; as, *un habit NOIR*, a black coat; *une robe BLANCHE*, a white dress; *un ruban BLEU*, a blue ribbon.

In poetry, and in a figurative sense, *Noir* may be placed before the substantive; as, *un NOIR attentat*, a black crime.

Some compound words, as, *rouge-gorge*, a Robin-redbreast; *du blanc-manger*, blanchmange, can scarcely be considered as exceptions to this rule.

## EXERCISE CLXVII

She has *blue* eyes. — The Spanish soldiers wear a *red*  
 art. *porter*  
 cockade. — (Here is) a beautiful statue of *white* marble. —  
 cocarde f. *Voici* — f. *blanc marbre* m.  
 The marigold is a *yellow* flower. — Saddle my *black* horse. — I  
*souci* m. *jaune* *Seller*  
 shall put on my *brown* coat, and my *American* boots. —  
*mettre* \* *brun* *américain* botte f.  
 Almost all the trees of *Florida*, particularly the  
*arbre* m. art. *Floride* f. *en particulier*  
 cedar and the *green* oak, are covered with a *white* moss.  
*cèdre* m. *vert chêne* m. *d'* *mousse* f.

437. 3dly, *Adjectives* formed from the present participle of verbs, are *generally* placed after the substantive; as,

Un ouvrage <i>divertissant</i> .		<i>An entertaining work.</i>
La mode <i>régnante</i> .		<i>The reigning fashion.</i>

438. But, *Adjectives* formed from the past participle are *always* placed after the substantive; as,

Un homme <i>instruit</i> .		<i>A well-informed man.</i>
Une figure <i>arrondie</i> .		<i>A round figure.</i>

## EXERCISE CLXVIII.

(That is) an *amusing* book. — The *smiling* images of  
*Voilà* *riant* — f.  
 Theocritus, Virgil, and Gessner, excite in the soul a gentle  
*Théocrite* † — *porter* *doux*  
 feeling. — There are *striking* examples of English  
*sensibilité* f. *des frappant*

generosity. — Grateful people are like those  
78 f. art. reconnaissant personne f. ressemblent à

fruitful lands which give more than they receive. — He has  
<sup>2</sup>fertile <sup>1</sup>f. rendre ne

made astonishing progress. — An affected simplicity is a  
des étonnant progrès m. pl. affecté f. 78

refined imposture. — She is a well-informed woman.  
<sup>2</sup>délicat <sup>1</sup>— f. C'

439. 4thly, Adjectives are placed after the substantive, when expressing some physical or natural quality, such as *chaud*, hot; *froid*, cold; *humide*, damp; and when expressing form, as *une table carrée*, a square table.

440. 5thly, Adjectives of several syllables seldom go well before substantives of one syllable; so, instead of saying *les champêtres airs*, rural airs; *les imaginaires lois*, imaginary laws, say *les airs champêtres*, *les lois imaginaires*.

441. 6thly, When two or more adjectives qualify the same noun, they are almost always placed after that noun. So, instead of adopting the English construction, *ces deux rivaux et guerrières nations*, those two rival and warlike nations, say: *ces deux nations guerrières et rivaux*.

## EXERCISE CLXIX.

Will you give me some warm water? — Bring me some cold  
*chaud*

milk. — Put it on the round table. — Never sleep in a damp  
*lait m. rond coucher*

room. — <sup>2</sup>Arts <sup>1</sup>(are divided) into liberal Arts and mechanical  
art. on divise en m. mécanique

Arts. — The king of Spain is styled the Catholic king. — She  
*appeler catholique Elle*

has an harmonious voice. — She is a good and charitable woman.  
*voix f. C'*

— He is an amiable and virtuous man. Do you not know him? —  
*C' vertueux* 289

Denmark is, in general, an agreeable and fertile country.  
375 *pays m.*

442. FINALLY, the placing of a great many Adjectives, before or after the substantive, holds so much to the genius of the French language, that from their being placed before or after, often depends the meaning of the substantive; and usage dictates so imperiously the law, that by infringing it we would not be understood.

## LIST OF ADJECTIVES

which impart a different meaning to the noun, according as they are placed before, or after it.

Un bon homme, most frequently means <i>a simple man</i> .	} Un homme bon, <i>a good man</i> .
Un brave homme, <i>an honest man</i> .	} Un homme brave, <i>a brave man</i> .
Une commune voix, <i>a unanimous voice</i> .	Une voix commune, <i>a common voice</i> .
Une fausse clef, <i>a false key</i> .	Une clef fausse, <i>a wrong key</i> .
Une fausse porte, <i>a private door</i> .	} Une porte fausse, <i>a false door</i> .
Un furieux menteur, <i>a terrible liar</i> .	Un fou furieux, <i>a furious madman</i> .
Un grand homme, <i>a great man</i> .	} Un homme grand, <i>a tall man</i> .
Le grand air, <i>noble manners</i> .	L'air grand, <i>a noble look</i> .
Une grosse femme, <i>a big stout woman</i> .	Une femme grosse, <i>same as une femme enceinte</i> .
Le haut ton, <i>an arrogant manner</i> .	Le ton haut, <i>a loud tone of voice</i> .
Un honnête homme, <i>an honest man</i> .	Un homme honnête, <i>a polite man</i> .
Des honnêtes gens, <i>respectable people</i> .	Des gens honnêtes, <i>polite people</i> .
Mauvais air, <i>a vulgar appearance</i> .	L'air mauvais, <i>an ill-natured look</i> .
Une méchante épigramme, <i>a bad epigram</i> .	Une épigramme méchante, <i>a wicked epigram</i> .
Du mort bois, <i>wood of little value</i> .	} Du bois mort, <i>dead trees</i> .
Morte eau, <i>ebb tides</i> .	Eau morte, <i>still water</i> .
Le nouveau vin, <i>the wine newly come</i> .	Le vin nouveau, <i>the wine newly made</i> .

De nouveaux livres, <i>other books.</i>	} Des livres nouveaux, <i>new books.</i>
Un nouvel habit, <i>another coat.</i>	{ Un habit nouveau, <i>a new-fashioned coat.</i> Un habit neuf, <i>a new coat.</i>
Un pauvre homme, <i>a man without genius.</i>	} Un homme pauvre, <i>a poor man.</i>
Un plaisant homme, <i>a whimsical ridiculous man.</i>	Un homme plaisant, <i>a pleasant facetious man.</i>
Un plaisant personnage, <i>a contemptible person.</i>	Un personnage plaisant, <i>an amusing person.</i>
Un plaisant conte, <i>an unlikely story.</i>	Un conte plaisant, <i>an amusing story.</i>
Un petit homme, <i>a little man.</i>	Un homme petit, <i>a mean man.</i>
Les propres termes, <i>the exact words.</i>	Les termes propres, <i>correct expressions.</i>
Une sage-femme, <i>a midwife.</i>	{ Une femme sage, <i>a prudent woman.</i>
Un seul homme, <i>a single man.</i>	Un homme seul, <i>a man alone.</i>
Unique tableau, <i>a single picture.</i>	{ Tableau unique, <i>a picture, the only one of its kind, incomparable.</i>
Un vilain homme, <i>a disagreeable man.</i>	} Un homme vilain, <i>a mean man.</i>

## EXERCISE CLXX.

He opened the presses with *false* keys. — As an actor  
ind-3 *armoire f.* *de*  
was walking on tiptoe to represent the great  
*marcher* ind-2 *le bout des pieds pour*  
Agamemnon, they cried out to him that he was making him a  
on ind-3 \* 86  
tall man, and not a great man. — Bonaparte had a loud  
*non pas* ind-2  
tone of voice. — He has (got on) a *new-fashioned* coat. — A lady,  
*mis*  
seeing Chapelain and Patru, said that the first was an author  
ind-3 ind-2 *auteur*  
*without genius*, and the second a *poor* author.  
*pauvre*

## § III. GOVERNMENT OF ADJECTIVES.

One of the difficulties of the French language is to know what preposition must be used after an adjective, as the French prepositions are not always in this instance correlative to the English prepositions.

443. *Adjectives which govern the preposition À.*

Adonné à,	addicted to.	pareil à,	like.
ardent à,	ardent in.	prêt à,	ready to.
bon à,	good for.	prompt à,	prompt in, quick at.
cher à,	dear to.	propre à,	fit for.
conforme à,	conformable to.	semblable à,	similar to.
égal à,	equal to.	sensible à,	sensible of.
enclin à,	inclined to.	sourd à,	deaf to.
lent à,	slow to, and in.	sujet à,	subject to.
nuisible à,	hurtful to.	utile à,	useful to.

And in general all adjectives denoting *inclination, habit, aptness, fitness*. And, when followed by a verb, it is most commonly put in the present of the infinitive.

## EXERCISE CLXXI.

Your intentions are *conformable* to my wishes. — He is *slow* *désir* m.  
to punish, and *prompt* in rewarding. — Are you *ready* to go out?  
*récompenser.* *sortir*  
—He is *fit* for (anything).—He is *deaf* to remonstrances.—  
*tout.* *art. remontrance* f.  
Sicily is *subject* to great earthquakes. — That man is *useful*  
*Sicile* f. ‡ m. *tremblement de terre*.  
and *dear* to his family.— That is *easy* to say. — It is *ridiculous*  
*famille* f. *Cela facile* *Il ridicule*  
to put oneself in a passion against objects which are *insensible*  
*de* *se † en \* colère* § *objet* m.  
of our anger. — Your dress is *like* mine.  
*colère.* *robe* f.

† Place of *Se*, p. 88.

‡ Rule V. No. 331.

§ No. 330.

444. *Adjectives which govern the preposition DE.*

Agréable <i>de</i> ,	agreeable to.	exempt <i>de</i> ,	exempt from.
aïse <i>de</i> ,	glad to.	fatigué <i>de</i> ,	fatigued with.
avide <i>de</i> ,	greedy of.	heureux <i>de</i> ,	happy to.
capable <i>de</i> ,	able to.	inconsolable	} inconsolable at.
chargé <i>de</i> ,	loaded with.	<i>de</i> ,	
charmé <i>de</i> ,	charmed with.	inquiet <i>de</i> ,	uneasy about.
chéri <i>de</i> ,	beloved by.	libre <i>de</i> ,	free from.
content <i>de</i> ,	pleased with.	mécontent <i>de</i> ,	dissatisfied with.
coupable <i>de</i> ,	guilty of.	plein <i>de</i> ,	full of.
curieux <i>de</i> ,	curious to.	reconnaissant	} grateful for.
digne <i>de</i> ,	worthy of.	<i>de</i> ,	
enchanté <i>de</i> ,	delighted with.	satisfait <i>de</i> ,	satisfied with.
ennuyé <i>de</i> ,	weary of.	sûr <i>de</i> ,	sure of.

As likewise adjectives expressing *plenty* and *scarcity*, and in general all those which are followed in English by the prepositions *of*, *from*, *with*, or *by*.

## EXERCISE CLXXII.

- I am very *glad* to see you in good health. — Voltaire was  
*bien* *santé* f. ind-3
- always *greedy* of praise. — The vine is *loaded* with grapes. —  
*louange* pl. *vigne* f. *raisin*
- I am *pleased* with your answer. — Virtuous men are always  
*réponse* f. art. *vertueux* <sup>1</sup>
- worthy* of esteem. — I am *tired* with running after him. — A  
*estime.* *fatigué* inf-1
- heart *free* from cares enjoys the greatest felicity possible. —  
*soin* m. *jourir* *de* f.
- He is very *grateful* for the services you have rendered him.  
*fort* — *que* <sup>2</sup> *rendus* <sup>1</sup>
- Here is a purse *full* of louis† and napoleons.‡ — I am  
*bourse* f. — m. *napoléon* m.
- satisfied* with my lot. — Are you *pleased* with your horse?  
*sort* m.

445. SOME Adjectives are often followed in French by the preposition *envers*, and in English by the preposition

† A gold coin of France, worth about twenty shillings; so called, since Louis XIII., from the name of the kings who coined it.

‡ A gold piece of twenty or forty francs, with the effigy of Napoleon. It is more commonly said of pieces of twenty francs.

to ; such are, *affable, bon, complaisant, cruel, généreux, indulgent*, or any other expressing kindness or unkindness of feeling towards individuals ; as,

Il faut être <i>poli</i> ENVERS tout le monde.		We must be civil to everybody.
--	--	--------------------------------

446. Adjectives expressing gladness or regret at a thing, such as *aise, charmé, enchanté, fâché, contrarié*, etc., require the infinitive with *DE*, or the subjunctive mood ; as,

Je suis bien <i>aise</i> D'être de retour à temps.		I am very glad that I have returned in time.
Je suis bien <i>aise</i> que vous soyez de retour.		I am very glad that you have returned.

In the first example, there is only one subject, *Je*, and the second verb is in the infinitive.

In the second example, there are two subjects, *Je* and *vous* ; the verb, therefore, is put in the subjunctive mood.

447. *IL EST*, impersonal, joined to an adjective, requires *de* before an infinitive. *C'EST* requires *à* ; as,

Il est horrible DE penser, DE voir.		It is horrid to think, to see.
C'est horrible A penser, A voir.		It is horrid to think of, to be seen.

### EXERCISE CLXXIII.

We must be charitable to the poor. — I do not like people  
*Il faut pauvre pl. aimer ceux*  
 who are cruel to animals.—Scipio Africanus was respectful  
*Scipion l'Africain ind-2 respectueux*  
 to his mother, liberal to his sisters, good to his servants, just  
*domestique juste*  
 and affable to everybody. — He will be delighted to see you. —  
*enchanté*

I am very sorry you cannot come. — It is agreeable to  
*bien fâché pouvoir subj-1 Il*  
 live with one's friends.—It is noble to die for one's country.—  
*vivre ses Il beau sa patrie.*  
 This is painful to see and to hear. — Be kind to every-  
*C' pénible entendre. obligeant*  
 body.—It is easy to prove it to you.—That is easy to be proved.  
*C prouver*



## § IV. ADJECTIVES OF NUMBER.

(The numbers are given at full length, page 31.)

448. (1.) Of all the *cardinal* numbers, *un* is the only one that takes an *e* for the feminine: *UN homme, UNE femme.*

449. (2.) *Unième*, first, is never used but after *vingt, trente, quarante, cinquante, soixante, quatre-vingt, cent, and mille.* *C'est la vingt et UNIÈME fois*, it is the twenty-first time.

450. (3.) We say *second*, or *deuxième*, but we cannot say *vingt-second, trente-second*; we must say *vingt-deuxième, trente-deuxième, quarante-deuxième*, etc.

There is this difference between *le second*, and *le deuxième*, that this last makes you think on the *third*, it awakens the idea of a series, whereas *le second* awakens the idea of order without that of series. We say, therefore, of a work which has only two volumes: *Voici le SECOND tome*, and not *le deuxième*; and, of a work which has more than two volumes: *Voici le DEUXIÈME tome*, or also *voici le SECOND tome*.—(*Chapsal, Boniface*, etc.)

451. (4.) We say, *le onze, le onzième, du onze, du onzième, au onze, au onzième, vers les onze heures, vers les une heure*, or *sur les une heure*, pronouncing the words *onze, onzième, and une*, as if they were written with an *h* aspirate.

NOTE.—*Dumarsais* thinks, that if we write and pronounce *le onze*, it is in order not to confound *l'onze* with *l'once*.

*Vers les une heure* is an elliptical phrase, for, *vers les moments qui précèdent ou qui suivent une heure*. The article is allowed to remain in the plural, although the substantive is not expressed.

452. (5.) When a cardinal number is preceded by the pronoun *en*, the *adjective* or *participle* which follows that number must be preceded by the preposition *de*; as,

Sur mille habitants, il n'y <b>en</b> a		<i>Of one thousand inhabitants,</i>
pas un <b>DE</b> riche.		<i>there is not a rich one.</i>

453. (6.) *Cent* and *mille* are sometimes used for an indefinite, but very large number; as,

Il nous fit <b>cent</b> caresses.		<i>He showed us a hundred</i>
		<i>marks of kindness.</i>

Heureux, heureux **mille** fois,

L'enfant que le Seigneur rend docile à ses lois!—(*Racine.*)

For several important Remarks on Nouns and Adjectives of Number, see pp 33, 34, 35.

## EXERCISE CLXXIV.

One of the nine Muses is called Terpsichore. — It was in  
 — f. *s'appeler* — Ce ind-3  
 the *thirty-first* year after the peace, that war (broke out again).  
*année* f. *paix* f. *se rallumer* ind-3  
 — William, surnamed the Conqueror, king of England and  
*Guillaume, surnommé Conquérant,*  
 duke of Normandy, was one of the greatest generals of the  
 ind-3  
*eleventh* century. — Of ten thousand combatants, there were  
*siècle* m. *Sur* *combattant* il y EN eut  
 one thousand *killed*, and five hundred *wounded*. — The admiral  
 \* *blessé*  
 showed me a *thousand* civilities. — About *eleven* o'clock.  
*faire* \* *caresse*

## § V. ADJECTIVES OF DIMENSION.

454. Adjectives of dimension, such as *haut*, high; *long*, long; *large*, wide or broad; *épais*, thick; *profond*, deep; which come after the word of measure in English, come before it in French, and are followed by the preposition *de*; as,

Un mur *haut* DE sept pieds.

Une chambre *longue* DE vingt  
pieds.

A wall seven feet high.

A room twenty feet long.

Another construction, frequently used, is to let the words remain in French as in English, and to put *de* both before the number and before the word of measure or dimension. In this case, the substantive of dimension is often used instead of the adjective; as,

Un mur DE sept pieds DE haut,  
or DE hauteur.

Une chambre DE vingt pieds  
DE long, or DE longueur.

A wall seven feet high.

A room twenty feet long.

455. The English manner of expressing *dimension* is to use the verb *to be*; but the French, in general, make use of the verb *avoir*. In this case, *de* is left out before the number, and the phrase is rendered thus:—

Ce mur A sept pieds de haut,  
or de hauteur.

That wall is seven feet high.

## EXERCISE CLXXV.

The walls of Babylon *were* two hundred feet *high* and fifty  
*Babylone avaient* †  
*broad.*—The great wall, on the north of China, *is* about  
*largeur.* *muraille* f. à *Chine* f. *a environ*  
 twelve hundred miles *long.*—The highest of the pyramids of  
 † *pyramide* f.  
 Egypt *is*, at least, five hundred feet *high.*—The Monument of  
*a au moins* † — m.  
 London is a round pillar two hundred feet *high.*—The Tiber  
*trond pilier* m. †  
*is* three hundred feet *wide* at Rome.—The famous mine of  
*a* † *largeur* — f.  
 Potosi, in Peru, *is* more than fifteen hundred feet *deep.*  
*dans Pérou* m. *a* *de* † *profondeur.*

## § VI. ADJECTIVES IN THE COMPARATIVE DEGREE.

456. (1.) BY, after a comparative, is expressed by DE ; as,

Il est plus grand DE deux pouces. | *He is taller BY two inches.*

457. (2.) In English, when the adverbs *more* and *less* are repeated to express a comparison, they are preceded by the article ; as, THE MORE *difficult a thing is*, THE MORE *glorious it is to do it well.* But, in French, the article is omitted ; as, PLUS *une chose est difficile*, PLUS *il est glorieux de la bien faire.*

## § VII. ADJECTIVES IN THE SUPERLATIVE DEGREE.

458. (1.) An adjective in the superlative degree governs the preposition DE ; as,

Le plus grand empire DU  
monde.

| *The greatest empire in the  
world.*

† See Remarks on *Cent*, p. 34.

† See No. 439, p. 227.

459. (2.) When the substantive precedes the superlative, both take the article; but the substantive takes no article, if the superlative goes first; as,

Les gens les plus habiles. } The most able men.  
Les plus habiles gens.

460. (3.) The article placed before *plus* and *moins* is always invariable, when there is no comparison; as, *La lune ne nous éclaire pas autant que le soleil, même quand elle est LE PLUS brillante*, The moon does not light us so much as the sun, even when it shines brightest. But the article takes gender and number, when there is a comparison; as, *La lune est LA PLUS brillante de toutes les planètes*, The moon is the most brilliant of all the planets.

### EXERCISE CLXXVI.

She is taller than her sister *by* the whole head.—The more  
<sup>2</sup> <sup>1</sup>*tout tête f.*

one reads La Fontaine, *the more* one admires him.—Seneca  
*on Sénèque*

was *the richest* man in the empire.—The highest mountains  
ind-2 <sup>2</sup> <sup>1</sup>*montagne f.*

are the reservoirs (from which) issue *the largest* rivers.—  
*réservoir m. d'où sortir grand fleuve m.*

Those whom I have always seen *most struck* with the writings  
*Ceux que vus frapper de écrit m.*  
of Homer, Virgil, Horace, and Cicero, are minds of the first  
<sup>†</sup> <sup>†</sup> <sup>\*</sup> <sup>†</sup>*des esprit m.*

order.—Although the Chinese boast of being *the most ancient*  
*Quoique Chinois se vanter inf-1 <sup>2</sup>*

nation, they are far from being *the most enlightened*.  
<sup>1</sup>—f. *loin inf-1 éclairé*

### EXERCISE CLXXVII.

That man is the best creature *in* the world.—That is the  
*f. Voilà*

cleverest boy *in* the school.—His father is the most learned  
*habile savant*

man *in* the kingdom.—His mother is the most sensible wo-  
*spirituel*

man *in* the whole town.—Her grandfather is the richest  
92

merchant *in* London.—The more you study, *the more* you  
*négociant*

learn.—Astronomy is one of the sciences which does *most*  
*f.*

honour to the human mind.

## CHAPTER IV. OF PRONOUNS.

### § I. OF PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

#### *Place of Personal Pronouns.*

461. THE Personal Pronouns, whether *subjects* or *objects*, are placed before the verb in simple tenses, and before the auxiliary in compound tenses; except, 1<sup>st</sup>, When the pronouns take a preposition before them in French; 2<sup>dly</sup>, In interrogative sentences; 3<sup>dly</sup>, When the verb is in the imperative *affirmative* (the third persons excepted). Such is the general principle of the position of personal pronouns, which will be fully developed in this chapter.

(See what has already been stated on this subject, p. 38.)

#### OF PERSONAL PRONOUNS AS SUBJECTS.

462. (I.) The *personal* pronouns, *I, thou, he* or *it, she* or *it, we, you, they*, are expressed in French by *je, tu, il, elle, nous, vous, ils* m., *elles* f., when they are the subjects or nominatives of the verb; as,

<i>Je</i> parle, I <i>speak</i> ; <i>il</i> chante, he <i>sings</i> .		<i>Elle</i> danse, she <i>dances</i> ; <i>nous</i> jouons, we <i>play</i> .
--	--	--

463. (II.) *I, thou, he, they* m. are rendered by *moi, toi, lui, eux*:—

1<sup>st</sup>, When used in answer to a question; as,

<i>Qui</i> a fait cela?— <i>Moi</i> .		<i>Who</i> has done that?— <i>I</i> .
---------------------------------------	--	---------------------------------------

2<sup>d</sup>, When joined to a noun or pronoun by a conjunction, or when a verb has two or more pronouns as subjects; as,

<i>Mon frère</i> et <i>moi</i> . <i>Lui</i> et <i>moi</i> . <i>Vous, lui, et moi</i> , nous <i>irons</i> .		<i>My brother</i> and <i>I</i> . <i>He</i> and <i>I</i> . <i>You, he, and I</i> will go.
--	--	--

3d, When they come after a comparative ; as,  
Il est plus riche que *lui*, qu'*eux* et *moi*. | *He is richer than he, they, and I.*

4th, When followed by the relatives *qui*, *que*, the adjective *seul*, or a present participle ; as,

<i>Moi</i> QUI suis son fils.	I who <i>am</i> his son.
<i>Eux</i> QUE j'aimais tant.	They whom <i>I</i> loved so much.
<i>Lui</i> SEUL respecte la vertu.	He alone <i>respects</i> virtue.
<i>Eux</i> , VOYANT qu'ils avaient tort.	They, seeing <i>that they were in the wrong.</i>

5th, When they mark opposition or distinction, or point out the part taken in an action by different persons ; as,

<i>Eux</i> l'ont relevé, et <i>LUI</i> l'a pansé.	They <i>raised him up</i> , and he <i>dressed his wounds.</i>
---	---

6th, When coming after these expressions, *It is, it was, it will be, it would be*, or similar ones, whether in the affirmative, negative, or interrogative ; as,

<i>It is</i> I,	C'est <i>moi</i> .	<i>It is</i> thou,	C'est <i>toi</i> .
<i>It is</i> he,	C'est <i>lui</i> .	<i>It is</i> they,	<i>Ce sont eux, m. elles, f.</i>

### EXERCISE CLXXVIII.

*I* come from *Dover*. — *You* like the town, and *I* the *Douvres*.  
country. — Who read last? — *He*. — *I* am not so tall  
*campagne* f. ind-4 *le dernier* fem. *si grand*  
as your sister, but *she* is older than *I*. — *They alone* have  
*que* *âgé* *seul*  
fought the enemy; *they alone* deserve to be rewarded. —  
*combattre* *mériter d' récompensé*  
*He, perceiving* their intentions, gave up his project. —  
*s'apercevoir de* † *abandonner projet* m.  
Your uncles and your brother take charge of the enterprise;  
*se charger*  
*they* find the money, and *he* will manage the work. —  
*fournir fonds* pl. *conduire* ind-7 *travail* m.  
Was it *he* that was singing? — No, it was *I*.  
ind-2 *ce qui* ind-2 *c'* ind-2

† Most words ending in *ion* are alike in both languages. See p. 36.

464. (III.) Personal pronouns used as *subjects*, are placed after the verb, although no interrogation is meant:—

1st, When the verb is in the present or imperfect of the Subjunctive without any conjunction being expressed. In such a case, the final *e* of the first person is marked with an acute accent, for the sake of euphony; as,

Puissé-je de mes yeux, &c. (CORNEILLE.) | May I with my eyes, &c.  
Dussé-je mourir! (RACINE.) | Were I to die!

2d, When the verb is preceded by any of these words, *aussi*, *peut-être*, *encore*, *en vain*, *du moins*, *au moins*, *à peine*; as,

Peut-être avez-vous raison. | Perhaps you are right.  
En vain prétendons-nous. | It is in vain that we pretend.

We might also say: *Peut-être vous avez raison*;—*en vain nous prétendons*, but then the expression possesses neither the same grace, nor the same energy.

3d, In narrations, as in English:—

Où allez-vous? lui dis-je. | Where are you going? said I to him.  
Je le veux bien, lui répondit-il. | I am very willing, replied he to him.

Observe that in the foregoing examples a *hyphen* is put after the verb when followed by the pronoun its subject.

### EXERCISE CLXXIX.

(Oh that I may) see him! — (Though you were) more  
*Puissé-je* *Fussiez-vous*

numerous, you will meet with resistance. — This  
*nombreux* *éprouver* ind-7 32

lace is beautiful, (but then) it is dear. — The rose is  
*dentelle* f. *aussi* *coûter* † ‡ — f.

the queen of flowers; therefore it is the emblem of  
art. *aussi* *emblème* m. art.

beauty. — Perhaps I shall go. — You were hardly gone when  
*Peut-être* ind-2 *à peine partir que*

your brother arrived. — What would you have? said he to me.  
ind-3 ind-1 \*

Life, replied I. — Scarcely had I arrived.  
art. *répondre* *fus*

† See the 3d Remark, p. 87.

‡ See the 2d Remark, p. 221.

465. IV. Personal pronouns, when subjects or nominatives, must be repeated :—

1st, When we pass from negation to affirmation; as, *JE ne plie pas et JE romps* (I do not bend and I break.) But we can say: *JE plie et JE ne romps pas*, or *je plie et ne romps pas*, the first verb being in the affirmative.

2d, When the verbs are connected by any conjunction except *et* (and), *ou* (or), *ni* (nor), *mais* (but).

Except in those two cases, the personal pronouns subjects, are either repeated or not, according as the harmony, energy, and especially the perspicuity of the phrase may require.

#### EXERCISE CLXXX.

*You gain nothing, and you spend (a great deal). — I*  
*gagner dépenser beaucoup.*  
 (am not ignorant) that one cannot be happy without virtue,  
*n'ignore pas on ne saurait art.*  
 and I (am firmly resolved) always to practise it.—*We detest*  
*me propose bien de \* 2 1*  
 the wicked, because we fear them.—*He is learned although*  
*méchant parce que craindre quoique*  
*he is very young.—I wish to see you happy, because I am*  
*subj-1 bien désirer \**  
 attached to you.—*You will be truly esteemed, if you are wise*  
*attaché \* vraiment*  
 and modest.—*You are not happy, and you have saved Rome*  
*modeste*

#### OF PERSONAL PRONOUNS AS OBJECTS.

466. A Personal pronoun, when the regimen† or object of the verb, is either *direct* or *indirect*. A pronoun is the direct object of the verb, when it is governed by the verb without any preposition, either expressed or understood; as, *Je la vois*, I see her. But, when a pronoun is the indirect object, it is always preceded by *à* (to), or

† REGIMEN. The word or member of a sentence governed by a verb; as, *Evil communication corrupts good manners*, where *good manners* may be said to be the regimen, or part of the sentence governed by the verb *corrupts*.—Walker.



*de* (of), either expressed or understood ; as, *Je lui parle*, I speak to him ; *J'en parle*, I speak of him.

467. (I.) When personal pronouns are in the accusative, or in other words, the *direct objects* of the verb, they are expressed in French thus :—

*me*, by me  
*thee*, „ te  
*him, it*, „ le  
*her, it*, „ la

*us*, by nous  
*you*, „ vous  
*them*, „ les, *m.* and *f.*

and are placed before the verb in simple tenses, and before the auxiliary in compound tenses, whether the sentence be affirmative, negative, or interrogative ; as,

*Il me flatte.*

*Vous ne la surprendrez pas.*

*Ils nous ont trompés.*

*Ne les connaissez-vous pas ?*

*He flatters me.*

*You will not surprise her.*

*They have deceived us.*

*Do you not know them ?*

REMARK.—When *me*, *te*, *se*, *le*, *la*, come before a vowel, or *h* mute, the elision of the *e* takes place, as explained in the chapter of the apostrophe, page 9.

*N.B.*—The pronouns *le*, *la*, *les*, are also called *relative* pronouns, because they relate to a substantive already expressed.

### EXERCISE CLXXXI.

You suspect *me* (without reason).—He has rewarded *me*  
*soupçonner mal à propos. récompenser*  
generously. — God is a father to those who love *him*, and a  
*généreusement. le de ceux le*  
protector to those who fear *him*. — (As soon as) my sister  
78 *de craindre Dès que*  
(shall have) arrived, I will go and see *her*. — Vice often  
*sera ind-7 \* art.*  
deceives *us* under the mask of virtue. — We shall go and  
*masque m. art. \**  
see *you* after dinner. — Do you not see *them* ? — Whoever  
*après dîner. 112*  
flatters his masters betrays *them*. — I know *it*.  
*maître trahir 265*

468. (II.) When personal pronouns are the *indirect objects* of the verb, and governed by the preposition *à* (to),

understood, they are expressed by *me*, *te*, *lui*, m. and f.; *nous*, *vous*, *leur*, m. and f., and placed before the verb, in the same manner as when they are the direct objects; as,

Elle *me* parle.

Il *lui* donne.

Je *leur* écrirai.

*She* speaks to me.

*He* gives him (i. e. to him).

*I* will write to them.

469. (III.) When the preposition *à* is to be expressed before the pronouns, they are then rendered by *moi*, *toi*, *lui*, *elle*, *nous*, *vous*, *eux*, *elles*, and placed after the verb. This happens only in the following cases:—

1st, With the verbs *aller*, to go; *courir* and *accourir*, to run to; *marcher*, to walk; *penser* and *songer*, to think; *venir*, to come; *viser*, to aim at; *être* (in the sense of to belong); *avoir*, to have, used with the words *affaire*, *égard*, *rapport*, *recours*; as,

Votre frère vint *à nous*.

Ce livre est *à moi*.

J'aurai recours *à eux*.

*Your* brother came to us.

*This* book belongs to me.

*I* will have recourse to them.

2d, When a verb has two or more indirect regimens, and likewise with all reflected verbs; as,

Je parle *à lui* et *à elle*.

Il s'adressa *à moi*.

*I* speak to him and to her.

*He* applied to me.

### EXERCISE CLXXXII.

Do you not speak to her, when you meet her?—Few  
*quand rencontrer* *Peu*  
 people are wise enough to prefer the blame that is useful  
*de gens* *pour*  
 to them, to the praise which betrays them.—They came to us  
*louange f.* *trahir*  
 when we (were not thinking) of them. — That horse was  
*ne pensions pas à* *ind-2*  
 formerly mine, but I sold it to your cousin.—If you don't  
*autrefois à moi* *ind-4 l'*  
 behave better, you will have to do with me. — He speaks  
*se conduire* *affaire à*  
 to you and to him. — We trust to them. — She applied to him.  
*se fier*

470. (IV.) When a personal pronoun, used as a direct

or indirect object, accompanies a verb in the imperative mood, in the first person plural, or in the second person singular or plural, it is put in French, as in English, immediately after the verb, and *moi*, *toi*, are used instead of *me*, *te*. But, if a negation attends the imperative, the pronoun follows the general rule, and is placed before the verb, and again *me*, *te*, are used.

## EXAMPLES.

<i>Affirmatively.</i>		<i>Negatively.</i>	[them.]
Aimons-les,	Let us love them.	Ne les aimons pas,	Let us not love
Sauvez-moi,	Save me.	Ne me sauvez pas,	Don't save me.
Dites-lui,	Tell him.	Ne lui dites pas,	Don't tell him.

471. REMARKS.—(1.) When two imperatives are joined by the conjunction *et* or *ou*, and without a negative, it is considered more elegant to place the second pronoun before the verb; as,

Polissez-le sans cesse, et le repolissez.—(Boileau.)		Polish and repolish it con- tinually.
---	--	--

472. (2.) When an imperative has two pronouns for regimens, one direct and the other indirect, the direct regimen is expressed first; as,

Donnez-le-moi.		Give it me.
Prêtez-le-lui.		Lend it to him.

Negatively, we would say, *Ne me le donnez pas; Ne le lui prêtez pas.*

473. (3.) When *moi*, *toi*, are placed after the imperative, and followed by the pronoun *en*, they are changed into *m'*, *t'*; as,

Donnez-m'en, Give me some.		Retourne-t'en, Go back.
----------------------------	--	-------------------------

*Note.*—Observe again how a hyphen is introduced in the foregoing examples. The rule is thus laid down by *Beauzée* and *Féraud*. When the first and second persons of the imperative have for complement (or regimen) one of these words: *moi*, *toi*, *nous*, *vous*, *le*, *la*, *lui*, *les*, *leur*, *en*, *y*, they are joined together by a hyphen, and a second hyphen is introduced when there are two of those words as complement of the imperative. Examples: — *Donnez-moi, dépêchons-nous, accordez-la-leur, rendons-la-lui.*

But we write: *faites-moi lui parler*, and not *faites-moi-lui parler*, because *lui* is the regimen of *parler*, and not of *faites*; *venez me parler*, because *me* is not governed by *venez*, but by the infinitive *parler*.

## EXERCISE CLXXXIII.

Whatever thing (you have promised), give it. —  
 127 *que vous ayez promise,*  
 Listen to me; do not condemn me without a hearing. —  
*Ecouter \* condamner m'entendre.*  
 Tell me the truth. — Don't speak to me. — Repeat to them  
*vérité f. Répéter*  
 continually, that, without honesty, one can never succeed in  
*sans cesse on réussir*  
 the world. — Don't repeat to them the same things. — Take  
*Prendre*  
 them, or leave them, it is (all one) to me. — My innocence  
*laisser cela égal — f.*  
 is the only good that remains to me: leave it to me.  
*seul bien m. qui*

474. (V.) Personal pronouns, whether direct or indirect objects, are repeated, in French, before every verb; as,

*Il vous estime et vous honore. | He esteems and honours you.*

*Son visage odieux m'afflige et me poursuit. (RACINE.)*

## EXERCISE CLXXXIV.

He beseeches and entreats me not to do it. — I say and  
*prier conjurer de*  
 declare to you. — The idea that they believe him guilty,  
*\* pensée f. on croire coupable*  
 pursues, torments, and overwhelms him. — He wearies and  
*poursuivre, tourmenter, accabler ennuyer*  
 torments us incessantly. — A <sup>2</sup>well brought up <sup>1</sup>son never  
*obséder sans cesse. bien élevé*  
 rebels against his father; he loves, honours, and respects him.  
*se révolter respecter*

475. (VI.) The pronouns *it*, *they*, *them*, which the English use with reference to animals and inanimate things, are expressed in French by *il*, *elle*, *ils*, *elles*, when they are the subject or nominative of the verb, and by *le*, *la*, *les*, when they form the accusative or direct object of the verb.

Be careful to make these pronouns agree in gender and number with the nouns to which they refer. It is almost

unnecessary to repeat that the French language has no neuter gender, consequently inanimate objects are either masculine or feminine; so, in speaking of the *rose*, which is feminine, we say *ELLE est belle*, it is beautiful; and of a book, *livre*, which is masculine, *vous a-t-IL amusé ?* has it amused you?

476. REMARK.—When these pronouns come after a preposition, they are usually left out in French; then the preposition becomes an adverb, and conveys the idea sufficiently; as,

Approchez-vous du feu.—Je		Come near the fire.—I am
suis tout auprès.		quite near it.

## EXERCISE CLXXXV.

Look at that magnificent building; *it* unites grace  
*Regarder* \* *magnifique bâtiment* m. *réunir* art. *grâce* f.  
 with beauty, and elegance with simplicity. — Where  
*à* art. art. *à* art.

is my pen? *It* is upon the table. — Give *it* me. — Never  
*plume* f. *sur*

judge from appearances, for *they* are often deceitful. —  
*juger sur* art. *apparence* f. *car* *trompeur*

(There is) a good book, read *it*. — My house is new; I will  
*Voilà* *maison* f. *neuf*

not sell *it*; but I will let *it*. — His cot was solitary;  
*ind-7* *louer* *ind-7* *cabane* f. *ind-2* *isolé*

near *it* flowed a spring of pure water.  
*couler* *ind-2* *source* f. *vif* <sup>1</sup>

477. (VII.) When *to it*, *to them*, relate to inanimate things, they are expressed by *y*; as,

Ce tableau est très-bon;		That picture is very good;
mettez-y un cadre.		put a frame to it.

But, when the pronouns *it*, *them*, are in the dative case, that is, used for *to it*, *to them*, and have reference to animals, plants, and ideal substances, in which we suppose an active principle, such as some virtues and vices, or are preceded by the verb *to owe*, or *to be indebted*,

they are translated by *lui* for the singular, and *leur* for the plural; as,

Ce chien a faim, donnez-LUI du pain.	<i>That dog is hungry, give IT some bread.</i>
Ces orangers vont périr, si vous ne LEUR donnez point d'eau.	<i>These orange-trees will die, if you do not give THEM water.</i>

(For the proper place of *y*, see *N.B.* p. 50.)

### EXERCISE CLXXXVI.

I study botany, and apply myself seriously to  
 art. *botanique f.* pron. *s'appliquer sérieusement*  
*it.*—History and geography are his delight, he (gives himself up)  
 373 *délices pl.* *se livre*  
*to them* entirely. —I leave you the care of that goldfinch;  
*entièrement. laisser soin m. chardonneret m.*  
 do not forget to give *it* water.—When virtue appears in all  
*oublier de paraître dans*  
 its beauty, we cannot refuse *it* our homage and respect.—  
*ne pouvons refuser — m.*  
 This book cost me (a great deal), but I (*am indebted*) *to it* for  
*coûte cher dois \**  
 my knowledge.—Bring my horses, and give *them* some hay.  
*instruction f. Amener foin m.*

478. (VIII.) The pronoun *le*, which makes *la* for the feminine, and *les* for the plural of both genders, may supply the place of a substantive, or an adjective, or even of a part of a sentence.

When this pronoun supplies the place of a substantive or an adjective used substantively, it takes the gender and number of that substantive or adjective used substantively. In such a case, the English equivalent is almost always understood

#### EXAMPLES.

Etes-vous madame de Genlis?— Je ne <i>la</i> suis pas.	<i>Are you madame de Genlis?—I am not.</i>
Etes-vous <i>la</i> mère de cet enfant?— Oui, je <i>la</i> suis.	<i>Are you the mother of that child?—Yes, I am.</i>
Etes-vous <i>la</i> malade?—Je <i>la</i> suis.	<i>Are you the patient?—I am.</i>
Mesdames, êtes-vous les parentes de monsieur?—Oui, nous <i>les</i> sommes.	<i>Ladies, are you the relations of this gentleman?—Yes, we are.</i>

## EXERCISE CLXXXVII.

Are you Dr Kitto's sister? Yes, I am.—Are you Marshal  
*sœur* *maréchal m.*  
 Ney's daughter? No, I am not.—Are you Lady Melville?  
*Non* *Lady †*  
 Yes, I am.—Are you the mistress of this house? I am.—Are  
*maitresse*  
 you the king's ministers? We are.—Madam, are you the bride?  
*ministre* *mariée*  
 Yes, I am.—Are those your gloves? Yes, they are. Give  
*-ce là* *gant m.* *ce*  
 them to me.—Are you my sister's dressmaker? I am.  
*couturière f.*

479. (IX.) The pronoun *le* remains invariable, when it has reference to a verb, an adjective, or a substantive used adjectively. The English equivalent, which is generally *so* or *it*, is almost always understood.

## EXAMPLES.

Madame, êtes-vous malade?—Oui, monsieur, je <i>le</i> suis.	<i>Madam, are you ill?—Yes, Sir, I am.</i> <i>Are you a mother?—I am.</i> <i>Young ladies, are you ready?—Yes, we are.</i>
Etes-vous mère?—Je <i>le</i> suis.	
Mesdemoiselles, êtes-vous prêtes?	
—Oui, nous <i>le</i> sommes.	

## EXERCISE CLXXXVIII.

Madam, are you pleased with that speech? Yes, I am. —  
 444 *discours m.*  
 Madam, are you married? Yes, I am.—Are you mistress of  
*mariée* *maitresse*  
 your actions? I am not.—Ladies, are you glad to have seen  
*bien aise*  
 the little Princess? Yes, we are.—Have we ever been so  
*princesse* *jamais*  
 quiet as we are?—Do you know if they are rich? No,  
*tranquille que* 265 *riche*  
 they are not. — The poor will not always be so.  
*pauvre pl.*

---

† Mot emprunté de l'anglais. On prononce *Lédi*.—(Acad.)

OF THE PRONOUNS *se*, *soi*.

(For the various meanings, see No. 88.)

480. The pronoun *se* (*s'* before a vowel) is of both numbers and genders; it is always placed before the verb of which it is the regimen; as *il se connaît*, he knows himself; *elle s'imagine*, she fancies.

Les yeux de l'amitié *se* trompent rarement.—VOLTAIRE.

481. The pronoun *soi* is of both genders, and is generally preceded by a preposition, or by the conjunction *que*.—When applied to persons, it is employed only in a vague and indeterminate sense; as, *Il faut prendre garde à soi*, it is necessary to take care of oneself.

## EXERCISE CLXXXIX.

They lost *themselves* in the wood. — This flower is fading.  
*s'égarer* ind-3 *fleur* f. *se flétrir*

These trees are dying.—A good deed carries its reward  
*se mourir* *bienfait* m. *porter* *récompense* f.  
 with *itself*.—Frankness is good of *itself*, but it has its excesses.  
*avec* *franchise* f. *de* *excès* m.

When a man loves nobody but *himself*, he is not fit for  
*Quand* \* *on n'* \* *que* *on* *propre*  
 society. — To be too much dissatisfied with *ourselves* is a  
 \* 444 *soi*

weakness; but to be too much pleased with *ourselves* is a  
*faiblesse* f. \* 444

folly. — It always depends on *ourselves* to act honourably.  
*sottise* f. *de* *d'*

## RESPECTIVE PLACES OF THE PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

482. When a verb (the imperative *affirmative* excepted) governs two or more pronouns without a preposition, they are always placed before it, and before its auxiliary in compound tenses, in the following order:—

*me, te, se, nous, vous,*  
*le, la, les,*  
*lui, leur,*  
*y,*  
*en,*

before all others.  
 before *lui, leur, y, en*.  
 before *y, en*.  
 before *en*.  
 is always the last.



483. When the sentence is not interrogative, the pronoun which is the subject of the verb is always placed at the head; as,

*Vous ne me le conseillez pas.*

*Je ne le lui dirais pas.*

*Nous les en avertirons.*

*Nous lui en parlerons.*

*Ils ne s'y soumettront pas.*

*You do not advise me so.*

*I would not tell it him.*

*We shall warn them of it.*

*We will speak to him about it.*

*They will not submit to it.*

484. In an imperative sentence, when affirmative, *le, la, les*, are always placed first; as, *donnez-le-moi*, give it me. *Moi* is placed after *y*; as, *menez-y-moi*, take me thither: but *nous* must precede *y*; as, *menez-nous-y*, take us thither.

### EXERCISE CXC.

Do not say to a friend, who asks something of you: Go,

see p. 211 \*

and come again to-morrow, and I will give *it you*; when you  
*revenir demain* • *lorsque*

can give *it him* immediately.—It is certain that old  
*pouvoir lui sur-le-champ.* art.

Géronte has refused his daughter to Valère; but because he  
*parce qu'*

does not give *her to him*, (it does not follow) that he will give  
*il ne s'ensuit pas*

*her to you*.—I will give *you some*.—I have a letter for you.  
*en lettre f. pour*

Your brother has sent *it me* to bring *it you*. Give *it me*.  
*envoyée pour*

### § II. OF POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

Under this head we shall place the POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES, as we have already done, page 42.

485. *Possessive adjectives* agree in gender and number with the noun to which they are joined.

486. They are repeated before every noun of the same sentence; as, *MON père, MA mère,† et MES frères sont venus*, my father, mother, and brothers have come.

† *Mes père et mère, ses père et mère*, instead of *mon père et ma mère, son père et sa mère*, are phrases extremely incorrect, and though used by many people, are most certainly contrary to the principles of the French language, and are condemned by *Vaugelas, Wailly*, by the modern Grammarians, and finally by the *French Academy*.

487. *Possessive adjectives* are repeated also before the adjectives that do not qualify the same noun; as, *MON grand et MON petit appartement*, which is equivalent to *mon grand APPARTEMENT et mon petit appartement*. But I would say: *MON grand et bel appartement*, without repeating *mon*, were I speaking of an apartment both large and beautiful.

(See what is said upon the repetition of the Article, p. 200 and 201.)

### EXERCISE CXCI.

Cyrus knew all the soldiers of *his* army, and could  
 — ind-2                      *soldat*                      93 *armée* f.                      *pouvoir* ind-2  
 designate them by *their* names.—<sup>2</sup>Four <sup>3</sup>things <sup>1</sup>(are required)  
*désigner*                      *nom* m.                      *on demande*  
 of a woman: that virtue (should dwell) in *her* heart; that  
 à *femme* *que* 371 *habite* *dans*  
 modesty (should shine) on *her* forehead; that *gentleness*  
 371 *brille*                      *front* m.                      371 *douceur* f.  
 (should flow) from *her* lips, and that *work* (should occupy)  
*découle*                      *lèvre* f.                      371 *travail* m.                      *occupe*  
*her* hands.—*Her* father and mother are dead.—*My* uncle and  
 235  
 aunt are in Paris.—He (showed him) both *his* fine and ugly  
*tante*                      *lui a montré* \*                      *beau*                      *vilain*  
 dresses.—He showed him *his* beautiful and rich dresses.  
*habits* m.

488. The French make use of the article, and not of the possessive adjective, when the sense clearly points out who is the possessor; as,

J'ai mal à LA tête.		<i>I have a pain in MY head.</i>
Pierre a reçu un coup de feu AU		<i>Peter has received a shot in HIS</i>
bras droit.		<i>right arm.</i>

As there can be no doubt as to whose head is aching, and whose arm has received the shot, the French deem the article sufficient.

But, to avoid ambiguity, I must say,

Je vois que MON bras enfle.		<i>I see my arm is swelling.</i>
Pierre a perdu SON argent.		<i>Peter has lost his money.</i>

Because, were I to say, *Je vois que LE bras enfle*;

*Pierre a perdu L'argent*, one would not know whether it is my arm or that of another that I see swelling; or, whether it is his own money or John's that Peter has lost.

The possessive adjective is also used in speaking of an habitual complaint known to the person spoken to; as,

MA migraine m'a repris.

SA goutte le tourmente.

*My headache has returned.*

*His gout torments him.*

Reflected verbs generally remove all ambiguity; as,

Je me suis blessé à LA main.

Je me lave LES mains.

*I have hurt my hand.*

*I wash my hands.*

The use of the possessive adjective would here be an error; custom, however, authorizes a few familiar expressions in which the possessive seems to be redundant; as, *Je me suis tenu toute la journée SUR MES JAMBES*;—*il se tient ferme SUR SES PIEDS*.

489. The French use the article, not the possessive adjective, before a noun forming the regimen, when a personal pronoun, which is the indirect regimen, sufficiently supplies the place of the possessive; as,

Vous LUI avez cassé LE bras.

Vous ME blessez LA main.

*You have broken his arm.*

*You hurt my hand.*

## EXERCISE CXII.

Of all <sup>2</sup>living <sup>1</sup>creatures, man is the only one who (has not)  
 art. *vivant* f. *seul* \* *n'ait pas*  
*his* face turned towards the earth; he walks with *his* eyes  
 — f. *tourné vers* *marcher* \* m.  
 directed towards heaven, as if to indicate the superiority  
*dirigé* art. *ciel* m. *comme pour indiquer*  
 of his origin.—*My* gout does not allow me a moment's repose.  
*son* *laisser* *repos.*  
 — You will cut *your* finger. — A cannon-ball  
*se couper* *doigt* m. *boulet de canon* m. *lui*  
 carried off *his* arm.—Our carriage passed over *his*  
*emporter* ind-3 *voiture* f. *lui* ind-3 *sur* *lui*  
 body, and bruised *his* right shoulder.  
*corps* m. *lui meurtrir* ind-3 <sup>2</sup>*droit* <sup>1</sup>*épaule* f.

490. When *its* or *their* relate to inanimate objects, they are expressed by *son, sa, ses, leur, or leurs* :—

1st, When the possessor, substantive or pronoun, is expressed, as the subject, in the same member of a sentence ; as,

Londres a ses beautés. | London has its beauties.

2d, When preceded by any preposition whatever ; as,  
J'admire la largeur DE ses rues. | I admire the width OF its streets.

3d, When joined to a noun qualified by an adjective, unless the noun form the regimen ; as,

Ses bâtiments réguliers plaisent | Its regular buildings please at  
au premier coup d'œil. | first sight.

4th, When joined to the subject of the verb, the latter is, or may be, followed in French by the preposition *de* ; as,

Son commerce produit d'im- | Its trade produces immense re-  
menses ressources. | sources.

On all other occasions, *its* and *their* are expressed by *en*, before the verb, and by the article before the noun. So, still speaking of London, I would say :

La situation en est très-com- | Its situation is very convenient  
mode pour le commerce. | for trade.

### EXERCISE CXIII.

A new custom was a phenomenon in Egypt: (for which  
*coutume* f. ind-2 *prodige* m. *en* *aussi*  
reason) (there never was) a people that preserved so long  
*n'y eut-il jamais de* *conserver* subj-3  
*its* laws, and even *its* ceremonies. — The pyramids of Egypt  
*pyramide* f.  
astonish, both by the enormity of *their* bulk, and by the  
*également et* *masse*  
justness of *their* proportions.—The Thames is a magnificent  
*justesse* f. *superbe*  
river: *its* channel is so wide and so deep below London-  
*lit* m. *large* *au-dessous de*  
bridge, that several thousand vessels lie at their ease in it.  
*millier de* *être* *l'* 109

491. REMARKS.—1. *A friend of mine ; a book of yours*, are turned in this manner in French, *un de mes amis ; un de vos livres*. As if it were, one of my friends, one of your books ; and so on with all other phrases of the same kind.

2. *Mine, thine, his, hers, ours, yours, theirs*, used with the verb *to be*, in the sense of *to belong*, are expressed, in French, by *à moi, à toi, à lui, à elle, à nous, à vous, à eux*, m., *à elles*, f. ; as, this book is MINE, *ce livre est à MOI* ; that watch is HERS, *cette montre est à ELLE*.

3. The forms *my brother's, your sister's*, etc. are also rendered by *à mon frère, à votre sœur*.

4. In speaking to a person of his relations or friends, we generally put *monsieur, madame, mademoiselle, messieurs, mesdames, mesdemoiselles*, before the possessive adjectives ; as,

J'ai rencontré monsieur votre père.

Comment se porte madame votre mère ?

*I met your father.*

*How does your mother do ?*

But this is a mere form of politeness, and has nothing to do with the rules of grammar.

#### EXERCISE CXCV.

His mother is an old acquaintance of ours. —  
*ancienne connaissance f.*

That gentleman is a relation of mine. — I am going to  
*monsieur parent* \*

dine with an aunt of his. — A sister of hers is dead. — Is this  
*tante* 161

house yours or his ? It is not mine. It is my uncle's or  
*oncle*

my mother's. — Is your sister in town ? — No, she is in  
161 *en* à

the country, with a cousin of mine. — These keys are his or  
*f.* *clef f.*

hers. — They are not mine, they are my father's or my mother's

## § III. OF DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

492. *Ce* before *être*, requires this verb to be in the singular, except when it is followed by the third person plural. So we say, *C'EST moi, C'EST lui, C'EST nous, C'EST vous*. But we must say, *Ce SONT, c'ÉTAIENT, ce FURENT, ce SERONT eux, elles, les parents, qui, etc.*

Such is the rule of the best grammarians. With the third person plural, however, some respectable authors use the verb *être*, sometimes in the plural, and sometimes in the singular.

493. *Ce* is often used instead of *il, elle, ils, elles*, in reference to a person or thing mentioned before. *Ce* is preferred when the verb *être* is followed by a substantive, accompanied by the article, or the adjective *un*; as,

Lisez Homère et Virgile ; <b>CE SONT</b>	<i>Read Homer and Virgil ; they</i>
<b>LES</b> plus grands POÈTES de l'an-	<i>are the best poets of antiquity.</i>
tiqité.	
C'est <b>UN</b> César. C'est <b>UN</b> Cicéron.	<i>He is a Cæsar. He is a Cicero.</i>

But, when the verb *être* is followed by an adjective without a noun, or by a noun taken adjectively, *il, elle, ils, elles*, must be used; as,

Lisez Démosthène et Cicéron ; <b>ILS</b>	<i>Read Demosthenes and Cicero ;</i>
<b>SONT</b> très éloquents.	<i>they are very eloquent.</i>
J'ai vu le Louvre ; <b>IL EST</b> magni-	<i>I have seen the Louvre ; it is</i>
fique, et digne d'une grande	<i>beautiful, and worthy of a great</i>
nation.	<i>nation.</i>

## EXERCISE CXCIV.

*It is* we who have restored tranquillity.—*It is* you, brave  
*rétablir*

soldiers, who fought gloriously.—*It was* the Egyptians  
*soldat combattre ind-4 ind-3 Egyptiens*  
who first observed the course of the stars, regulated  
*les premiers ind-3 cours m. astre m. régler*  
the year, and invented arithmetic.—Read attentively Plate  
*année f. Lire*

and Cicero; *they are the two philosophers* of antiquity, who  
*philosophe*

have given us <sup>2</sup>(the most sound and luminous) <sup>1</sup>ideas upon  
*art. sain lumineux idée f.*  
morality.—I have seen the city of Edinburgh; *it is beautiful.*  
*morale f. ville f.*

494. *Ce qui*, as the subject, and *ce que*, as the object, are much used in the sense of *what, that which, that thing which*.

When *ce qui* or *ce que* begin a sentence of two parts, *ce* must be repeated in the second part of the sentence, if it begins with the verb *être*; as,

<i>Ce qui</i> m'attache à la vie, c'EST	What keeps me attached to life,
vous.	is you.
<i>Ce que</i> je désire le plus, c'EST	What I wish most, is to come
d'aller vous voir.	and see you.

The repetition of *ce* is not indispensable when the verb *être* is followed by a substantive singular. Thus, we may say,

<i>Ce qui</i> mérite le plus notre admiration, c'EST or EST la vertu.	That which deserves our admiration most, is virtue.
---	---

Even in this case, however, it is better, in general, to repeat *ce*, which gives more energy to the expression.

But when the verb *être* is followed by an adjective or a past participle without a noun, the demonstrative *ce* is not repeated; as,

<i>Ce que</i> vous dites EST vrai.	. What you say is true.
------------------------------------	-------------------------

### EXERCISE CXCVI.

*What I fear, is to displease you.—What pleases in the*  
*Ce que craindre de déplaire* *Ce qui dans*  
ancients, is that they have painted nature with a noble sim-  
ancien peindre  
plicity.—*What we* <sup>2</sup>justly <sup>1</sup>admire in Racine, are those  
*Ce qu' on avec justice* *dans*  
characters always natural and always well sustained.—  
caractère m. *dans la nature* \* *soutenu*  
*That which* sustains man in the midst of the greatest reverses,  
*Ce qui soutenir à milieu m.*  
is hope. — *What I say is true.—What is true is beautiful.*  
*espérance f.* *beau.*

495. *Celui, celle, ceux, celles*, are frequently used with the relatives *qui, que, dont, auquel, à laquelle*, in the sense of *he who, she who, they who, whoever, whichever*, etc.; as,

Heureux celui qui craint le	Happy is he who fears the
Seigneur!	Lord!
Celle qui aime la vertu est	She who loves virtue is
heureuse.	happy.

## EXERCISE CXC VII.

Happy is *he who* lives contented with his lot! — *He who* has  
 \* *vivre content* 444 *sort m.*  
 never been acquainted with adversity, says Seneca, has seen  
 \* *éprouvé* \* art. *n'a vu*  
 the world but on one side. — *She who* did it was punished.  
*que d'* *côté m.* ind-4 ind-4  
 — *He who* thinks (of nobody but himself), excuses others  
*ne* *qu'à lui-même* *dispenser les autres*  
 from thinking of him. — *He who* renders a service should  
*inf-1* *à* *rendre* *doit*  
 forget it, *he who* receives it, remember it.  
*oublier* *s'en souvenir.*

496. In the very familiar style, *cela* is sometimes contracted into *ça*; as, *Donnez-moi ça.* — (*Acad.*)

## § IV. OF RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

497. The relative pronouns *who*, *which*, and *that*, are expressed by *qui*, when they are the subject or *nomina-tive* of a verb; as,

L'homme *qui* parle.  
 La dame *qui* chante.  
 La chaise *qui* vient.

The man who speaks.  
 The lady who sings.  
 The chaise which comes.

498. *Whom*, *which*, and *that*, are expressed by *que* when they are in the *accusative*, or in other words, the regimen or direct object of a verb; as,

L'homme *que* je vois.  
 Les chevaux *que* je vois.  
 La maison *que* j'ai.

The man whom I see.  
 The horses which I see.  
 The house that or which I have.

499. *Whom* is expressed by *qui*, when it has no antecedent, and means *what person*; as,

*Qui* appelez-vous?  
 Je sais *qui* vous voulez dire.

Whom do you call?  
 I know whom you mean.

Remember that the *e* of *que* is cut off before a vowel; *qui* is never changed.

*Observation.*—Should *qui* or *que* be divided from its antecedent by a noun, and any uncertainty arise as to



which of the two nouns it may relate to, use *lequel*, *laquelle*, instead of *qui*; as,

C'est un effet de la Providence, LEQUEL attire l'admiration.		It is an effect of Providence which draws forth admiration.
---	--	--

Here *lequel* is preferable to *qui*, as a doubt might arise whether it was *effect* or *Providence* to which it related.

## EXERCISE CXCVIII.

Pythagoras was the first among the Greeks *who* took the  
*Pythagore est d'entre ait pris*  
 name of philosopher. — <sup>2</sup>Synonymous <sup>1</sup>terms are words *which*  
*art. synonyme terme des mot*  
 signify the same thing. — (You must have) a man *who* loves  
*signifier Il vous faut n'*  
 (nothing but) truth and you, and *who* (will speak) the truth  
*que vous dise*  
 (in spite of) you. — Here is a lady *whom* you know. — Where  
*malgré Voici connaître*  
 is the horse *that* he has bought? — *Whom* shall we invite?  
*acheter*

500. The relative pronoun *qui* is always of the gender, number, and person of its *antecedent*; that is, of the noun or pronoun to which it relates.

Moi <i>qui</i> suis estimé.		I <i>who</i> am esteemed.
Elle <i>qui</i> est estimée.		She <i>who</i> is esteemed.
Nous <i>qui</i> sommes estimés.		We <i>who</i> are esteemed.
Vous <i>qui</i> riez.		You <i>who</i> laugh.

On the same principle we say: *Vous parlez comme un homme QUI ENTEND la matière* (you speak like a man who understands the subject), and not, *QUI ENTENDEZ la matière*—because the relative *qui* does not represent the pronoun *vous*, but represents the substantive *homme* which immediately precedes *qui*.

REMARK.—An adjective, or a cardinal number, cannot serve as an antecedent to a relative pronoun; so, instead of saying: *Nous étions DEUX qui étaient du même avis* (we were two who were of the same opinion), we must say: *Nous étions deux qui ÉTIIONS du même avis*, thus making *nous*, the subject of the preceding verb, the antecedent of the relative pronoun.



## EXERCISE CC.

The lady you have married is my cousin.—The tea we  
*femme épousée thé m.*

drink is very good.—I will never forget the favour you have  
*prendre oublier grâce f.*

done me.—Have you received the letter I wrote to you?—  
*faite ai écrite*

I think he will come.—Titus spent eighty millions in the  
*croire dépensa — dans*

<sup>2</sup>public <sup>1</sup>games he <sup>2</sup>once <sup>1</sup>gave to the Roman people. —  
*jeu m. une fois peuple m.*

I thank you for the trouble you have taken.  
*de peine f. prise.*

503. WHOSE, of WHOM, of WHICH, are generally expressed in French by *dont*, both in speaking of persons and things; as,

Le ciel, <i>dont</i> le secours est nécessaire.		Heaven, whose assistance is necessary.
L'homme <i>dont</i> il se plaint.		The man of whom he complains.
La maison <i>dont</i> vous parlez.		The house of which you speak.

But, when the relative requires to be separated from its antecedent, instead of *dont*, we use *duquel* and *de laquelle* in speaking of *things* or *animals*; as,

La Tamise, dans le lit *de laquelle*, etc. | *The Thames, in the bed of which*, &c.

In speaking of *persons*, it is generally a matter of indifference whether we use *de qui*, or *duquel*, *de laquelle*; as,

Le prince à la protection DE QUI ou DUQUEL je dois ma fortune.		The prince to whose patronage I owe my fortune.
---	--	--

FROM WHOM is rendered by *de qui*, and not by *dont*.

504. *N.B.* DONT can only be used when the antecedent is expressed; for, in the beginning of an interrogative phrase, *of whom* would be rendered by *de qui*, and *of which* by *duquel*, *de laquelle*; as,

<i>De qui</i> parlez-vous?	Of whom do you speak?
<i>Duquel</i> vous plaignez-vous?	Of which do you complain?

505. WHOSE, used without reference to a noun expressed before, implies the word *person* understood.

If it can be changed into *of whom*, it is expressed by *de qui*; as,

*De qui êtes-vous fils?*

| Whose son are you? i. e. of whom  
are you the son?

If WHOSE can be changed into *to whom*, it is expressed by *à qui*; as,

*A qui est ce chapeau?*

| Whose hat is this? i. e. to whom  
does this hat belong?

### EXERCISE CCI.

There is the gentleman *whose* horse has won the race. —

*Voilà monsieur gagner prix de la course.*

He is a man *of whom* I have a good opinion. — The lady *of whom*  
C\* dame

you are speaking is gone. — Here is the book *of which* you  
ind-1 partir Voici

made me a present. — The daughter of Minos gave a thread to  
ind-4 \* présent. — ind-3 fil m.

Theseus, (by means) *of which* he got out of the labyrinth. —  
Thésée au moyen sortir ind-3 labyrinthe m.

The people *from whom* you expect so many services deceive  
gens attendre tant de — tromper.

you. — *Whose* daughter is she? — *Whose* house is that?

506. When the pronouns WHOM or WHICH come after any preposition (except *of*), *whom* is expressed by *qui*, and *which* by *lequel, laquelle, lesquels, lesquelles*; as,

Le monsieur à QUI j'écris est très riche.

| The gentleman to whom I write is very rich.

Il y a un Dieu, par QUI tout est gouverné.

| There is a God, by whom all things are governed.

Le cheval sur LEQUEL il est.

| The horse on which he is.

La disposition dans LAQUELLE il est.

| The disposition in which he is.

Le bonheur après LEQUEL j'aspire.

| The happiness after which I aspire.

It follows from the foregoing rule, that *qui*, preceded by a preposition, is never said of things, but only of persons. So, we can say: *La personne à qui j'ai donné ma confiance*; but we cannot say: *Les sciences à qui je m'applique*. We must say: *Les sciences auxquelles je m'applique*.

## EXERCISE CCII.

The man, *for whom* you speak, is gone to Paris.—He is a  
*aller C*  
 friend *in whom* I put my confidence. — There are two things  
*en mettre confiance f. y avoir*  
*to which* we must (accustom ourselves) under pain of finding  
*falloir s'accoutumer peine inf-1*  
 life insupportable: the injuries of time and the injustices of  
*injure f.*  
 men. — Regulus, in his expedition against Carthage, had to  
*Régulus ind-3*  
 combat a prodigious serpent, *against which* it was necessary  
*combattre m. falloir ind-3*  
 to employ <sup>2</sup>the <sup>1</sup>whole Roman army.

\*

## § V. OF INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.—See p. 51.

507. The pronoun *ON* is generally followed by a masculine singular; as,

*ON n'est pas toujours HEUREUX.* | People are not always fortunate.

Yet, when it is quite evident that a female is spoken of, *on* should be followed by a *feminine* singular; as,

*ON n'est pas toujours JEUNE et JOLIE.*—(Acad.) | A woman cannot be always young and pretty.

*On* may likewise be followed by an adjective or substantive *plural*, when the sense clearly indicates that this pronoun relates to several persons: the verb, however, remains singular; as,

*ON se battit en désespérés.* | They fought like desperate men.

*Ici on est égaux.* (Inscription sur la porte d'un cimetière.)

508. *On* must be repeated before every verb of which it is the subject or nominative; as,

*ON le loue, on le menace, on le caresse; mais, quoi que l'on fasse, on ne peut en venir à bout.* | They praise, threaten, and caress him; but whatever they do, they cannot master him.

*N. B.*—When *they* is used with reference to a plural noun expressed before, it is rendered in French by *ils* or *elles*, and not by *on*.

Observe also, that although *ON* frequently represents *WE*, *THEY*, *PEOPLE*, which are all of the plural number, yet *ON* is always followed by a verb in the *third person singular*.

509. The English have an indefinite manner of expressing themselves, by means of the *indefinite* pronoun *IT*, which the French express by *ON*, at the same time changing the verb from the passive into the active sense; as,  
*ON* dit. *ON* pense. *ON* rapporte. | *It is said. It is thought. It is reported.*

510. *On* is much used in French as the subject of an active verb, when the passive voice is used in English. So, instead of saying as the English: *I am deceived*;—*I have been told*; the French say: *On me trompe*;—*On m'a dit*; as if it were, *They deceive me*;—*They have told me.*

511. *CHACUN*, *each, every one*. This pronoun is always singular, but when preceded by a plural, it is sometimes followed by *son, sa, ses*, and sometimes by *leur, leurs*.

*Chacun* takes *son, sa, ses*, when it is placed after the direct regimen, or when the verb has no regimen of that nature; as,

Ils ont apporté leurs offrandes, <i>chacun</i> selon ses moyens.		<i>They have brought their offerings,</i> <i>every one according to his means.</i>
Les deux rois se sont retirés, <i>chacun</i> dans sa tente.		<i>The two kings have retired, each</i> <i>to his tent.</i>
Ils ont opiné, <i>chacun</i> à son tour.		<i>They voted, each in his turn.</i>

*Chacun* takes *leur, leurs*, when it is placed before the direct regimen; as,

Ils ont apporté, <i>chacun, leur</i> offrande.		<i>Each of them has brought his of-</i> <i>fering.</i>
Ils ont donné, <i>chacun, leur</i> avis.		<i>Each of them gave his opinion.</i>

### EXERCISE CCIII.

When a woman is handsome, she (is not ignorant of it).—  
*Quand* \* *on* *on* *ne l'ignore pas.*  
 We are not slaves, to endure such ill treatment.—In  
*On* *des* *pour endurer de si mauvais* pl.  
 that house, *they* laugh, play, dance, and sing.—*It is believed*  
*rire* *danser* \*  
 that peace (will be made) this year. — *We have been much*  
*se fera* *année f.* *bien*  
 deceived.—*He is said* to have succeeded.—Return those medals,  
*trompés.* *réussi.* *Remettre médaille f.*  
*each* to its place. — <sup>2</sup>*Each* <sup>1</sup>(of them has fulfilled) *his* duty.  
*Ils ont rempli*

## CHAPTER V.

## OF THE VERB.

## § 1. AGREEMENT of the VERB with its SUBJECT or NOMINATIVE.

512. GENERAL RULE.—A verb must agree with its subject in number and person; as,

Nous lisons ; vous lisez.		We read ; you read.	[asleep.
La haine veille, et l'amitié s'endort.		Hatred is awake, and friendship is	

513. Observation.—When a verb has more than one subject, it is put in the plural; as,

Mon frère et lui parlent français. | *My brother and he speak French.*

And, should the subjects be of different persons, the verb must agree with the first person in preference to the other two, and with the second rather than with the third. In this case, the pronoun *nous* (not expressed in English) is *generally*† placed before the verb, if one of the subjects is in the *first* person; and, the pronoun *vous*† if the *second* person is used with the *third*, without a *first* person; as,

Vous et moi, NOUS avons fait notre devoir. ( <i>Acad.</i> )		<i>You and I, have done our duty.</i>
J'ai appris que vous et votre frère vous partiez bientôt. ( <i>Ibid.</i> )		<i>I have heard that you and your brother were soon to set out.</i>

† Observe, I say *generally*, and not *always*, as most grammarians do; for *nous* or *vous* may sometimes be understood, as in this sentence of *Fénélon*: *Narbal et moi ADMIRIONS la bonté des dieux.* Narbal and I were admiring the goodness of the gods.

## EXERCISE CCIV.

<sup>2</sup>Riches <sup>1</sup>often attract friends, and poverty keeps them  
richesses pl. attirer art. éloigner  
away.—Religion watches over <sup>2</sup>secret <sup>1</sup>crimes; the laws watch  
\* — f. veiller — m.

over <sup>2</sup>public <sup>1</sup>crimes.—Virgil, Horace, and Tibullus *were* friends.  
—  
*Tibulle* ind-2

*Tibulle* ind-2

—He and she *will go* to the country with my father.—  
campagne f.

*campagne* f.

You, your cousin, and I, *have* each a <sup>2</sup>different <sup>1</sup>opinion.—  
114 — f.

114

—f.

You and he *shall accompany* me to the botanical garden.  
*accompagner*

*accompagner*

**EXCEPTION.**

514. When two subjects singular are joined by the conjunction *ou* (or, either), the verb is put in the singular ; as,

Jean OU Jacques le FERA. | *John or James will do it.*

When, however, the words joined by *ou* are of different persons, usage requires the verb to be in the plural, and that it should agree with the person that has priority, that is, with the first person rather than with the other two, and with the second rather than with the third; as,

Vous ou moi PARLERONS. | *You or I shall speak.*

**Vous ou votre frère VIENDREZ.**      *You or your brother will come.*

## REMARKS.

515. (1.) As the words *l'un et l'autre* (both) express plurality, the verb should be put in the plural; as,

L'un et l'autre SONT venus. | *Both are come.*

L'un et l'autre *ont* promis.—(*Racine.*)

L'un et l'autre *ont* le cerveau troublé.—(Boileau.)

516. (2.) *Ni l'un ni l'autre* (neither, neither the one nor the other), and all subjects joined together by *ni* repeated, require also the verb in the plural; as,

J'ai lu vos deux discours : ni l'un  
ni l'autre ne SONT bons.

ni l'autre ne SONT bons.

ther the one nor the other is good.

Ni l'or ni la grandeur ne nous *rendent* heureux.—(La Fontaine.)

*Exception.*—When one of the words united by *ni* can alone perform the action expressed by the verb, the verb is then put in the singular; as,

NI l'un NI l'autre n'OBTIENDRA  
le prix.

le prix.

Neither the one nor the other will obtain the prize.

*obtain the prize.*

NI M. le Duc, NI M. le Comte  
ne SERA nommé ambassadeur  
à Saint-Pétersbourg.

ne SERA nommé ambassadeur  
à Saint-Petersbourg.

à Saint-Petersbourg.

*Neither the Duke nor the Count  
will be appointed ambassador to  
St.-Petersburg.*

*will be appointed ambassador to St.-Petersburg.*

*St.-Petersburg.*

☞ Observe that *Ni*, and *Ni l'un ni l'autre* take NE before a verb.



## EXERCISE CCV.

It was either Pitt or Fox who said that.—*Either* mildness,  
 C<sup>o</sup> ind-1 \* ind-4 *douceur* f.  
 or force will do it.—I have seen A. and B., *either* the one or the  
 —f. 273  
 other will write to you.—It was either he or I that did that.—  
 ind-7 ind-1 \* ind-4  
 I send you my two servants, both are honest.—*Neither* has  
*domestique* *honnête*  
 done his duty.—*Neither* of them shall marry my daughter.  
*devoir* m. \* \* *épouser*

517. We have already seen (page 17) that there are two sorts of collective nouns: the *collective general*, and the *collective partitive*.—The *collective general* are those which express the totality of the persons or things of which we speak; as, *l'armée*, the army; *la foule*, the crowd; or a determinate number of those same persons or things; as, *la moitié*, the half.—The *collective partitive* are those which express only a partial number; as, *une quantité*, a quantity, *une foule*, a crowd.

*La troupe de voleurs s'est introduite*, the gang of thieves got in:—*Une troupe de voleurs se sont introduits*, a gang of thieves got in. In the first sentence *troupe* is a *collective general*; in the second it is a *collective partitive*.

518. RULE I. When a *collective general* is followed by the preposition *de* (of) and a noun, the adjective, pronoun, participle, and verb, agree with the *collective general*; as,

<p> <i>L'armée</i> des infidèles FUT entière-                      ment détruite.                      Il a fourni LE NOMBRE d'exem-                      plaires CONVENU.—(Acad.)                 </p>	<p>                     The army of the infidels was en-                      tirely destroyed.                      He has furnished the number of                      copies agreed upon.                 </p>
---	---

519. RULE II. When a *collective partitive* is followed by the preposition *de* (of) and a noun, the adjective, pronoun, participle, and verb, agree with the last noun, because

it expresses the principal idea, and more particularly fixes the attention; as,

LA PLUPART du monde le CROIT.

*Most people believe it.*

LA PLUPART des hommes le  
PENSENT.

*Most men think so.*

UN grand NOMBRE d'ennemis  
PARURENT.

*A great many enemies appeared.*

Il trouva UNE PARTIE des abricots  
mangés, UNE PARTIE des liqueurs  
BUES.

*He found a part of the apricots  
eaten, a part of the liquors  
drunk.*

520. *Observations.*—(1.) Adverbs of quantity, as *peu*, few; *beaucoup*, many; *assez*, enough; *plus*, more; *trop*, too many, etc. are considered as collectives partitive. Consequently we write:—

Peu de gens négligent leurs  
intérêts.

*Few people neglect their in-  
terests.*

Beaucoup de monde était à la  
promenade.

*Many people were walking.*

521. (2.) *Peu*, *beaucoup*, and *la plupart*, used by themselves, require the verb in the plural; as,

Le sénat fut partagé, LA PLUPART  
VOULAIENT que...

*The senate was divided, the major-  
ity wished...*

The noun which here regulates the agreement of the verb is understood: *La plupart des SÉNATEURS voulaient que*, etc.; the majority of the SENATORS wished...

## EXERCISE CCVI.

It was with James the First, that began that series of  
C° ind-1 à 395 que ind-1 chaîne f.  
misfortunes which gave to the house of Stuart the title of  
malheur ind-4 titre m.  
unfortunate. — A troop of nymphs, crowned with flowers,  
infortuné troupe f. nymphe f. de  
swam behind her car. — Few men reason, and all wish to  
ind-2 derrière char m. raisonner vouloir \*  
decide. — Most were of that opinion. — An infinite number of  
ind-3 avis m.  
birds made those groves resound with their sweet songs.  
2 3 1 de chant m. s.

*Additional Remarks upon the General Rule.*

522. (1.) When the words forming the subject are synonymous, the verb agrees, in French, with the last noun; as,

Son courage, son intrépidité *étonne* les plus braves.—(Domergue.)

☞ Synonymous nouns must never be joined, in French, by the conjunction *et*.

523. (2.) The verb agrees also with the last noun only, although the nouns be not synonymous, if we dwell more upon the last than upon the others, either because it explains the preceding nouns—is more energetic, or is of such moment that the others are forgotten; as,

Le fer, le bandeau, la flamme *est* toute prête.—(Racine.)

Le Pérou, le Potose, Alzire *est* sa conquête.—(Voltaire.)

524. (3.) The verb is put in the singular, although preceded by plurals, when there is an expression which sums up all the nouns into one, such as *tout*, *rien*, *personne*, *nul*, *chacun*; or when the conjunction *mais* is placed before the last noun, and this noun is in the singular; as,

Paroles et regards, *tout est* charme dans vous.—(La Fontaine.)

Crainte, périls, *rien* ne m'a retenu.—(Racine.)

Non-seulement toutes ses richesses, *mais* toute sa vertu *s'évanouit*.

Words and looks, everything is a charm in you.

Neither fear nor dangers, nothing could restrain me.

Not only all his riches, but all his virtue vanished.

525. (4.) When two subjects are joined by the following and similar conjunctions, *comme*, *de même que*, *ainsi que*, *aussi bien que*, the verb agrees with the first subject, the second being the subject of a verb understood; as,

Cette bataille, *comme* tant d'autres, ne *décida* de rien.—(Voltaire.)

Aristophane, *aussi bien que* Ménandre, *charma*it les Grecs.

That battle, like so many others, decided nothing.

Aristophanes, as well as Menander, delighted the Greeks.

It is as if it were :

Cette bataille ne *décida* de rien, *comme* tant d'autres batailles ne *décidèrent* de rien.

Aristophane *charma*it les Grecs, *aussi bien que* Ménandre *charma*it les Grecs.

## EXERCISE CCVII.

Vanity, says Pascal, is so rooted in the <sup>ancré</sup> human <sup>de l'homme</sup> heart, that  
 a scullion, a porter even boasts, and wishes to have  
*marmiton* *crocheteur* \* *se vanter* *vouloir* \*  
 his admirers. — Games, conversation, shows, nothing  
*admirateur* 404 *jeu* *spectacle*  
 diverts her. — The strength of the mind, like that of the  
*ne distraire* *force f.* *âme f.*  
 body, is the fruit of temperance. — Alcibiades, as well as  
*art.* *Alcibiade*  
 Plato, was among the disciples of Socrates.  
*au nombre de*

## § II. PLACE OF THE SUBJECT OF THE VERB.

526. RULE.—The subject or nominative is generally placed *before* the verb, in French, as in English; as,

<i>Le maître</i> enseigne, et <i>l'écuyer</i>		The master <i>teaches</i> , and the scholar
apprend.		<i>learns.</i>
<i>Nous</i> irons vous voir.		We <i>shall come and see you.</i>

527. There are a few cases in which the subject is placed *after* the verb; they are the following:—

1st, When, in any interrogative sentence, the subject is a *pronoun*; as,

Quand-viendra-t-elle?		When will she come?
-----------------------	--	---------------------

But if, in asking a question, the subject of the verb is a *noun*, the noun is placed *before* the verb; and to show that a question is asked, one of the pronouns, *il*, *elle*, *ils*, *elles*, is placed immediately *after* the verb; as,

Votre frère parle-t-il français?		Does your brother speak French?
Vos sœurs sont-elles arrivées?		Have your sisters arrived?

*Remark.*—When an interrogative sentence begins with *que*, *à quoi*, *où*, we generally place the noun subject *after* the verb, without adding a pronoun to it; as,

<i>Que</i> fait votre frère?		What is your brother doing?
<i>À quoi</i> s'occupe votre sœur?		What is your sister busy with?
<i>Où</i> demeure votre oncle?		Where does your uncle live?

(See the *Preliminary Remarks* on Interrogation, p. 87.)

2*d*, When, as in English, we quote the words of another person ; as,

Que ferai-je ? dit *Télémaque*. | *What shall I do ?* said *Telemachus*.

3*d*, When the subjunctive mood is used without any conjunction being expressed ; as,

Fasse LE CIEL que vous soyez | *Heaven grant you may be happy !*  
heureux !

Dussé-JE y périr, j'irai. | *Should I perish there, I will go.*

This turn of expression has more vivacity than if we had said : *Je souhaite QUE le ciel fasse que vous soyez heureux. QUOIQUE je dusse y périr, j'irai.*

4*th*, When the sentence begins with a unipersonal (or impersonal) verb, or with one of these words, AINSI, *thus*, so ; TEL, *such* ; as,

Il est arrivé d'heureux change- | *Happy changes have taken place.*  
ments.

Ainsi finit cette tragédie. | *Thus ended that tragedy.*

Tel fut le résultat de sa folie. | *Such was the result of his folly.*

(See Rule III, p. 239.)

5*th*, When the subject is followed by several words which are dependent upon it ; as in this phrase of *Fénélon* :—

Là coulent mille RUISSEAUX qui dis- | *There flow a thousand rivulets that*  
tribuent partout une eau claire. | *carry everywhere a clear water.*

This transposition of the subject is sometimes indispensable, and sometimes only the effect of taste.

### EXERCISE CCVIII.

The violet is the emblem of modesty.—Are *they* gone ?  
*violette f.* *emblème m.* *partir*

Does your *cousin* often come to see you ?—Is your governess  
*venir*

English or French ?—*What* will posterity think ?—You are  
*ind-7* *avoir*

wrong, said her father to her. — *May* you succeed in your  
*tort* *Pouvoir* *réussir*

projects !—<sup>2</sup>(Great misfortunes) <sup>1</sup>(have happened).—So goes the  
*malheur m.*

world. — *Such* was his advice.—On one side was seen a river  
*monde m.* *avis m.* *D'* *on ind-2*

(from which) *sprung* *islands* lined with lime-trees in bloom.  
*où* *se former* *bordé de* *tilleul* *fleurir*

## § III. GOVERNMENT OF VERBS.

528. The *object*, *regimen*, or *complement* of a verb, is a word which completes the idea begun by the verb.

529. There are two sorts of regimens, the one called *direct*, the other *indirect*.

530. The *direct regimen* denotes the immediate object of the action of the verb, without the help of any preposition, and answers to the question *qui?* (whom?) for persons, and *quoi?* (what?) for things; as, *J'aime mon père*, I love my father. *J'aime, QUI? mon père.*—*Il aime l'étude*, he likes study. *Il aime, QUOI? l'étude.* *Mon père* and *l'étude* then are the direct regimens of the verb *aimer*, since they complete, without the help of any preposition, the idea begun by the verb.

531. The *indirect regimen* completes, in an *indirect* manner, the idea begun by the verb; that is, it completes it only by means of a preposition expressed or understood; it answers to the question *à qui?* *de qui?* *pour qui?* *par qui*, etc., for persons; and *à quoi?* *pour quoi?* *de quoi?* etc., for things; as, *Il parle à son frère*, he speaks to his brother. *Il parle, à QUI? à son frère.* *À son frère* is then the indirect regimen of *parler*, and completes the action expressed by that verb, by means of the preposition *à*.

532. The *direct regimen* corresponds to the *accusative*; the *indirect regimen* to the *genitive*, *dative*, or *ablative* of the Latin.

533. RULE I. When a verb has two regimens, the one direct and the other indirect, the shorter must be placed first; as,

Les hypocrites parent le vice des dehors de la vertu.

Les hypocrites parent des dehors de la vertu les vices les plus honteux et les plus décriés.

*Hypocrites deck vice with the exterior of virtue.*

*Hypocrites deck with the exterior of virtue the most shameful and odious vices.*

534. RULE II. If the regimens are of equal length, the direct regimen must be placed first; as,

L'ambition sacrifie le présent à l'avenir, mais la volupté sacrifie l'avenir au présent.		Ambition sacrifices the present to the future, but pleasure sacrifices the future to the present.
--	--	---

## EXERCISE CCIX.

He has sent a circular to all his correspondents. — He  
*circulatre f.* *correspondant m.*

devotes his talents to the defence of <sup>2</sup>public <sup>1</sup>liberty. — Give  
*consacrer* *pl.*

to study all the time that you can.—I delivered the letter  
*étude f.* *remettre ind-4*

to the tutor of the prince. — Show your governess the  
*précepteur* *à*  
 letter that you have written.—I have given a ring to my sister.—  
*f.*

Alexander, in dying, said that he left his empire to the most  
*ind-3* *ind-2*

worthy. — Have you lent my brother any money?

535. RULE III. *Passive* verbs require *de* or *par* before the noun or pronoun which they govern.

536. *De* is used, when the verb expresses an action wholly of the mind; as,

L'honnête homme est estimé, même de ceux qui n'ont pas de probité.		An honest man is esteemed, even by those who have no probity.
--	--	---

537. *Par* is required, when the *bodily faculties* participate in the action; as,

Carthage fut détruite PAR les Romains.		Carthage was destroyed by the Romans.
--	--	---------------------------------------

REMARK.—*Par* is also used to avoid the repetition of *de* in the same sentence; as, *Son ouvrage a été censuré d'une manière sévère PAR les critiques.*

Remember that it is a GENERAL RULE to make every past participle used with the verb *être*, agree in gender and number with the subject of that verb.

## EXERCISE CCX.

Your brother is honoured and respected *by* all who know  
*honorer* *ceux*  
 him.—He is loved *by* all his masters.— Misers are tormented  
*371 avare*  
*with* the fear of losing what they have.— Bombs  
*crainte f. perdre inf-1 ce qu'* *371 bombe f.*  
 were invented *by* Gallen, a bishop of Munster, about the  
*ind-3* *399* *vers*  
 middle of the 16th century. — The city of Troy was  
*ville f.* *ind-3*  
 taken, plundered, and destroyed *by* the Greeks, 1184 years  
*saccager détruire*  
 B. C. This event has been celebrated *by* the  
*avant J.-C. événement m.*  
 two greatest poets of Greece and Italy.  
*art.* *31*

538. The preposition *to*, before a second verb in the infinitive, is expressed in French by *à*, *de*, or *pour*, but not indiscriminately. Sometimes also there is no preposition at all in French.

## EXAMPLES.

J'aime à lire.	<i>I like to read.</i>
Je crains de tomber.	<i>I fear to fall.</i>
Je le fais pour vous obliger.	<i>I do it to oblige you.</i>
Ou laissez-moi périr, ou laissez-moi régner.—(Corneille.)	<i>Either allow me to perish, or allow me to reign.</i>

It is important to observe, that when in French a preposition is required before an infinitive, it is the foregoing verb, noun, or adjective that determines which is to be used, according as that verb, noun, or adjective governs one or another preposition. This government must therefore be ascertained. This is one of the principal difficulties of the French language, and, in order to remove it, we give two Lists of Verbs with the prepositions that they respectively govern, and a third List of those Verbs that require no preposition.



539. *N.B.* After prepositions,\* the French use the present infinitive, and not the present participle; as,

Amusez-vous à lire.  
Il m'empêche de le faire.

*Amuse yourself with reading.*  
*He hinders me from doing it.*

The only exception is *EN*; as,

Nous causerons *en* marchant.  
Il donna cet ordre *en* partant.

*We shall talk as we walk.*  
*He gave that order in going away.*

540. LIST I. *Verbs which require the preposition À before the infinitive which follows them.*

s'Abaisser à, to stoop to.  
aboutir à, to end in, tend to.  
s'accorder à, to agree in.  
accoutumer à, to accustom to.  
aider à, to help to, assist in.  
aimer à, to like to. [with.  
s'amuser à, to amuse oneself  
animer à, to excite to.  
s'appliquer à, to apply to.  
apprendre à, to learn to.  
s'apprêter à, to get ready to.  
aspirer à, to aspire to.  
s'attendre à, to expect to.  
autoriser à, to authorise to.  
avoir à, to have to.  
Balancer à, to hesitate to.  
Chercher à, to seek to.  
commencer à, † to begin to.  
condamner à, to condemn to.  
condescendre à, to condescend to.  
consentir à, to consent to.  
consister à, to consist in.  
continuer à, de, ‡ to continue to.  
contraindre à, de, || to compel to.  
contribuer à, to contribute to.

Demander à, de, ‡ to ask to.  
destiner à, to destine to.  
se déterminer à, to resolve upon.  
disposer à, to dispose to.  
donner à, to give to.  
s'Efforcer à, de, ‡ (physical) to  
endeavour to.  
employer à, to employ to, use to.  
s'empreser à, de, ‡ to be eager to.  
encourager à, to encourage to.  
engager à, to induce to.  
enhardir à, to embolden to.  
enseigner à, to teach to.  
s'étudier à, to study to.  
exceller à, to excel in.  
exciter à, to excite to.  
exercer à, to exercise in.  
exhorter à, to exhort to.  
exposer à, to expose to.  
se Fatiguer à, to get tired with.  
forcer à, de, || to force to, compel  
Gagner à, to gain by. [to.  
Habituier à, to accustom to.  
haïr à, to hate to.  
se hasarder à, to venture to.

\* To ascertain which preposition to use, consult the Lists.

† Some writers occasionally use *de*, and establish a shade of difference between *commencer à* and *commencer de*; but, according to the latest decisions of the *French Academy*, *à* may be properly used in all cases.

‡ As it sounds best, i. e. *de* to avoid several *à*, and *à* to avoid several *de*.

|| *À* or *de*, as it sounds best in the *active* sense, but always *de* in the *passive*.

hésiter à,	to hesitate to.	persister à,	to persist in.
Inviter à,	to invite to.	se plaisir à,	to delight in.
se Mettre à,	to set about to, be-	préparer à,	to prepare to.
montrer à,	to show to. [gin to.	provoquer à,	to incite to. [to.
Obliger à, de,†	to oblige to.	Recommencer à,	to begin again
s'obstiner à,	to persist in.	renoncer à,	to renounce to.
s'offrir à,	to offer to.	se résoudre à,	to resolve to.
oublier à,	to forget how.	réussir à,	to succeed to, in.
Parvenir à,	to succeed in.	Servir à,	to serve to.
passer à,	to spend in.	songer à,	to think of.
penser à,	to think of.	Tâcher à,	to aim at.
perdre à,	to lose in.	tendre à,	to tend to.
persévérer à,	to persevere in.	Viser à,	to aim at.

## EXERCISE CCXI.

I shall not stoop to justify myself.—He likes to be flattered.  
*ne point se justifier.*

—He amuses himself with making <sup>2</sup>chemical <sup>1</sup>experiments.  
*32 de chimie expérience*

—I expect to meet with many difficulties.—I have to thank  
*\* bien des*

you.—I begin to understand.—Liberality consists less in giving  
*comprendre.*

much, than in giving seasonably.—He is asking to come in.—  
*beaucoup à propos. entrer.*

They encouraged me to continue.—The example of his ancestors  
*ind-3 ancêtre*

excites him to distinguish himself. — I offer to serve you.  
*se distinguer.*

541. LIST II. Verbs which require the preposition DE  
 before the infinitive which follows them.

s'Abstenir de,	to abstain from.	appréhender de,	to fear to.
accuser de,	to accuse of.	avertir de,	to warn to.
achever de,	to finish to.	s'aviser de,	to bethink of.
affecter de,	to affect to.	Blâmer de,	to blame for.
s'affliger de,	to be grieved at.	brûler de,	to be anxious to.
ambitionner de,	to be ambitious to.	Cesser de,	to cease to.

† A or de, as it sounds best; but with the meaning of doing a service, or in a passive sense, always de.

*charger de*, to charge to.  
*commander de*, to command to.  
*conjuré de*, to conjure to.  
*conseiller de*, to advise to.  
*se contenter de*, to be content  
*convenir de*, to agree to. [with.  
*craindre de*, to fear to.  
*Dédaigner de*, to disdain to.  
*défendre de*, to forbid to.  
*défier de*, to defy to.  
*se dépêcher de*, to make haste to.  
*désespérer de*, to despair to, of.  
*différer de*, to defer to, to de-  
*dire de*, to tell to. [lay to.  
*discontinuer de*, to discontinue  
*disconvenir de*, to disown to. [to.  
*dispenser de*, to dispense with.  
*dissuader de*, to dissuade from.  
*Écrire de*, to write to. [vour to.  
*s'efforcer de*, (moral) to endeavor  
*empêcher de*, to prevent to.  
*enrager de*, to be enraged to.  
*entreprendre de*, to undertake  
*essayer de*, to try to. [to.  
*s'étonner de*, to be astonished  
*éviter de*, to avoid to. [at.  
*excuser de*, to excuse for.  
*exempter de*, to exempt from.  
*Feindre de*, to feign to.  
*féliciter de*, to congratulate  
*finir de*, to finish to. [upon.  
*se flatter de*, to flatter oneself to.  
*frémir de*, to shudder to.  
*se Garder de*, to take care not to.  
*gémir de*, to lament to.  
*se glorifier de*, to glory in.  
*gronder de*, to scold for.  
*se Hâter de*, to hasten to.

*Jurer de*, to swear to.  
*Manquer de*, to fail to.  
*menacer de*, to threaten to.  
*mériter de*, to deserve to.  
*Négliger de*, to neglect to.  
*Offrir de*, to offer to.  
*omettre de*, to omit to.  
*ordonner de*, to order to.  
*oublier de*, to forget to.  
*Pardonner de*, to forgive for.  
*permettre de*, to permit to.  
*persuader de*, to persuade to.  
*se piquer de*, to pretend to.  
*plaindre de*, to pity to, for.  
*prescrire de*, to prescribe to.  
*presser de*, to press to, urge to.  
*prier de*, to request to.  
*promettre de*, to promise to.  
*proposer de*, to propose to.  
*Recommander de*, to recommend  
*refuser de*, to refuse to. [to.  
*regretter de*, to regret to.  
*se réjouir de*, to rejoice to.  
*remercier de*, to thank for.  
*se repentir de*, to repent of, to.  
*reprocher de*, to reproach for.  
*résoudre de*, to resolve to.  
*rire de*, to laugh at.  
*risquer de*, to run the risk to.  
*rougir de*, to blush to.  
*Sommer de*, to summon to.  
*soupçonner de*, to suspect to.  
*se souvenir de*, to remember to.  
*suggérer de*, to suggest to.  
*supplier de*, to entreat to.  
*Tâcher de*, to endeavour to.  
*tenter de*, to attempt to.  
*se Vanter de*, to boast of.

542. REMARK.—Verbs generally require, before a noun, the same preposition that they require before an infinitive; as,

Il faut *accoutumer* les enfants à  
*obéir*—à l'obéissance.

Je l'accuse DE *négliger* ses études.  
 Je l'accuse DE *négligence*.

We must *accustom* children to obey  
 —to obedience.

I accuse him OF *neglecting* his stu-  
 dies. I accuse him OF *negligence*.

## EXERCISE CCXII.

*Abstain from injuring* your enemies.—The courtiers of Darius  
*nuire à* *sing.* *courtisan* —  
*accused* Daniel of having violated the laws of the Persians.—  
*ind-2* — *violer* *Perse*  
 Your brother *will* never *cease to* think of you.—Zerbinette has  
*ind-7*  
*charged me to* come and tell you that . . —God *commands us to*  
*\* que . .*  
 love him. — I *would advise* you to speak to him. — Reason  
*conseiller*  
*forbids us to* commit an injustice. — Who *told* you to do it?  
 — f. *ind-4*  
 — He has *undertaken to* translate Homer and Virgil.  
*traduire*

## EXERCISE CCXIII.

I *shall not fail to* do what you wish. — I *ordered* him to  
*ce que* *vouloir* *ind-4*  
 go and see him. — You *forgot to* come this morning. — They  
*\* ind-4* *matin m.* *On*  
 have *persuaded* him to marry. — I *promise to* observe what  
*lui se marier.*  
 the law orders me.—We should *blush to* commit faults,  
*ordonner Il faut commettre 32*  
 but not to acknowledge them.—I will *endeavour to* satisfy you.  
*non avouer tâcher*  
 —*Make haste to* breakfast.—I *congratulate myself on* having  
*me*  
 made so good a choice. — The king *orders me to* set out with  
*choix m.* *partir*  
 the fleet.—*Recommend* to your children to shun vice, to love  
*faire m.*  
 virtue.—General Desaix *contributed to* the gaining of the  
*ind-3* *gain m.*  
 battle of Marengo. — I *thank you for* your kindness.  
*bataille f.* *bonté f.*

543. LIST III. *Verbs which require no preposition in French before the infinitive which follows them, whether a preposition be used in English or not.*

Aimer mieux,*	to like better.	{ J'aime mieux voir mon fils. (J. B. Rousseau.)
Aller,	to go.	Le Rhin ira grossir la Loire. (Boil.)
Compter,	to intend.	Il compte partir demain. (Acad.)
Croire,	to think.	Elle croyait servir l'état. (Bossuet.)
Daigner,	to deign.	Daignez leur parler. (Boileau.)
Devoir,	to owe.	{ Le jour qui doit nous rendre heureux. (L. Racine.)
Entendre,	to hear.	J'en ai entendu parler. (Acad.)
Envoyer,	to send.	Envoyez demander. (Ib.)
Espérer,†	to hope.	{ Il espère revivre en sa postérité. (Racine.)
Faire,	to make, to cause.	Je le fis nommer chef. (Le même.)
Falloir,	to be necessary.	Il faut voir. (Acad.)
s'Imaginer,	to fancy.	Il s' imagine être un grand docteur. (Ib.)
Laisser,	to leave, to let.	Il laisse opprimer l'innocence. (Rac.)
Oser,	to dare.	{ Qui suis-je pour oser murmurer? (L. Racine.)
Paraître,	to appear.	Il paraît être satisfait. (Acad.)
Pouvoir,	to be able.	{ Rien ne peut prospérer sur des terres ingrates. (L. Racine.)
Prétendre,	to pretend.	Il prétend donner la loi. (Acad.)
Savoir,	to know.	Je sais lire et écrire. (Molière.)
Sembler,	to seem.	{ L'ennui semble dire aux humains . . . (Voltaire.)
Souhaiter,‡	to wish.	{ Je souhaiterais pouvoir vous obliger. (Acad.)
Valoir mieux,*	to be better.	Il vaut mieux attendre un peu. (Ibid.)
Venir,§	to come.	Je viens adorer l'Éternel. (Racine.)
Voir,	to see.	Il n'aime pas à voir souffrir. (Acad.)
Vouloir,	to be willing.	{ Voulez-vous du public mériter les amours? Sans cesse en écrivant variez vos discours. (Boil.)

\* *Aimer mieux; valoir mieux*, followed by two verbs in the infinitive, require *DE* before the second infinitive; *J'aimerais mieux mourir, que DE faire une si mauvaise action.*—*Il y a beaucoup d'occasions où il vaut mieux se taire que DE parler.*

† *Espérer*, being in the present infinitive, and followed by another verb also in the present infinitive, requires *DE*: *Peut-on espérer de vous revoir?*

‡ It is also used with *DE*: *Je souhaite DE vous voir.*—(Racine.)

§ *Venir*, in the sense of *to be just, to have just*, requires *de* before the next infinitive; when used for *to happen*, it requires *à*; as,

Il vient de sortir.  
S'il venait à mourir.

He has just gone out.  
If he should happen to die.

## EXERCISE CCXIV.

I like better *vous* to pardon than to punish you.—She is going to sing.—When do you intend to go? — A man of honour ought to *Quand partir ind-1* keep his word. — I hope to see you often.—I will show you *parole f. faire voir* all the curiosities of the town. — He appeared to hesitate, but *curiosité f. ind-2* we encouraged him. — My sister wishes very much to go to *ind-3* France.—It is better to work than to beg. — Caesar ordered *mendier. ind-3* Labienus to come and join him. — She will not stay. *à \* rester.*

## General Rule for the use of POUR.

544. To, before an INFINITIVE, is expressed by POUR, when in order to, is either expressed or understood in English; as,

Je suis venu pour le complimenter. | I came in order to congratulate him.  
Je vais à la campagne pour chasser. | I am going into the country to shoot.

The English present participle, preceded by the preposition FOR, explaining the motive of an action, is also expressed in French by the INFINITIVE with POUR; as,

Il a été chassé POUR avoir menti. | He was expelled FOR telling lies.

## EXERCISE CCXV.

They <sup>2</sup>all <sup>1</sup>agree to deceive me.—He will do anything to *s'accorder tout* oblige you.—I was going to write to you to ask a favour of *grâce f. \** you.—I want money to buy a horse.—I have not <sup>2</sup>money *ai besoin d'* enough to buy one.—I shall do it in order not to displease you. *en déplaire* —I have done all (I could) to gain his friendship.—He was *mon possible ind-3* banished for life for having robbed on the highway. *bannir à perpétuité voler grand chemin.*

## § IV. MOODS AND TENSES.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

545. The INDICATIVE mood simply declares a thing; as, *Elle chante bien*, she sings well; or it asks a question; as, *chante-t-elle bien?* does she sing well? This mood has eight tenses—the *present*, the *imperfect*, the *preterite definite*, the *preterite indefinite*, the *preterite anterior*, the *pluperfect*, the *future absolute* (or *simple*), and the *future anterior*.

546. The PRESENT tense expresses something doing or existing at the present time; as, *J'écris*, I am writing; *Nous sommes*, we are. It is also used to express a *habit* or *custom*; as, *Il fume*, he smokes.

547. In historical narration, the *present* tense is used for the *past*, in order to awaken the attention, and make the thing, as it were, present; as,

César quitte la Gaule, passe le Rubicon, et entre en Italie avec cinq mille hommes.	César leaves Gaul, crosses the Rubicon, and enters Italy with five thousand men.
---	--

548. The *present* is also sometimes used to express a *future* near at hand; as,

Je suis de retour dans un moment. Où ALLEZ-VOUS ce soir?	I shall be back in a moment. Where are you going this evening?
---	---

549. *N.B.* In English there are *three* different ways of expressing the PRESENT: *I speak, I do speak, I am speaking*; but in French there is only one way, *Je parle*. There is likewise but one expression in French for any other tense, when the verb *to be* is used with the present participle; thus, *I shall be writing*, must be rendered by *j'écrirai*, and *I should be doing* by *je ferais*. The verb which is in the present participle is thus put in the tense expressed by the auxiliary *to be*.

## EXERCISE CCXVI.

My sister *is* in her room, where she *is reading* the celebrated  
discourse of Bossuet on Universal History. — Everybody  
*discours m.* art. 2 1

*thinks* that either <sup>3</sup>your <sup>4</sup>brother <sup>2</sup>or <sup>1</sup>you have written that song.  
*penser* \*

— It <sup>2</sup>seldom <sup>1</sup>rains in Egypt. — Seamen *smoke* a great deal. —  
*en marin beaucoup.*

The battle *begins*, and immediately a cloud of arrows *darkens*  
*aussitôt nuée f. trait m. obscurcir*  
 the air, and *covers* the combatants. — I *shall be* with you  
*à*

in a minute. — I *set out* to-morrow for the country.  
*la partir*

550. The IMPERFECT (*je parlais*, I was speaking, I spoke, I did speak, I used to speak) expresses a thing having been done at the moment that another took place; as,

Je PENSais à vous, quand vous êtes entré.	I was thinking of you, when you came in.
--	---

551. The *Imperfect* is also used when we wish to denote that the action of which we speak was *habitual*, or has been *reiterated*; as,

Quand j'étais à Paris, je me PRO- MENAIS ordinairement dans les Champs Élysées.	When I was in Paris, I generally walked in the Champs Élysées.
J'y RENCONTRAIS souvent des Anglais.	I often met Englishmen there.

552. Finally, the *Imperfect* is used in describing the *qualities* of persons or things, the *state*, *place*, and *disposition* in which they were in a *time past*, but without fixing the time of its duration; as,

Alfred Était un grand roi.	Alfred was a great king.
Carthage Était sur le bord de la mer.	Carthage was on the sea-coast.

553. *Note*.—Suppose you have to translate into French, *I spoke, I wrote*, and you are in doubt whether to use the Imperfect or Preterite, see whether you can turn the expression into, *I used to speak, I used to write*, or into, *I was speaking, I was writing*—if you can, the *Imperfect* is your tense. This rule is infallible.

## EXERCISE CCXVII.

Montezuma *reigned* over the Mexicans, when Fernando  
*régnait* *lorsque* Fernand-  
 Cortez attacked Mexico.—Socrates, wishing to harden himself,  
*indurcissait* *s'endurcissait*



went barefoot in the depth of winter. — In <sup>2</sup>ancient <sup>1</sup>times,  
 423 *plus fort* *ancien*

those who *were* taken in war *lost* their liberty and *became* slaves.  
*à devenir*

—Among the Romans, the plebeians *attached* themselves, under  
*Chez plébéen s'*

the name of clients, to some patrician whom they *called* their  
 — *quelque patricien*

patron. — The temple of Delphi *had* for an inscription this  
*Delphes \**

maxim: KNOW THYSELF. — The pyramids of Egypt *were*  
*Connais-toi toi-même.*

intended as burying-places for the kings.  
*destiner à art. sépulture f. s. de*

554. The PRETERITE DEFINITE (*je parlai, je reçus*) serves to express something done at a time completely past, and of which no part remains unexpired; hence it cannot be used when speaking of anything done during the present day, week, month, year, or century; as,

*J'écrivis hier à Bordeaux.*

*Nous nous rencontrâmes l'année dernière à Genève.*

*I wrote yesterday to Bordeaux.*

*We met last year at Geneva.*

555. As the events related in history are considered as facts, completed in a time entirely elapsed, the *preterite definite* is principally used in that style; as,

*Les Juifs quittèrent l'Égypte sous la conduite de Moïse.*

*The Jews left Egypt under the conduct of Moses.*

### EXERCISE CCXVIII.

Amenophis *conceived* the design of making his son a  
*dessein m. inf-1 de*

conqueror. He *set about* it after the manner of the Egyptians,  
*conquérant. s'y prendre à manière f.*

that is, with great ideas. All the children who were born  
*c'est-à-dire pensée f. 316*

on the same day as Sesostris, *were* brought to court, by order  
 \* *que amener art. cour f.*

of the king: he *had* them educated as his own children, and  
*faire élever inf-1*

with the same care as Sesostris. When he *was* grown up,  
*soin pl. que grand*  
 he <sup>2</sup>made <sup>1</sup>him serve his apprenticeship in a war against the  
*lui faire apprentissage m. par*  
 Arabs. This young prince *learned* there to bear hunger  
*Arabe y supporter faim f.*  
 and thirst, and *subdued* that nation, till then invincible.  
*soiff. soumettre jusqu'*  
 He <sup>2</sup>afterwards <sup>1</sup>attacked Libya, and *conquered* it.  
*ensuite Libye f.*

## EXERCISE CCXIX.

After these successes, Sesostris *formed* the project of  
*succès m.*  
 subduing the <sup>2</sup>whole <sup>1</sup>world. In consequence of this,  
*subjuguer inf-1 entier En \* \**  
 he *entered* Ethiopia, which he *rendered* tributary. He  
*dans Ethiopie se rendre*  
*continued* his victories in Asia. Jerusalem *was* the first to feel  
*Jérusalem f. à*  
 the force of his arms: the rash Rehoboam *could* not  
*arme f. téméraire Roboam*  
<sup>2</sup>resist <sup>1</sup>him, and Sesostris *carried away* the riches of Solomon.  
*lui enlever richesse pl. Salomon.*  
 He *penetrated* into the Indies farther than Alexander *did*  
*Indes ne*  
 afterwards. The Scythians <sup>2</sup>obeyed <sup>1</sup>him as far as the  
*ensuite. Scythe lui jusqu'à*  
 Tanais: Armenia and Cappadocia *were* subject to him. In  
*Cappadoce f. sujettes En*  
 a word, he *extended* his empire from the Ganges to  
*mot m. étendre — m. depuis Gange m. jusqu'à*  
 the Danube.—(BOSSUET.)

556. The PRETERITE INDEFINITE (*j'ai parlé*) is the past tense most used in French; it expresses something done in the course of the day, week, month, year, or century in which we are; as,

J'AI REÇU cette semaine la visite  
 de monsieur votre père.  
 Je lui AI ÉCRIT ce matin.

I have *this week* received a visit  
 from your father.  
 I wrote to him *this morning*.

557. The *Preterite indefinite* is also used in speaking of a past action, without specifying the TIME in which it happened ; as,

J'AI VENDU mon cheval.	I have sold <i>my</i> horse.
IL A VOYAGÉ en Allemagne.	He has travelled in Germany.
J'en AI PARLÉ à votre maître.	I mentioned it to your master.

This tense is sometimes used instead of the *future* ; as,

AVEZ-VOUS bientôt FAIT ?	Will you have done soon ?
Attendez, J'AI FINI dans un moment.	Wait, I shall have done in a moment.

558. The PRETERITE ANTERIOR (*j'eus parlé*) denotes a thing past and done before another also past, and is, for this reason, called *anterior*. It is generally preceded by a conjunction, or an adverb of time, such as *quand*, *lorsque*, *dès que*, *aussitôt que* ; as,

Quand J'EUS RECONNU mon erreur, j'en fus honteux.	When I had seen my error, I was ashamed of it.
---	--

*Note.*—There is another *preterite*, called the *preterite anterior indefinite* : *J'ai eu parlé*, *tu as eu parlé*, etc., but it is little used.

559. PLUPERFECT (*j'avais parlé*) represents a thing as *past* before another event happened ; as,

J'avais dîné quand il entra.	I had dined when he came in.
------------------------------	------------------------------

This tense, like the Imperfect, serves to describe, and to express repetition, habit or custom ; as,

Dès que j'avais dîné j'allais à la pêche.	As soon as I had dined, I went fishing.
---	---

### EXERCISE CCXX.

I *was* (at your house) this morning ; I *saw* your brother, and *chez vous*  
*spoke* to him.—We *have written* to him to-day.—The<sup>2</sup>present  
*je* *aujourd'hui.* *actuel*  
<sup>1</sup>century *began* on the first day of the year 1801, and will end  
 \* *année f.* *finir*  
 on the last day of the year 1900.—He *resided* six months  
 \* *demeurer*  
 at Rome.—When I *had done* that, I set out.—I *had finished*  
*partir*  
 my work when he arrived.—During his stay in the country,  
*Pendant* *sejour m. à*  
 as soon as he *had breakfasted*, he went hunting.

560. The FUTURE ABSOLUTE (*je parlerai*, I shall or will speak) represents the action as yet to come; as, *Je vous ÉCRIRAI*, I shall write to you.

561. The FUTURE ANTERIOR (*j'aurai parlé*) intimates that a thing will be done before another takes place; as,

J'AURAI FINI mon thème avant votre retour.	I shall have finished my exercise before your return.
---	--

562. *N.B.* The English often use the *present* tense after *when*, *as soon as*, *after*, or similar words, when they want to express a thing to come: the FUTURE, however, must always be used in French; as,

Passez chez moi, quand vous SEREZ prêt.	Call on me when you are ready.
--	--------------------------------

#### CONDITIONAL MOOD.

563. The CONDITIONAL mood has two tenses, the *present* and the *past*.

564. The *Conditional present* (*je parlerais*, I should or would speak) expresses that a thing would be done on a certain condition; as,

J'IRAIS avec vous si j'avais le temps.	I would go with you if I had time.
---	---------------------------------------

565. The *Conditional past* (*j'aurais parlé*, or *j'eusse parlé*†) expresses that a thing *might*, *could*, *would*, or *should*, have happened, at a time now passed, if another thing had taken place; as,

Leministre lui AURAIT DONNÉ cette place, s'il l'avait demandée.	The minister would have given him that place, if he had asked for it.
--	--

566. REMARK. — When *SI* (if) signifies *supposé que* (suppose that), the French use the present indicative instead of the future, and the imperfect instead of the conditional; as,

J'irai demain à la campagne, S'IL FAIT beau.	I shall go to the country to-morrow, if it be fine weather.
Si J'ALLAIS en France, je vous en préviendrais.	If I should go to France, I will let you know.

---

† Some writers often use this form, but the student will do well to follow the first.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

567. The IMPERATIVE *mood* commands, exhorts, entreats, or permits. It has only one tense.

## EXERCISE CCXXI.

I shall wait for you till six o'clock.—When I have done,  
*attendre jusqu'à heure*  
 I shall go out.—I will call on you, as soon as I have dined.  
*passer chez aussitôt que*  
 —I would sing, if I could.—I should have found him (at home),  
*chez lui*  
 if I had arrived a little sooner.—If he should come, what  
*être plus tôt.*  
 should I say to him?—Do good, if you wish to be  
*art. bien m. vouloir*  
 happy; do good, if you wish that your memory should be  
*subj-1*  
 honoured; do good, if you wish that heaven should open to  
*art. subj-1*  
 you its <sup>2</sup>eternal <sup>1</sup>gates.  
*porte f.*

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

568. The INDICATIVE is the *mood* of affirmation, and the SUBJUNCTIVE that of doubt and indecision.

The Subjunctive is used :—

569. (I.) After any verb expressing *doubt, fear, surprise, admiration, will, wish, desire, consent, or command*; because then this verb denotes nothing affirmative, nothing positive with regard to the following verb; as,

Il veut, il exige, il désire que | *He wishes, he requires, he desires*  
 vous FASSIEZ votre devoir. | *you to do your duty.*

There is an uncertainty whether you will comply with his wish, his request, or his desire.

570. (II.) After an *interrogation*, and after a verb



*can* stifle the remorse with which he is racked?—*It is enough*  
*étouffer remords pl. dont déchirer suffire*

that you *order* me. — *I think* I see him. — *It often*  
*commander Il me semble*

*happens* that we are deceived.  
*arriver on*

574. (IV.) The *Subjunctive* is used after the relative pronouns *qui, que, dont, où*, etc., when they are preceded by *peu*, or by an adjective in the *superlative relative* degree. Among such adjectives are included *le seul, l'unique, le premier, le dernier*; as,

Il y a <b>PEU</b> d'hommes <i>qui</i> <b>SACHENT</b>	<i>There are few men who can sup-</i>
supporter l'adversité.	<i>port adversity.</i>
Le <b>MEILLEUR</b> cortège <i>qu'un</i> roi	<i>The best retinue that a king can</i>
<b>PUISSE</b> avoir, c'est le cœur de	<i>have is the love of his subjects.</i>
ses sujets.	
Le chien est <b>LE SEUL</b> animal <i>dont</i>	<i>The dog is the only animal whose</i>
la fidélité <b>SOIT</b> à l'épreuve.	<i>fidelity is proof.</i>
C'est <b>LA SEULE</b> place <i>où</i> vous	<i>It is the only place to which you</i>
<b>PUISSIEZ</b> aspirer.	<i>can aspire.</i>

575. (V.) The *Subjunctive* is used after the relative pronouns *qui, que, dont, où*, etc., when we wish to express something doubtful and uncertain; as,

Je cherche quelqu'un <i>qui</i> me	<i>I seek some one who may render</i>
<b>RENDE</b> ce service.	<i>me that service.</i>
Je sollicite une place <i>que</i> je <b>PUISSE</b>	<i>I solicit a place which I may be</i>
remplir.	<i>able to fill.</i>
J'irai dans une retraite <i>où</i> je <b>SOIS</b>	<i>I shall retire to a place where I</i>
tranquille.	<i>may be quiet.</i>

It is possible that the person I am seeking may not render me that service; that I may not be able to fill the place I solicit; and, that I may not be tranquil in the retreat where I shall go; it is the subjunctive that expresses this doubt and uncertainty.

Observe that we could also say: *qui* me **RENDRA** ce service; *que* je **PEUX** remplir; *où* je **SERAI** tranquille; but the sense would no longer be the same: the action marked by the verbs *rendre, pouvoir, and être*, would then be represented as certain and positive.

576. (VI.) The *Subjunctive* is required after *quel que*, *quelque*. . . *que*, *qui*, *que*, *quoi*, *que* ; as,

<i>Quels que</i> SOIENT vos talents.		<i>Whatever</i> your talents may be.
<i>Quelque</i> riche <i>que</i> vous SOYEZ.		<i>However</i> rich you may be.
<i>Qui que</i> vous SOYEZ, parlez.		<i>Whoever</i> you be, speak.

*Quoi qu'on* DISE, un ânon ne deviendra qu'un âne.—(Grozelier.)

(See what has already been said on *Quelque*, p. 57-58.)

Finally, The *Subjunctive* is required after certain conjunctions, see Chapter VIII.

### EXERCISE CCXXIII.

He is the *only* man *who* lives in that manner.—The example  
*C* de la sorte.

of a good life is *the* best lesson *that* one can give to  
vie f. on art.

mankind. — The siege of *Azoth* lasted 29 years: it is the  
*genre humain* m. c'

longest siege mentioned in ancient history. — Show me  
DONT être question

a road *that* will lead to London. — *However* clever  
*chemin* m. *qui* conduire habile

<sup>2</sup>(those two writers) <sup>1</sup>be, neither the one nor the other will  
écrivain †

obtain the vacant seat in the French Academy.—*Whatever*  
place f. à Quoi que

you *study*, you must (apply yourself to it) with ardour.  
il vous y livrer

### CONCORD BETWEEN THE TENSES OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE AND THOSE OF THE INDICATIVE AND CONDITIONAL.

577. The *Subjunctive* mood being always subordinate to a verb that precedes it, its tenses are *regulated* by this *foregoing verb* ; as,

Je ne CROIS pas que vous VENIEZ.		<i>I do not think you will come.</i>
Je ne CROYAIS pas que vous VINS- SIEZ.		<i>I did not think you would come.</i>

† See *Remarks* on *Neither*, No. 516.



578. RULE I. After the present and future of the Indicative, we use the *present* of the Subjunctive to express a thing present or future ; but we use the *preterite* of the Subjunctive to express a thing past :—

Je doute	}	que vous <i>étudiiez</i> maintenant.
Je douterai		
Je doute	}	que vous <i>ayez étudié</i> hier.
Je douterai		

579. REMARK.—After the present and future of the Indicative, we use the *Imperfect* of the Subjunctive instead of the present, and the *Pluperfect* instead of the preterite, when some conditional expression is introduced in the sentence :—

Je doute	}	que vous <i>étudiassiez</i> maintenant, demain, si l'on ne vous y contraignait.
Je douterai		
Je doute	}	que vous <i>eussiez étudié</i> hier, si l'on ne vous y eût contraint.
Je douterai		

#### EXERCISE CCXXIV.

*Do you doubt* that I *am* your friend? — *Does he think I*  
*douter*  
*shall have* time? — *I don't think you have learned* mathe-  
*art.* *art.*  
 matics. — He *will wait* till you *are* ready. — She *will wish*  
*que* *vouloir que*  
 your sister *to be* one of the party. — *I shall* always *doubt* that  
 \* *partie f.*  
 you *have used* all your endeavours. — *Do you think I might*  
*faire* *effort m.* *pouvoir*  
 speak to him, were I *to go* now? — *I doubt* whether my  
*si y ind-2* *que*  
 brother *would have succeeded*, (had it not been for) your  
*réussir* *sans*  
 assistance.

580. RULE II. After the Imperfect, the Pluperfect, any of the Preterites or Conditionals, we use the *Imperfect* of the Subjunctive, if we mean to express a thing

present or future ; but to express a thing that is past, we use the *Pluperfect* :—

Je doutais	}	que vous <i>étudiassiez</i> aujourd'hui, demain.
Je doutai		
J'ai douté		
J'avais douté		
Je douterais		
J'aurais douté	}	que vous <i>eussiez étudié</i> la semaine passée.
Je doutais		
Je doutai		
J'ai douté		
J'avais douté		
Je douterais	}	
J'aurais douté		

581. REMARK.—With a *Preterite indefinite* the following verb is put in the *Present* of the Subjunctive, if we intend to express a thing which is, or may be done at all times ; as,

Dieu A ENTOURÉ les yeux de tuniques fort minces, transpa- rentes au dehors, afin que l'on PUISSE voir à travers.		God has surrounded the eyes with very thin tunics, transparent on the outside, that we may see through them.
---	--	---

And in the *Preterite* of the Subjunctive, if we intend to express something past ; as,

Il A FALLU qu'il se SOIT DONNÉ bien de la peine.		He must have given himself a great deal of trouble.
---	--	--

### EXERCISE CCXXV.

He *was waiting* till I *should be ready*.—Would you *wait* till  
*attendre que*  
we *should be ready*?—Sparta *was sober* before Socrates *had*  
*Sparte avant que*  
*praised* sobriety; before he *had praised* virtue, Greece *abounded*  
*avant qu' abonder*  
in virtuous men.—William III. *left*, at his death, the reputa-  
*laisser*  
tion of a great politician, although he *had not been* popular,  
*politique populaire*  
and of a general (to be feared), although he *had lost* many  
*à craindre,*  
battles.—You must *have had* (a great deal) of patience.  
*Il a fallu beaucoup*

## OF THE PRESENT PARTICIPLE.

582. The *Present Participle* always terminates in *ant*, and is invariable :—

Un homme <i>lisant</i> ; des hommes <i>lisant</i> .	A man reading; men reading.
Une femme <i>lisant</i> ; des femmes <i>lisant</i> .	A woman reading; women reading.

We say, however :—

Des hommes <i>obligeants</i> ; une femme <i>charmante</i> .	Obliging men; a charming woman.
---	---------------------------------

But the words *obligeants*, *charmante*, are not here present participles; they are *verbal* adjectives.

583. We call *verbal* adjectives, those adjectives which are derived from verbs; as, *charmant*, *menaçant*, &c. These adjectives always agree in gender and number with the nouns which they qualify.

The verbal adjective simply expresses a *quality*; the present participle expresses an *action*.

*N.B.* In English, the verbal adjective is placed *before* the noun, and the present participle *after* it. In French, both are generally placed *after*. See No. 437.

584. REMARK.—The present participle is often used in English as a noun, which is never the case in French :—

<i>Le jeu et la chasse sont la ruine de bien des gens.</i>	GAMING and HUNTING are the ruin of many people.
--	---

## EXERCISE CCXXVI.

David is often represented playing on the harp. — She is a woman of a good disposition, obliging her friends, whenever an occasion (presents itself). — Those men foreseeing the danger, put themselves on their guard. — Those foreseeing men have perceived the danger. — The ruling passion of Cæsar

on                      ind-l                      de

caractère m.                      quand

l'                      s'en présente.                      prévoir

pl.

apercevoir                      dominant

ambition. — Your sister is *charming*; how *obliging* she is! —  
que

Her *singing* was much admired.  
chant m. ind-3 fort

## OF THE PAST PARTICIPLE.

585. (I.) The *Past Participle* employed without an auxiliary, agrees, like an adjective, in gender and number, with the noun or pronoun to which it relates; as,

Les méchants ont bien de la peine | *The wicked have much difficulty in*  
à demeurer UNIS.—(Fénélon.) | remaining united.

Que de ramparts détruits! que de villes forcées! —(Boileau.)

586. (II.) The *Past Participle*, accompanied by the auxiliary verb *être*, agrees with its subject or nominative in gender and number; as,

Mon frère est venu.	<i>My brother is come.</i>
Ma sœur est venue.	<i>My sister is come.</i>
Mes frères sont venus.	<i>My brothers are come.</i>
Mes sœurs sont venues.	<i>My sisters are come.</i>
L'armée a été vaincue.	<i>The army has been conquered.</i>
Les ennemis ont été vaincus.	<i>The enemies have been conquered.</i>

Sometimes the subject is placed after the participle, but this construction does not alter the agreement of the participle: *Quand il vit l'urne où étaient RENFERMÉES les CENDRES d'Hippias, il versa un torrent de larmes.* (Fénélon.)

587. (III.) When the *Past Participle* follows the verb *avoir*, it never agrees with its subject; as,

Mon père a écrit.	<i>My father has written.</i>
Ma mère a écrit.	<i>My mother has written.</i>
Mes frères ont écrit.	<i>My brothers have written.</i>
Mes sœurs ont écrit.	<i>My sisters have written.</i>

## EXERCISE CCXXVII.

A quarrelsome dog has always a *torn* ear.—The ceiling  
\* *hargneux* l' *déchirer* plafond m.  
of the Egyptian temples was *painted* blue.—That letter is  
en

† The participle *été* never varies. We say *il* or *elle a été*, he or she has been; *ils* or *elles ont été*, they have been.

well written. — The city of London, having been burnt in  
ville f.

1666, was rebuilt in three years, more beautiful and more  
rebâtir année f.

regular than before. — The ancient Greeks were persuaded that  
auparavant persuader

the soul is immortal. — It is to Jenner that <sup>2</sup>(the discovery of  
découverte f.

vaccination) <sup>1</sup>(is due). — Artemisia survived <sup>2</sup>(Mausolus, her  
vaccine f. Artémise n' ind-4 à Mausole

husband), <sup>1</sup>(only two years). — The Amazons have acquired  
que an m. Amazone

celebrity. — They have executed the orders of Your Excellency.  
32

☞ To make a right application of the following rules, the student must distinguish well a *direct regimen* from an *indirect regimen*, for this is the pivot on which turn the principal difficulties of the *past participle*. For the meaning of *regimen*, see Nos. 405, 466, 500.

588. (IV.) The *Past Participle* accompanied by the auxiliary *avoir*, always agrees with its *direct regimen*, when that regimen is placed *before* the participle; as,

La lettre que vous avez écrite.  
Voici les lettres que j'ai reçues.

The letter which you have written.  
Here are the letters which I have received.

Où est votre livre? — je l'ai perdu.

Where is your book? — I have lost it.

Où est votre plume? — je l'ai perdue.

Where is your pen? — I have lost it.

Où sont vos livres? — je les ai perdus.

Where are your books? — I have lost

Ils m'ont félicité.

They have congratulated me. [them.

Il nous a félicités.

He has congratulated us. [taken?

Quelle affaire avez-vous entreprise?

What business have you under-

Que de désagréments ils m'ont  
causés!

What vexations they have caused  
me!

Combien de livres avez-vous lus?

How many books have you read?

These Examples show that the direct regimen which precedes the participle is expressed either by one of these pronouns *que, le, la, les, me, nous, te, vous, se*, or by a noun preceded by *quel, que de, or combien de*.

In the first example *écrite* agrees with *que*, of which the antecedent is *lettre*, feminine and singular. In the fifth example, *perdus* agrees with *les*, which stands for its antecedent *livres*, masculine and plural.

A lady would say,

Ils m'ont *félicitée*.

| They have congratulated me.

*Félicitée* agrees with *me*, of which the antecédent *dame* is understood.

The same analysis applies to the other and similar cases.

Observe that the rule says *direct regimen*, for although we say, *Il nous a vus*, he has seen us; we could not say, *Il nous a dits cela*, he has told us that: we must say, *Il nous a dit cela*; because *nous* is here used for *à nous*, and is an *indirect regimen*.

### EXERCISE CCXXVIII.

Here is the answer which I have received.—The sciences  
*réponse f.* — *f.*  
which you have *studied*, will prove infinitely useful to you.—  
*être*

General Villars often said, that the two <sup>2</sup>(most lively)  
art. *vif*

<sup>1</sup>pleasures he had *felt* in his life, had been the first  
subj-2 *ressentir* ind-2

prize which he had *obtained* at college, and the first victory  
*prix m.* ind-2

which he had *gained* over the enemy.—Where is my  
ind-2 *remporter*

watch?—I have not *seen* it.—They have *deceived* us.—What  
*montre f.* *tromper*

answer have they *given* you?—How many enemies has he not  
*on faire*

*conquered!*—The house which her father has *bought*.  
*vaincre* *que*

589. (V.) After the auxiliary *avoir*, the *Past Participle* remains invariable when the *direct regimen* is placed AFTER the participle, or when there is no direct regimen; as,

Nous avons *reçu* votre lettre.

| We have received your letter.

Ils ont *perdu* leurs livres.

| They have lost their books.

J'ai *récompensé* mes fils.

| I have rewarded my sons.

No agreement here takes place, because the direct regimens *votre lettre*, *leurs livres*, *mes fils*, are placed after the participles *reçu*, *perdu*, *récompensé*.

In the same manner, we write without varying the participle :

Elle a *dansé*.

Nous avons *chanté*.

Ils ont *répondu* à notre attente.

*She has danced.*

*We have sung.*

*They have answered our expectation.*

Because the verbs *danser*, *chanter*, *répondre*, have not here any direct regimen.

590. REMARK.—It follows from the preceding rule, that the participle of neuter verbs, which are conjugated with *avoir*, never varies, since that class of verbs has no direct regimen. Thus, in *Les cinq heures que j'ai dormi* (the five hours that I have slept), *les dix ans qu'il a vécu* (the ten years that he has lived), the participle of the neuter verbs *dormir* and *vivre* does not vary, and the relative *que* which precedes, although presenting itself under the form of a direct regimen, is in reality but an indirect regimen, equivalent to *pendant lequel*: *les cinq heures PENDANT LESQUELLES j'ai dormi, les dix ans PENDANT LESQUELS il a vécu*.

*Note*.—Sometimes neuter verbs are employed *actively*, then their participles agree, if preceded by a direct regimen ; as, *La langue que Cicéron a parlée*, the language which Cicero has spoken.

### EXERCISE CCXXIX.

I have *received* no answer.—He has *named* several persons.  
*plusieurs*

—Cromwell *governed* England under the title of Protector.—  
*ind-4*

Men have never *reaped* the fruit of happiness from the tree of  
*cueillir* *sur*

injustice. — The Romans *triumphed* successively over the  
*ind-4* *successivement de*

<sup>2</sup>(most warlike) <sup>1</sup>nations.—They *danced* a great deal at the  
*bellicieux* *f.* *ind-4*

last ball. — We have *laughed* heartily. — We must <sup>deduct</sup>  
*bal m.* *de bon cœur.* *Il retrancher*

from life the hours we have *slept*.  
*on*

591. (VI.) The verb *être* being used instead of *avoir* in pronominal or reflected verbs, the participle of these verbs follows exactly the same rules as the participle conjugated with *avoir*; that is, the participle of a reflected verb agrees with the direct regimen when preceded by it, but remains invariable, when the direct regimen is placed after it, or when there is none.

So we write with agreement:—

Nous <i>nous</i> sommes <i>blessés</i> .		We have hurt ourselves.
Lucrèce <i>s'est tuée</i> .		Lucretia killed herself.

Because the participles *blessés*, *tuée*, are preceded by their direct regimens *nous*, *se*.

But we write without agreement:—

Lucrèce <i>s'est donné</i> la mort.		Lucretia destroyed herself.
-------------------------------------	--	-----------------------------

Because the participle *donné* is followed by its direct regimen *la mort*. In this example, *se* is an indirect regimen or dative.

We write also without varying the participle:—

Il <i>se sont écrit</i> .		They have written to each other.
Nous <i>nous</i> sommes <i>succédé</i> .		We have succeeded one another.

Here, the participles *écrit* and *succédé* have no direct regimen. It is as if it were: *Ils ont écrit à EUX: Nous avons succédé à NOUS*.

592. REMARK.—It follows from the foregoing rule, that verbs essentially pronominal, that is, verbs which cannot be conjugated without two pronouns of the same person, as *je me repens*, *je m'abstiens*, require their participles always to agree, because these verbs have for direct regimen their second pronoun; as,

Nous <i>nous</i> sommes <i>abstenus</i> de toute reflexion.		We have abstained from all reflections.
Mes amis, vous <i>vous</i> êtes <i>repentis</i> .		My friends, you have repented.

### EXERCISE CCXXX.

Madame de Sévigné has rendered herself celebrated by the  
*se rendre*  
 graces of her style.—She perceived herself in that glass.  
 — m. *s'apercevoir* ind-4 *glace f.*



— That lady has *given herself* fine dresses. — Some  
*robe f. Quelques-uns*  
 of our modern authors have *imagined* that they surpassed the  
*s'imaginer ind-2*  
 ancients. — They have *spoken to one another*. — They have  
*se parler*  
*succeeded one another*. — Those boys have *repented*. — The  
*se repentir*  
 troops have *seized* the town.  
*s'emparer de*

593. (VII.) The participle of a unipersonal (or impersonal) verb is always invariable :—

Les chaleurs qu'il a FAIT cet été.	The heat which we have had this summer.
La disette qu'il y a EU l'hiver dernier.	The scarcity which there was last winter.

Here the verbs *faire* and *avoir* have not their active signification, but simply express existence, and the *que* which precedes is not the regimen of any verb, for we do not say *faire des chaleurs*, as we say *faire des habits*. That *que* must be considered a *gallicism*.

594. (VIII.) The *Past Participle*, followed by an infinitive, agrees with the antecedent noun, when that noun is the regimen or object of the participle, but it remains invariable when the noun is the object of the infinitive; as,

La lettre <i>que</i> je lui ai DONNÉE à copier.	The letter which I have given him to copy.
La lettre <i>que</i> je lui ai DIT de copier	The letter which I have told him to copy.

*Note*.—The regimen or object is known to belong to the participle when the antecedent can be placed after the participle, as in the first example, which may be turned, *Je lui ai donné la lettre à copier*.

As we cannot say, *Je lui ai dit la lettre de copier*, but we may say, *Je lui ai dit de copier la lettre*, it follows that the regimen belongs to the infinitive.

For the same reason, the participles *dû*, *owed*, *ought*; *pu*, *been able*, and *voulu*, *been willing*, remain invariable when an infinitive is understood after them; as,

Je lui ai rendu tous les services que j'ai PU (lui rendre understood.)	I have rendered him all the services that I have been able.
--	---

595. REMARK.—When the French participle happens to be placed between two *que*, the first *que* is not the regimen of the participle, but of the verb which follows it, consequently the participle is invariable; as,

Les raisons <i>que</i> vous avez CRU <i>que</i> j'approuvais.	The reasons which you thought I approved.
Les mathématiques <i>que</i> vous avez VOULU <i>que</i> j'étudiasse.	The mathematics which you would have me to study.

## EXERCISE CCXXXI.

The heavy rains which we *had* in the spring, have  
*grand pluie* f. \* *il faire* ind-4  
been the cause of many diseases.—That young lady sings well;  
*maladie* f.  
I have *heard* her sing.—That song is charming; I *heard* it  
ind-4  
sung.—I have used all the endeavours I *could*. — He has  
inf-1 *faire* *effort* m. † ind-4  
obtained all the favours he *wished*. — These are the answers  
*grâce* f. † *vouloir* ind-4 *Voilà*  
*which* I had *foreseen* they would give you.—The difficulties  
*que* † *faire* *embarras* m.  
*which* I knew you were in have accelerated my departure.  
ind-4 † *avoir* \* *départ* m.

## EXERCISE CCXXXII.

The rain which has *fallen* has prevented me from going out  
f. *fait* *empêché* *sortir*  
to-day. — Have you finished the letter which I *gave* you to  
ind-4  
write?—Have you finished the letter which you had *begun* to  
ind-2  
write? — Have you read the books which I *advised* you  
*conseiller* ind-4  
to read?—Is that the actress whom we *heard* sing? — Sing the  
*de* -ce là *actrice* ind-4  
song which we *heard* her sing. — Imitate the virtues which  
ind-4 *lui*  
you have *heard* praised.

---

† See Rule and Note, foot of page 258.

## CHAPTER VI.

## OF THE ADVERB.

596. (I.) Adverbs, in French, are generally placed after the verb in the *simple tenses*, and between the auxiliary and the participle in the *compound tenses*, but never between the subject and the verb, as is frequently the case in English; as,

Je pense SOUVENT à vous.		<i>I often think of you.</i>
J'ai TOUJOURS pensé à vous.		<i>I have always thought of you.</i>

Compound adverbs are usually placed *after* the participle; as, *Vous êtes venu à PROPOS*, you have come seasonably. In some instances, however, the ear alone is consulted; for we say, *Je l'avais TOUT À FAIT oublié*, I had quite forgotten it.

597. (II.) The adverbs AUJOURD'HUI, *to-day*; DEMAIN, *to-morrow*; HIER, *yesterday*, may be placed either before or after the verb, but never between the auxiliary and the participle; as, *Il fait AUJOURD'HUI beau temps, il pleuvra DEMAIN*; or, *AUJOURD'HUI il fait beau temps, DEMAIN il pleuvra*, To-day, it is fine; it will rain to-morrow.

598. (III.) The adverbs BIEN, *well*; MIEUX, *better*; MAL, *ill*; PIS, *worse*, may be placed either before or after an *infinitive*; as, *BIEN faire son devoir*, or *Faire BIEN son devoir*, to do one's duty well. But they are always placed after the verb in the *simple tenses*; as, *Vous fîtes BIEN, il fit MAL*, you did well, he did ill. And, with the *compound tenses*, they are placed between the auxiliary and the participle; as *Vous avez MAL fait*, you have done wrong.

599. (IV.) The adverbs, *comment, où, combien, quand, pourquoi*, are always placed before the verb; as,

<i>Comment se porte monsieur votre frère?</i>		<i>How is your brother?</i>
<i>Où allez-vous?</i>		<i>Whither are you going?</i>

*Remarks on some Adverbs.*

600. (1.) **BEAUCOUP** is not, as the English *much*, susceptible of being modified by any preceding adverb; thus, *très beaucoup, trop beaucoup, si beaucoup*, would be barbarisms.

601. (2.) **BIEN** before another adverb means *very, much, quite*, etc.; as, *Bien tard*, very late; *bien moins*, much less; *bien assez*, quite enough. After the adverb, it signifies *well*; as, *Assez bien*, pretty well; *moins bien*, not so well.

602. (3.) **PLUS** and **DAVANTAGE**, both mean *more*, but they are not used indiscriminately. *Davantage* can never modify an adjective, and cannot, like *plus*, be followed by the preposition *de* nor the conjunction *que*. We say:—

Il a PLUS <i>de</i> brillant <i>que de</i> solide.		<i>He has more brilliancy than solidity.</i>
---	--	--

Il se fie PLUS <i>à</i> ses lumières <i>qu'à</i> celles des autres.		<i>He relies more on his own know- ledge than on that of others.</i>
--	--	--

We could not say, *Il a DAVANTAGE de brillant, il se fie DAVANTAGE à ses lumières*, etc.

*Davantage* is always used absolutely, either at the end of a sentence, or at the end of a member of a sentence; as,

Le cadet est riche, mais l'aîné l'est <i>davantage</i> .		<i>The youngest is rich, but the eldest is still more so.</i>
---	--	---

603. (4.) **PLUS TÔT** means *sooner*, and has for its opposite **PLUS TARD**, *later*. **PLUTÔT** signifies *rather*.

## EXERCISE CCXXXIII.

I *very seldom* go out. — Homer *sometimes* slumbers in the  
*sortir* *sommeiller à*

midst of his gods and heroes. — She has sung *very well*. —  
*milieu m.* *très*

Where hatred prevails, truth (is sacrificed). — That grieves  
*dominer* *fait naufrage.* *chagriner*

me *very much*. — This letter is *pretty well* written. — I would  
*f.*

like you *much more*, if you were reasonable. — He has arrived  
*bien* *ind-2* *est*

*sooner* than usual. — I will die *rather* than suffer it.  
*de coutume.* *de*

*Remarks on the Negatives.*

604. (1.) The negative expressions *ne-pas*, *ne-point*, etc. form only one negation.

605. (2.) *Point* denies more strongly than *pas*.

606. (3.) *Pas* is used in preference to *point*; 1st, Before *plus*, *beaucoup*, *moins*, *si*, *autant*, and other comparative words; as, *Milton n'est PAS MOINS sublime qu'Homère*, Milton is not less sublime than Homer; 2dly, Before nouns of number; as, *Il n'y a PAS SIX ans*, it is not six years ago.

607. (4.) *Pas* and *point* may be suppressed after the verbs *cesser*, to cease; *oser*, to dare; and *pouvoir*, to be able; as,

Elle ne CESSE de gronder.

On n'OSE l'aborder.

Je ne PUIS me taire.

*She does not cease scolding.*

*They dare not accost him.*

*I cannot be silent.*

608. (5.) After *savoir*, to know, when this verb is used to express a state of uncertainty, it is better to omit *pas* and *point*; as,

Je ne SAIS où le prendre.

Il ne SAIT ce qu'il dit.

*I do not know where to find him.*

*He does not know what he says.*

But, *pas* and *point* must be used when *savoir* is employed to declare anything positively; as,

Je ne SAIS pas le français.

*I do not know French."*

(See former Remarks on *Pouvoir* and *Savoir*, used with a negative, p. 140 and 141).

609. (6.) *Pas* and *point* are suppressed after the conjunction *que*, preceded by the comparative adverbs *plus*, *moins*, *mieux*, or some other equivalent; as,

Il écrit mieux qu'il ne parle.

Il est moins riche, plus riche qu'on ne croit.

C'est autre chose que je ne croyais.

*He writes better than he speaks.*

*He is less rich, richer than is believed.*

*It is different from what I thought.*

610. (7.) *Pas* and *point* are omitted with a verb in the preterite, preceded by the conjunction *depuis que*, or by the verb *il y a*, denoting a certain duration of time; as,

Comment vous êtes-vous porté depuis que je ne vous ai vu ?

Il y a six mois que je ne lui ai parlé.

*How have you been since I saw you ?*

*I have not spoken to him these six months.*

But they are not omitted when the verb is in the present tense :—

Comment vit-il depuis que nous ne le voyons point ?	How does he live now that we do not see him ?
Il y a six mois que nous ne nous parlons point.	It is six months since we do not speak to one another.

## EXERCISE CCXXXIV.

There is *no* happiness without virtue. — The rich are *not*  
 154 *bonheur* m. *riche* 153  
 always happier than the poor. — There will *not* be much  
 pl.  
 fruit this year. — You will *not* find two of your opinion. —  
*année* f. *en* *avis* m.  
 You do *not* cease scolding me. — I *dare not* speak to him. —  
*inf-1*  
 I *cannot* understand what he means. — I do *not* know  
*comprendre ce qu' vouloir dire.*  
 what to do. — She sings much *better* than she did. —  
*que* *ne* ind-2  
 He is richer *than* he was. — That child has grown  
*ne* ind-2 *grandir*  
 (very much) *since* I saw it.  
*bien* *ne* ind-4

## EXERCISE CCXXXV.

Since the world has been a world, said Boileau, one  
*Depuis que* *est* \* \* *on*  
 has *not* seen a great poet, son of a great poet. — She does  
*de* *un*  
*not* like (people to flatter her.) — Do you *not* believe what he  
*qu'on la flatte.* *ce qu'*  
 says? — That is *not* worth more than a guinea. — Do *not* go  
 271 *d'*  
 so fast. — There are I *know not* how many people at the  
*si* 186 402  
 door. — When Darius proposed to Alexander to divide Asia  
*ind-3* *partager* 375  
 equally with him, he answered : The earth *cannot* admit of  
*également* *ind-3* *souffrir*  
 two suns, nor Asia of two kings.  
 \*

## CHAPTER VII.

## OF THE PREPOSITION.

611. RULE I. In French, the preposition is always placed immediately *before* its object, whereas in English it is sometimes placed *after* it; as,

A qui parlez-vous ?	{	To whom do you speak ?
		or,
		Whom do you speak to ?
		Of what do you complain ?
De quoi vous plaignez-vous ?	{	or,
		What do you complain of ?

## EXERCISE CCXXXVI.

*To whom does that house belong? — What house are you appartenir speaking of? — Of that white house. — It belongs to the ind-1 gentleman with whom we are going to dine. — He has two monsieur ind-1 footmen behind his carriage. — Tiberius was emperor after laquais voiture f. Tibère ind-3 Augustus. — The liberty of the Roman republic expired under Auguste. 435 ind-3 Tiberius. — A serpent biting its tail was, among qui se mord art. queue f. ind-2 chez the Egyptians, the emblem of eternity. art.*

612. RULE II. The prepositions *à*, *de*, and *en*, must be repeated in French before every noun, pronoun, or verb which they govern, whether they are repeated or not in English; as,

Il dut la vie A la clémence et A la magnanimité du vainqueur.	{	He owed his life to the clemency and generosity of the conqueror.
Il tâche DE mériter et d'obtenir votre confiance.		He is endeavouring to merit and obtain your confidence.
J'ai été EN France et EN Suisse.		I have been in France and Switzerland.

613. The other prepositions, especially those of one syllable, are repeated before words which have meanings totally different, but seldom before words that are nearly synonymous; as,

DANS la ville et DANS la campagne.	In the town and in the country.
PAR la force et PAR l'adresse.	By force and by address.
DANS la mollesse et l'oisiveté.	In effeminacy and idleness.
PAR la force et la violence.	By force and violence.

### EXERCISE CCXXXVII.

Here is the road from London to York and Edinburgh.—  
*route f.*

You will receive a letter either *from* my father or my brother.—  
*ind-7 \* \**

The celebrity of literary men keeps pace with that of  
*f. \* littéraire \* marcher de pair art.*  
great kings and heroes: Homer and Alexander, Virgil and  
*héros*

Cæsar, equally occupy the voice of fame. — We are  
*César voix pl. renommée f.*

going to France and Germany. — He is a turner in wood and  
*en Allemagne. 399 tourneur*

ivory. — I shall come back either *by* the railway or the  
*\* chemin de fer*

canal. — He is *under* the safeguard and protection of the laws.  
*garde f*

### *Remarks on the use of some Prepositions.*

614. (1.) EN is used to express a vague and indeterminate sense; as,

J'ai vécu EN pays étranger. | *I have lived in a foreign country.*

DANS is employed in a limited and determinate sense; as,

Celivre est DANS ma bibliothèque.	That book is in my library.
Elle était DANS sa chambre.	She was in her room.
J'ai lu cela DANS Buffon.	I have read that in Buffon.

N.B. When, in English, a noun is preceded by the definite article, or a possessive or demonstrative pronoun,



**IN, INTO,** are generally expressed in French by *Dans* ; as,

Il demeure <b>DANS</b> la maison près du parc.		<i>He lives in the house near the park.</i>
Il y a du charme <b>DANS</b> sa société.		<i>There is a charm in her society.</i>
<b>DANS</b> cette guerre malheureuse.		<i>In that unfortunate war.</i>

But when the noun is used in an indefinite sense, and without article or pronoun, **IN, INTO,** are usually expressed by *En* ; as,

<b>EN</b> paix et <b>EN</b> guerre.		<i>In peace and in war.</i>
Ils sont toujours <b>EN</b> querelle.		<i>They are always in broils.</i>

Owing to its indeterminate nature, **EN** ought not to be followed by the article, except in a few phrases which have been sanctioned by usage ; as, *En la présence de Dieu ; Président en la chambre des comptes,* etc.

(See Remark 1st, page 197.)

615. (2.) **AUTOUR** and **ALENTOUR**, *around*, must not be confounded. *Autour* is a preposition which requires a regimen ; as,

<i>Autour d'un trône.</i>		<i>Around a throne.</i>
---------------------------	--	-------------------------

*Alentour* is an adverb which admits of no regimen ; as, Il était sur son trône, et les grands étaient *alentour*. | *He was upon his throne, and the grandees were around.*

616. (3.) **AU TRAVERS** is always followed by the preposition *de*, and **A TRAVERS** is not. We say :—

<i>Au travers DE la foule.</i>	}	<i>Through the crowd.</i>
<i>A travers la foule.</i>		

617. (4.) **AVANT**, *before*, denotes priority of time ; as,

Il est arrivé <i>avant</i> vous.		<i>He arrived before you.</i>
----------------------------------	--	-------------------------------

It serves also to mark priority of order and place ; as, Mettez ce chapitre *avant* l'autre. | *Put this chapter before the other.*

**DEVANT**, *before*, is never used, nowadays, with reference to time. It is a preposition of place, and has the meaning of *in presence of, opposite to, in front of* ; as,

Il a prêché <i>devant</i> le roi.		<i>He has preached before the king.</i>
<i>Devant</i> la porte ; <i>devant</i> l'église.		<i>Before the door ; before the church.</i>

*Devant* serves also to mark order ; as,

C'est mon ancien, il marche <i>devant</i> moi.		<i>He is my senior, he goes before me.</i>
--	--	--

When *Before* has no noun or pronoun after it, it is generally expressed by the adverb *auparavant*; as,

Je l'en avais averti longtemps | *I had warned him of it long*  
*auparavant.* | *before.*

Un mois, un an *auparavant.* | *A month, a year before.*

618. (5.) *Près de* and *prêt à*, are not the same expressions. *Près* is a *preposition* which governs *de*; as,

Il est bien PRÈS DE midi. | *It is very near twelve o'clock.*

But *Prêt* is an adjective which governs *à*; as,

Il est prêt à partir. | *He is ready to set out.*

### EXERCISE CCXXXVIII.

I was in France, in the province of Burgundy.—The glory  
 ind-2 *Bourgogne.*

of a sovereign consists less in the extent of his states,  
*souverain m* *grandeur f.* *état m.*  
 than in the happiness of his people. — They ranged themselves  
*peuple pl.* *se ranger ind-3*

around him.—Here is a sad accident for my creditors, said  
*Voilà fâcheux m.* *créancier m. ind-2*

a Gascon officer, who had just received a ball through his body.  
 435 *venait de inf-1 balle f.* *art.*

—I saw that before you.—She was walking before the house.—  
 ind-4 *se promener*

He was near dying. — I am ready to maintain my opinion,  
 ind-2 *inf-1* *maintenir*

pen in hand, until the last drop of my ink.  
 art. *à art.* *jusqu'à* *goutte f.*

619. (6.) The following prepositions require *DE* before the noun or pronoun which they govern:—

Auprès,	}	<i>near.</i>	au-dessous,	<i>under, below.</i>
près,			autour,	<i>around.</i>
proche,			le long,	<i>along.</i>
au-dessus,		<i>above.</i>	vis-à-vis,	<i>opposite.</i>

### EXAMPLES.

<i>Près DE la poste.</i>		<i>Near the post-office.</i>
<i>Autour DU bras.</i>		<i>Round the arm.</i>

*Note.*—In the familiar style, and in conversation, the preposition *DE* is sometimes omitted after *près*, *proche*, and *vis-à-vis*; as, *Je loge PRÈS l'arsenal, vis-à-vis la nouvelle rue.*

620. (7.) The perpositions *JUSQUE*, *till*, *until*, *even*, *as far as*, and *QUANT*, *as to*, *as for*, require the preposition *à* after them ; *as*,

Depuis Pâques *jusqu' à* la  
Pentecôte.  
*Quant à* moi. *Quant à* elle.

*From Easter till Whitsun-*  
*day.*  
*As for me. As for her.*

## EXERCISE CCXXXIX.

I live *near* the gate Saint-Martin.—*Above* the door were  
*demeurer porte f. ind-2*  
written these words.—In the <sup>2</sup>*ecclesiastical* <sup>1</sup>*hierarchy*,  
586 *mot m. ecclésiastique hiérarchie f. h asp.*  
the bishop is *below* the archbishop. — The queen had her  
*archevêque.*  
daughters *around* her. — We came *along* the river side.—  
*ind-4 rivière f. \**  
He lodges *opposite* my windows.—All fathers, *even* the most  
*art.*  
grave, play with their children. — Let us go together *as far*  
*jouer*  
*as* Oxford. — *As for* him, he (shall act) as he pleases.  
*en usera lui ind-7*

## EXERCISE CCXL.

<sup>2</sup>*Æsculapius* <sup>1</sup>(is represented) with a snake in his hand  
*Esculape on représente couleur f. à*  
or *around* his arm, and a cock *near* him.—The Falls of  
*coq cataracte f. s.*  
Niagara are *near* the boundaries of the United States  
*se trouve limite f. Etats-Unis*  
and Canada. — The Americans place Washington and  
31 *— m.*  
Bolivar *above* Alexander and Cæsar. — The planets are  
*de planète f.*  
opaque bodies which turn *around* the sun, from which they  
*tourner où*  
derive light and heat. — There are forests of canes  
*tirer lumière f. chaleur f. forêt f. canne f.*  
*along* the Ganges. — I will wait for you *till* two o'clock.  
*Gange m. 151*

## CHAPTER VIII.

## OF THE CONJUNCTION.

621. IN French, some conjunctions require the verb which follows them to be in the indicative, some in the subjunctive, and others in the infinitive mood.

622. *The following Conjunctions, and Conjunctive Locutions, require the indicative mood:—*

Ainsi que,	<i>as, as well as.</i>	depuis que,	<i>since.</i>
après que,	<i>after.</i>	[ <i>as.</i> lorsque,	<i>when.</i>
attendu que,	<i>considering that,</i>	parce que,†	<i>because.</i>
aussitôt que,	} <i>as soon as.</i>	pendant que,	} <i>while, whilst.</i>
dès que,		tandis que,	
autant que,	<i>as much as [what.</i>	peut-être que,	<i>perhaps.</i>
à ce que,	<i>as, as far as, from</i>	puisque,	<i>since.</i>
à mesure que,	<i>as, in proportion</i>	tant que,	<i>as long as.</i>
au lieu que,	<i>whereas.</i>	[ <i>as.</i> vu que,	<i>seeing that.</i>

They require the indicative, because the principal sentence, which they unite with that which is incidental, expresses affirmation in a direct and positive manner.

† *Observation.*—*Par ce que* (in three words) is not a conjunction, though sometimes mistaken for one. It signifies, *by that which, by what.*

## EXERCISE CCXLI.

*As soon as* the Khan of Tartary has dined, a herald cries  
*kan m.* *héraut*

that all the other princes of the earth may go and dine,  
*terref. ind-l* \*

if (they please). — A child ought not to <sup>2</sup>obtain <sup>1</sup>anything,  
*bon leur semble.* *ne doit* \* *rien*

*because* he asks for it, but *because* he has need (of it).—  
\* *besoin en*

We must not judge of a man *by what* he (is ignorant of),  
*Il falloir* *ignore*

but *by what* he knows. — *Whilst* we are in prosperity,  
*savoir* *on* *art.*  
 we must prepare for adversity. — *As long as* I have  
*il* *se* *à* *art.* *ind-7*  
 money, you shall not want any.  
*manquer en*

623. *The following Conjunctions, and Conjunctive Locutions, require the subjunctive mood.*

Afin que, } <i>that, in order that.</i>	pour peu que, } <i>however</i>
pour que, } <i>before.</i>	si peu que, } <i>little.</i>
avant que, } <i>unless.</i>	pourvu que, } <i>provided that.</i>
à moins que,† <i>in case that.</i>	quoique, } <i>though, although.</i>
au cas que, } <i>for fear, lest.</i>	encore que, } <i>without.</i>
de crainte que,† <i>till, until.</i>	sans que, } <i>whether.</i>
de peur que,† <i>not that.</i>	soit que, } <i>supposing that.</i>
jusqu'à ce que, } <i>not that.</i>	supposé que, } <i>supposing that.</i>
non que, }	
non pas que, }	

They require the subjunctive, as they always imply doubt, desire, uncertainty.

624. *Remark on the conjunction QUE.* Learners are often mistaken, by supposing that QUE always requires the verb which follows it to be in the *subjunctive mood*; but QUE does not govern any particular mood. It is the positive or doubtful sense of the first verb that requires the second to be in the indicative or subjunctive.‡ There are, however, several cases in which QUE requires the subjunctive after it. These are when QUE is used instead, or in the sense of some conjunctions which themselves always govern the subjunctive, such as *afin que, avant que, à moins que, jusqu'à ce que, quoique, sans que, soit que, supposé que*; as,

Approchez, QUE je vous voie (afin que.)	Come near, that I may see you.
Attendez QUE la pluie soit passée (jusqu'à ce que.)	Wait until the rain be over.

† *A moins que, de crainte que, de peur que*, require *ne* before the verb which follows them, although not having a negative sense.

‡ See the syntax of this mood, p. 235-288.

## EXERCISE CCXLII.

The Apostles received the gift of tongues, *that* they might  
 ind-3                      don m.                      pouvoir  
 preach the Gospel to all the nations of the earth. — If my  
*Evangile* m.

brother come *before* I am up, show him into the dining-  
 ind-1                      levé faire entrer  
 room, and give him a newspaper to amuse himself with *till*

I come down. — *Unless* you be useful, you will not be sought after.  
 descendre                      recherché

— Speak low, *for fear* anybody should hear you. — *Though*  
 on                      entendre  
 you are learned, be modest. — Get in *without* his seeing you.  
 instruit                      Entrer

625. The following Conjunctions govern the infinitive :—

Afin de,	to, in order to.	au lieu de,	instead of.
avant de,†	} before.	loin de,	far from.
avant que de,		de crainte de,	} for, or from
à moins de,	} unless.	de peur de,	} fear of.
à moins que de,		plutôt que de,	rather than.

† *Avant de*, and *avant que de*, are both correct expressions ; but present usage is decidedly in favour of *avant de*.

*Note*.—*A cause que*, *devant que*, *durant que*, *malgré que*, are found among the Tables of Conjunctions, and in the Exercises of many Grammars ; but these are antiquated expressions. *A cause que* is replaced by *parce que* ; *devant que*, by *avant que* ; *durant que*, by *pendant que* ; and *malgré que*, by *quoique*.

## EXERCISE CCXLIII.

He works *in order to* acquire riches and consideration.—*Before*  
 acquérir                      f.

granting him my confidence, I shall examine if he is worthy of  
 confiance f.

it.—*Instead* of studying, he does nothing but amuse himself.  
 ne                      \*                      que se divertir.

—*Far from* thanking me, he has scolded me. — Charles VII.,  
 gronder

king of France, abstained from eating, in fear of  
 ind-3                      par art. crainte f.

being poisoned, and allowed himself to die, *from fear* of  
 se laisser ind-3                      peur

dying. — *Rather* die *than* do a dishonourable action.  
 inf-1                      lâcheté f.

626. The INTERJECTIONS have been treated of in page 190: their construction is the same in French as in English; they require, therefore, no further explanation. The soul is the only syntax for interjections, and they can never embarrass the student, since they do not require any rules.

### 627. OF ABBREVIATIONS.

There are certain French words which it is customary to abridge and represent by capital letters, as follows:—

J.C.	for	Jésus-Christ.
N.S.	...	Notre-Seigneur.
N.S. J.C.	...	Notre-Seigneur Jésus-Christ.
S.S.	...	Sa Sainteté.
S.M.	...	Sa Majesté.
LL. MM.	...	Leurs Majestés.
S.M.I.	...	Sa Majesté Impériale.
S.M. T.C.	...	Sa Majesté Très-Chrétienne.
S.M.C.	...	Sa Majesté Catholique.
S.M.T.F.	...	Sa Majesté Très-Fidèle.
S.M.B.	...	Sa Majesté Britannique.
S.M.S.	...	Sa Majesté Suédoise.
S.A.	...	Son Altesse.
S.A.R.	...	Son Altesse Royale.
S.A.I.	...	Son Altesse Impériale.
S.Ex.	...	Son Excellence.
S.Em.	...	Son Eminence.
M <sup>gr</sup>	...	Monseigneur.
M. or M <sup>r</sup> *	...	Monsieur.
MM. or M <sup>rs</sup> *	...	Messieurs.
M <sup>me</sup>	...	Madame.
M <sup>lle</sup>	...	Mademoiselle.
M <sup>d</sup>	...	Marchand.
M <sup>de</sup>	...	Marchande.
Nég <sup>t</sup>	...	Négociant.
C <sup>ie</sup>	...	Compagnie.

(*Encycl. méthod.—Gram. des Gram.—Acad.*)

\* The first is more used in print, and the latter in writing. *Messrs* is also a good abbreviation of *Messieurs*.

## PROMISCUOUS EXERCISES

ON THE NINE PARTS OF SPEECH, AND ON THE PRINCIPAL  
NICETIES, DIFFICULTIES, AND IDIOMS OF THE  
FRENCH LANGUAGE.

CCXLIV.—I look upon the silence of the abbé Sieyes, said  
*regarder*  
Mirabeau, as a public calamity. — Saying of Peter the Great:  
*Mot*  
It requires three Jews to deceive a Russian.—A Swiss proverb:  
187 544  
Keep at least three paces from him who hates bread, and the  
247 *toi à*  
voice of a child.—Every Roman knight had a horse maintained  
120 *entretenir*  
at the expense of the republic, and wore a gold ring as a mark  
pl. 419  
of his dignity. — I bequeath to surgeon Larrey, 100,000 fr.;  
*Je lègue*  
he is the most virtuous man I have known. (*Napoléon's Will.*)  
493 2 3 1 subj-1

CCXLV.—It is related of Alexander that he said of  
111 ind-2  
Diogenes, that if he had not been Alexander, he (would have)  
*eût eût*  
wished to be Diogenes. — It was at the battle of Cressy (1346)  
98  
that for the first time the English made use of artillery. — Go,  
*fois f.*  
my friends, said Napoléon to his grenadiers, fear nothing, the  
ind-2 293  
ball which will kill me is not yet cast. — The Spaniards  
ind-7 *fondre*  
compare Charles V. to Solomon for wisdom, to Cæsar for  
76  
courage, to Augustus for good fortune. — Such was Sheridan!  
*bonheur m.*  
he could soften an attorney! There has been nothing like it  
since the days of Orpheus.—(*Byron.*)



CCXLVI.—“Soldiers,” said Bonaparte, in one of his pro-  
 ind-2  
 clamations, “you have, in a fortnight, gained six victories,  
*remporter*  
 taken twenty-one standards, fifty pieces of cannon, several  
*drapeau m.*  
 strong places, made fifteen thousand prisoners, killed or  
 75  
 wounded more than ten thousand men. You have won battles  
*de*  
 without artillery, crossed rivers without bridges, performed  
*passer* *faire*  
 forced marches without shoes, bivouacked without brandy and  
*biviquer*  
 often without bread. Thanks be rendered to you, soldiers!  
*Grâce f.*  
 The country has a right to expect great things from you.  
*Patrie f.*  
 You have yet combats to wage, towns to take, rivers to cross.  
*livrer*

Friends, be the liberators of the people, do not be  
*peuple pl.*  
 their oppressors.”  
*en fléau m.*

CCXLVII.—The castle clock struck twelve. At that mo-  
*sonner* *En*  
 ment the buzzings of the crowd ceased, and a little man,  
*bourdonnement m.*  
 dressed in a green uniform, white trousers, and wearing  
 253 *d'* *d'* *chaussé de*  
 riding-boots, appeared all on a sudden, keeping on his head  
*à l'écuyère* *en* 146  
 a three-cornered hat as fascinating as he was himself. The  
*à trois cornes* *prestigieux* *p'*  
 broad red riband of the Legion of Honour floated on his  
 ind-2

breast. A small sword was at his side. He was perceived  
*poitrine f.* *apercevoir*  
 by all eyes, and at once. Immediately, cries of: Long live  
 335  
 the Emperor! were uttered by the enraptured multitude.  
*pousser* *enthousiasmer* *f.*

CCXLVIII.—Botanists assure us that corn is nowhere to  
 be found in its primitive state. This plant seems to have  
 been confided, by Providence, to the care of man, with the  
 use of fire, to insure him the sceptre of the earth. With corn  
 and fire, we can acquire all the other goods. Man, with corn  
 alone, can feed all the domestic animals that sustain his life,  
 and share his labours; the pig, the hen, the duck, the pigeon,  
 the ass, the sheep, the goat, the horse, the cow, the cat, and  
 the dog, which give him, in return, eggs, milk, bacon, wool,  
 services, and gratitude.

CCXLIX.—My dear Friend,

Pray, apply yourself diligently to your exercises; for though  
 the doing them well is not supremely meritorious, the doing  
 them ill is illiberal, vulgar, and ridiculous.

I send you enclosed a letter of recommendation for Marquis  
 Matignon, which will at once thoroughly introduce you  
 into the best French company. Your character, and conse-  
 quently your fortune, absolutely depends upon the company  
 you keep, and the turn you take at Paris. I do not,  
 in the least, mean a grave turn; on the contrary, a gay, a  
 sprightly, but at the same time an elegant and liberal one.

Keep carefully out of all quarrels. Many young Frenchmen are hasty and giddy. But these young men, when mellowed by age and experience, very often turn out able men. The number of great generals and statesmen, as well as authors, that France has produced, is an undeniable proof of it.—(*Lord Chesterfield to his Son.*)

CCL.—Scotland is a picturesque country.—The country has its amusements and beauties, but I prefer town.—It is very fine weather.—That requires much time.—I saw him to-day for the first time.—I know him, but I do not know where he lives.—If your sisters are at home, bring them with you; we shall be delighted to see them.—Bring me a few French books well bound in calf.—There is some cold veal.—Here is a calf's head.—Cut some bread.—Give me the loaf.—The poorest of the Russians have a tea-pot, a copper tea-kettle, and take tea, morning and evening.—It requires an iron hand in a silk glove.—Andrew was Simon Peter's brother.

CCLI.—Knock at the door.—There is no knocker.—She is always cross.—What a pretty gold cross she wears!—She reads better now, and better books.—If I had better paper and a better pen, I would write better.—She has married my brother.—It was our bishop that married them.—Look at this boy.—He looks well to-day.—I have called at your house.—Tell him to call again.—Call the waiter.—I am a bachelor.—They say the plague is at Smyrna.—Don't plague me.—When Cromwell gave half-a-crown a-day to every dragoon, he readily got recruits for the Parliamentary armies.

CCLII.—The sons of the emperors of Russia take the title of Grand-duke.—Take my horse to the stable.—Take the saddle to the saddler.—If you are going to Canterbury, take me with you.—Take this bonnet to your sister.—I take a cup of coffee every morning.—It has rained all the morning.—I will go and see you on Friday evening.—I shall spend the evening with you.—He has spent all his money.—I come from Paris, and I will return to-morrow.—I am going to Paris, and I will return next week.—Return me my money.—Have I not returned it to you?—Gardener, have you swept all the walks?—Good bye, ladies; I wish you a pleasant walk.

---

## REMARQUES

### SUR LA PRONONCIATION DE QUELQUES MOTS.

---

**ALGER.** Girard, Demandre, Lévizac, et Lemare disent que le *r* du mot *Alger* doit se faire entendre. Ces autorités sont imposantes; cependant ce mot, devenu aujourd'hui un nom tout français, a perdu la trace de son origine étrangère, et ne sonne plus autrement que le mot *berger*; c'est la prononciation partout adoptée.

Dans *Baptiste, baptême, baptiser, baptismal, baptistaire*, le *p* ne se prononce point.

**CAEN** (ville de Normandie). On prononce *Kan*.

On prononce à la française: *architecte, patriarche, Michel, Achille, Machiavel, Ézéchiàs, Ézéchiël, Colchide*; et, avec le son du *k*, *Michel-Ange, Zacharie, Jéricho. Almanach, chaos*, se prononcent *Almana, kaô*.

*D* final sonne dans *David, Joad, Sud*; mais il ne se prononce pas dans les mots *nid, Madrid*.

**DAVOUST** (maréchal). On prononce *Davou*.

**DOUBS** (rivière et département). On prononce *Dou*.

*G* final a le son du *k*, dans *bourg*. Mais il est muet dans *fau-bourg, Strasbourg, Édimbourg, Hambourg, Pétersbourg*.

**GÉRANIUM**, substantif masculin. Prononcez *géraniome*.

**GUIZOT**. On prononce *Ghizô*. Dans *de Guise*, l'*u* se fait entendre.

**JOUG** (*yoke*). On fait sentir un peu la lettre finale, même devant une consonne.

**LA FAYETTE**, *La Haye*. On prononce *Lafa-iètt, La Hè*.

**METZ**, *Munich, Zurich*. On prononce *Mèss, Munik, Zurik*.

*N* final sonne dans *Éden, hymen, le Tarn*. *Béarn* se prononce *Béar*.

*S* se fait entendre dans *atlas, mœurs, Calvados, Crésus, Jonas, Ménélas, Pallas, Rubens, Thémis, Tunis*. Mais la lettre *s* est muette dans *avis, trépas, Jésus, Jésus-Christ, Thomas, Judas*. Dans le cas de la liaison, *s* final prend le son du *z*, *avi-z-au lecteur*.

**SAÔNE**, subst. fem. (rivière). On prononce *Sône*.

**SIEYES** (l'abbé). On prononce *Si-èss*.

**SOLENNEL**, *ELLE*, adjectif. On prononce toujours *Solanel*, et on fait l'*a* bref; il en est de même dans les dérivés.

**SOULT** (maréchal). On prononce *Soulte*.

**SOURCIL** (*eye-brow*). Prononcez *sourci*.

**SULLY**. Ce mot ne doit pas prendre le son mouillé, malgré l'opinion contraire de quelques Grammaticiens.



# INDEX.

	Page		Page
<b>A</b> ; with and without accent,	8	<i>Avant de, avant que de,</i>	310
Proper names ending in <i>a</i> ,	37	<i>Avoir</i> , to have; its conjugation,	60
English indef. art.	14, 199, 206		
Preposition,	{ 8, 14, 15, 185, 219, 303.	<b>B</b> arefoot,	221
Verbs which require <i>a</i> ,	273	<i>Beaucoup</i> ; Remark on,	300
<i>Abbreviations</i> in the Exercises,	6	<i>Before</i> ; how expressed,	305, 310
———— of Titles,	311	<i>Bénir</i> , to bless, Remark on,	122
<i>Abstain</i> (to), <i>s'abstenir</i> ,	133	<i>Best</i> ,	30
<i>Accents</i> ; number and use,	8	<i>Better</i> ,	30
<i>Adjective</i> ; Feminine of,	20 to 25	———— and better,	177
Plural of,	25, 26	<i>Bien</i> , Remarks on,	207, 300
Possessive,	42	<i>Born</i> (to be), <i>naître</i> ,	163
Demonstrative,	44	<i>Both</i> ,	53, 264
Numeral,	31, 233		
Cardinal,	31, 233	<b>C</b> a, for <i>cela</i> ,	256
Ordinal,	31, 34, 233	<i>Can</i> (to be able to), <i>pouvoir</i> ,	139
General Rule on,	66	<i>Cases</i> ; if any in French,	11
Concord of the,	220 to 224	<i>Ce</i> , demonstr. pron.,	45, 254, 255
Used adverbially,	221	<i>Cedilla</i> ,	10
Place of the,	224 to 230	<i>Cent</i> ; when it takes an <i>s</i> ,	34
Government of the,	230 to 233	<i>Chacun</i> , every one,	52, 262
Of Number, its synt,	233	<i>Chaque</i> , every, each,	55
Of Dimension,	234	<i>Ciel</i> ; its plural,	19
In the Comparative Degree,	235	<i>Collective nouns</i> ,	17, 33, 34, 265
In the Superlative Degree,	235	<i>Comparative degree</i> ,	27, 28, 235
<i>Adverb</i> ; its place,	175, 299	<i>Comparison</i> , degrees of,	26
How formed from an adj.	179	<i>Compound nouns</i> ,	215 to 220
Of Quantity,	176, 266	<i>Compound tenses</i> ; how formed,	59
<i>Aïeul</i> ; its plural,	19	<i>Concord</i> between the tenses,	288
<i>All</i> ,	17, 26, 56	<i>Conditional mood</i> ,	284
<i>Aller</i> ; <i>s'en aller</i> ,	117, 118	<i>Conjugations</i> ; how distinguish-	
<i>Alphabet</i> (French),	7	ed,	59
<i>Although</i> , <i>quoique</i> ,	309	First in <i>er</i> ,	69
<i>Always</i> , <i>toujours</i> ,	178	Second in <i>ir</i> ,	73
<i>Antecedent</i> ; its meaning,	47	Third in <i>oir</i> ,	77
<i>Any</i> ; how expressed in French,	16	Fourth in <i>re</i> ,	80
<i>Apostrophe</i> ,	9	Negatively,	83, 84
<i>Appartenir</i> , see <i>Tenir</i> ,	133	Interrogatively,	87, 88
<i>Around</i> ,	305	Interrogatively & negatively,	90
<i>Article</i> ,	13, 14, 15, 16	<i>Conjugation</i> —	
Contraction of,	14	Of <i>Passive</i> verbs,	92
Partitive,	16, 62, 198	Of <i>Pronom.</i> or <i>Reflect.</i> verbs,	96
When used,	192 to 202	Of the same, negatively, 99;	
When not used,	197, 202 to 210	interrogatively, 101; in-	
When invariable,	236	terrogatively and nega-	
<i>Aucun</i> , <i>aucune</i> , none,	55	tively,	102
<i>Autrui</i> , others,	52	Of <i>Impersonal</i> or <i>Unipers.</i>	103
<i>Avant</i> , <i>devant</i> ,	305		

	Page		Page
<i>Conjugation—</i>		<i>Gender,</i> . . . . .	11, 210
Of verbs in <i>ger, éer, cer, uer,</i>		<i>Gent, gens,</i> . . . . .	17, 211
<i>eler, eter, yer, ier,</i> 108 to 117		<i>Give (to), donner,</i> . . . . .	71
<i>Conjunctions ; the principal,</i> 188		<i>Go (to), aller,</i> . . . . .	117
Some govern the indic. . . . .	308	— out (to), <i>sortir,</i> . . . . .	132
Some the subj. or inf. 309, 310			
<i>Connaître, to know,</i> . . . . .	151		
Its difference from <i>savoir,</i> 141		<i>Half (demi) ; its Synt.</i> . . . . .	221
<i>Craindre, and verbs in aindre</i>		<i>He who, she who,</i> . . . . .	255
and <i>oindre,</i> . . . . .	153	<i>Her,</i> . . . . .	40, 42, 241
<i>Cru ; with and without accent,</i> 9		<i>Him,</i> . . . . .	40, 241
		<i>Hypheñ,</i> . . . . .	10, 243
<i>D ; takes the sound of t,</i> . . . . .	90		
<i>Dans, en ; how used,</i> . . . . .	304	<i>I ; when cut off,</i> . . . . .	9
<i>Date, how to,</i> . . . . .	34	<i>If, si ; Remarks on,</i> . . . . .	9, 284
<i>De,</i> . . . . . 14, 15, 182, 186, 218, 303		<i>Imperfect ; when used,</i> . . . . .	280
Verbs which require <i>de,</i> . . . . .	274	<i>Impersonal verbs,</i> . . . . .	103
<i>Deceive (to), tromper, like parler,</i> 69		<i>In, into ; how expressed,</i> . . . . .	304
<i>Degrees of comparison,</i> . . . . .	26	<i>Indefinite pronouns,</i> . . . . .	51, 261
<i>Demi ; Remark on,</i> . . . . .	221	— pronom. adjectives, . . . . .	55
<i>Demonstrative adjectives,</i> . . . . .	44	<i>Interjection,</i> . . . . .	190, 191
— pronouns, 45, 46, 254, . . . . .		<i>Irregular verbs, 1st conj. er,</i> 117	
<i>Dès ; with and without accent,</i> 8		... 2d conj. <i>ir,</i> 120	
<i>Devant, avant,</i> . . . . .	305	... 3d conj. <i>oir,</i> 136	
<i>Diæresis,</i> . . . . .	10	... 4th conj. <i>re,</i> 146	
<i>Die (to),</i> . . . . . 128, 173		<i>It,</i> . . . . .	40, 235, 262
<i>Distributive nouns,</i> . . . . .	33, 34	<i>Its, their,</i> . . . . .	42, 43, 252
<i>Do, did,</i> . . . . .	69, 83		
— (to), <i>faire,</i> . . . . .	159		
<i>Du ; with and without accent,</i> 9		<i>Know (to),</i> . . . . .	141, 151
<i>E ; gender of nouns ending in,</i> 12		<i>La ; là,</i> . . . . .	8, 9, 10, 13, 14
<i>Each,</i> . . . . .	52, 55, 262	<i>Le, article,</i> . . . . .	9, 10, 13, 14
<i>Eat (to), manger,</i> . . . . .	108	—, pronoun, . . . . .	9, 40, 241
<i>Either,</i> . . . . .	264	—, <i>la, les,</i> pronouns, . . . . .	40
<i>Elision of vowels,</i> . . . . .	9	<i>Least,</i> . . . . .	30
<i>Elle ; its derivation,</i> . . . . .	13	<i>Less,</i> . . . . .	30
<i>Ellipsis ; Note on,</i> . . . . .	258	<i>Little,</i> . . . . .	30
<i>En ; pronoun,</i> . . . . .	49, 50	<i>Live (to), vivre,</i> . . . . .	173
Preposition, 187, 273, 303, 304		<i>Long, adj.</i> . . . . .	25
Governs the Partic. pres. 273		—, adv. . . . .	178
<i>En, dans,</i> . . . . .	304	<i>Lose (to), perdre,</i> . . . . .	81
<i>Entre ; when written entr',</i> . . . . .	10	<i>L'un l'autre, l'un &amp; l'autre,</i> 53, 54,	264
<i>Etre, to be ; its conjugation,</i> 64			
<i>Eye, eyes,</i> . . . . .	19		
		<i>Make (to), faire,</i> . . . . .	159
<i>Faire (to do, to make),</i> . . . . .	159	<i>Même, same, self, like,</i> . . . . .	55
<i>Falloir (to be necessary),</i> . . . . .	105	<i>Mille ; milles ; mil,</i> . . . . .	34
<i>Fleurir, to flourish, Remark on,</i> 125		<i>Moïse ; its pronunciation,</i> . . . . .	10
<i>Foresee (to), see Voir,</i> . . . . .	143	<i>Monsieur,</i> . . . . .	253, 260, 311

<i>Moods and Tenses</i> , . . . . .	Page 279
<i>More</i> , . . . . .	300
— ( <i>no</i> ), . . . . .	83
<i>Much, very much, too much</i> , .	176
<i>Mur</i> ; with and without accent, .	8

<i>Names</i> (proper) see <i>Proper</i> .	
<i>Near</i> , . . . . .	306
<i>Negatives</i> , . . . . .	83, 301
<i>Neither</i> , . . . . .	264
— <i>the one nor the other</i> , .	264
<i>Neuter Verbs</i> , . . . . .	94
— Remark on, . . . . .	295
<i>Never</i> , . . . . .	83
<i>No, not</i> , . . . . .	83, 301
<i>No more</i> , . . . . .	83
<i>Nobody</i> , . . . . .	52, 53
<i>Nothing</i> , . . . . .	83
<i>Nor</i> , . . . . .	264
<i>Noun</i> , see <i>Substantive</i> .	
<i>Nul, nulle, none</i> , . . . . .	55
<i>Numbers</i> , . . . . .	11
— <i>Cardinal</i> , . . . . .	31, 34, 204
— <i>Ordinal</i> , . . . . .	31, 34, 204
— Rules on, . . . . .	34, 35, 204, 233

<i>Obtain</i> ( <i>to</i> ), <i>obtenir</i> , like <i>tenir</i> , .	133
<i>Œil</i> ; its plural, . . . . .	19
<i>Of it</i> , <i>en</i> , . . . . .	49, 50
<i>On</i> ; <i>one, they, etc.</i> , . . . . .	51, 261, 262
<i>Ou</i> ; with and without accent, .	8
<i>Où</i> ; relative pronoun, . . . . .	49
<i>Owe</i> ( <i>to</i> ), <i>devoir</i> , . . . . .	78

<i>Parce que, par ce que</i> , . . . . .	303
<i>Participle Present</i> , . . . . .	291
— <i>Past</i> , . . . . .	92, 292
<i>Partir</i> , to set out, . . . . .	129
<i>Partitive article</i> , . . . . .	16, 198
<i>Parts of speech</i> , . . . . .	13
<i>Pas, point</i> , . . . . .	83, 301
<i>Passive verbs</i> , . . . . .	92, 271
<i>Personal Pronouns</i> , . . . . .	38, 237
<i>Personne</i> , . . . . .	52, 53
<i>Plural of Nouns</i> , . . . . .	17, 213
— of compound Nouns, . . . . .	215
— of Adjectives, . . . . .	25, 26
<i>Plus, davantage</i> , . . . . .	300
<i>Plus tôt, plutôt</i> , . . . . .	300
<i>Plusieurs</i> , several, many, . . . . .	56

<i>Possessive adjectives</i> , . . . . .	Page 42
— <i>pronouns</i> , . . . . .	43, 249
— <i>case</i> , . . . . .	217
<i>Pour</i> , before a verb, . . . . .	278
<i>Pouvoir</i> , to be able, . . . . .	139
<i>Prepositions</i> , . . . . .	11, 182, 218, 303
— Govern the Infinitive, . . . . .	273
— Some govern, <i>de</i> or <i>à</i> , . . . . .	273, 306, 307
<i>Present Indic.</i> used for a <i>past</i> , .	279
— . . . . . for a <i>future</i> , . . . . .	279
<i>Près de, prêt à</i> , . . . . .	306
<i>Preterite definite</i> , . . . . .	281
— <i>indefinite</i> , . . . . .	282
<i>Primitive Tenses</i> , . . . . .	67, 68
<i>Pronominal verbs</i> , . . . . .	95
<i>Pronouns</i> : how divided, . . . . .	38
— <i>Personal</i> , . . . . .	38
— Place of <i>Pers. pron.</i> . . . . .	38, 237, 248
— Syntax of <i>Pers. pron.</i> . . . . .	237, 249
— <i>Possessive</i> , . . . . .	42, 43, 249
— <i>Demonstrative</i> , . . . . .	44, 45, 254
— <i>Relative</i> , . . . . .	47, 256
— <i>Indefinite</i> , . . . . .	51, 261
<i>Proper names</i> ; definition of, .	17
— Of states, provinces, towns, .	12, 197
— Of Sovereigns, . . . . .	35
— Ending in <i>a</i> , . . . . .	37
— Which take the article, . . . . .	195
— . . . . .	197, 203, 213
— When they take the sign of the plural, . . . . .	213
<i>Proportional nouns</i> , . . . . .	34

<i>Que</i> ; when it loses the <i>e</i> , . . . . .	47
— Rem. on the conj. <i>que</i> , . . . . .	309
<i>Quel, quelle</i> ; when used, . . . . .	57
<i>Quelconque</i> , whatever, . . . . .	56
<i>Quelque</i> ; <i>quel que</i> , . . . . .	57, 58
<i>Quelqu'un</i> ; somebody, . . . . .	52
<i>Quiconque</i> ; whoever, . . . . .	51, 52

<i>Radical letters</i> , . . . . .	67
<i>Railroad or railway</i> , . . . . .	304
<i>Rain</i> ( <i>to</i> ), <i>pleuvoir</i> , . . . . .	104
<i>Read</i> ( <i>to</i> ), <i>lire</i> , . . . . .	160
<i>Reflected Verbs</i> , . . . . .	95, 99, 101, 102
<i>Regimen</i> , . . . . .	210, 240, 270, 293
<i>Regular Verbs</i> , . . . . .	67, 69
<i>Relative pronouns</i> , . . . . .	47, 256
<i>Repentir</i> ( <i>se</i> ), see <i>Sentir</i> , . . . . .	130

	Page		Page
<i>Résolu ; Résous,</i> . . . . .	168	<i>Tu ; with and without accent,</i>	9
<i>Request (to), prier,</i> . . . . .	116		
<b>S</b>		<i>Unipersonal verbs,</i> . . . . .	103
<i>Savoir, to know,</i> . . . . .	141		
Without <i>pas</i> and <i>point</i> , . . . . .	301	<b>V</b>	
<i>Say (to), dire,</i> . . . . .	156	<i>venir, to come,</i> . . . . .	134
<i>Se,</i> . . . . .	41, 248	<i>Verb ; how many kinds of verbs,</i>	59
<i>See (to), voir,</i> . . . . .	143	Conjugated negatively, . . . . .	83, 84
<i>Sell (to), vendre,</i> . . . . .	80	Interrogatively, . . . . .	87, 88
<i>Send (to), envoyer,</i> . . . . .	115	Interrogatively and negativ.	90
— <i>back, renvoyer,</i> . . . . .	115	Active verbs, . . . . .	69
<i>Serve (to), to help to, servir,</i>	131	Passive, . . . . .	92, 271
<i>Set out, (to), partir,</i> . . . . .	129	Neuter, . . . . .	94
<i>Several, plusieurs,</i> . . . . .	56	Pronominal, reflective, re-	
<i>She who, he who,</i> . . . . .	255	ciprocal, . . . . .	95
<i>Si, if,</i> . . . . .	9, 284	Impersonal or Unipersonal,	103
<i>Sing (to), chanter,</i> . . . . .	71	Verbs ending in <i>ger, éer, cer,</i>	
<i>Soi,</i> . . . . .	41, 248	<i>uer, eler, eter, yer, ier,</i>	108 to 117
<i>Some ; how expressed,</i> . . . . .	16, 198	Observations on, . . . . .	67
<i>Something,</i> . . . . .	211	Agreement of the, . . . . .	263
<i>Sometimes,</i> . . . . .	178	Place of the subject of the,	268
<i>Sovereigns,</i> . . . . .	35, 204	Government of the, . . . . .	270
<i>Speak (to), parler,</i> . . . . .	69	Verbs which require <i>à,</i> . . . . .	273
<i>Steam-engine ; how translated,</i>	186	Verbs which require <i>de,</i> . . . . .	274
<i>Subjunctive mood ; when used,</i>	285	Verbs which require no pre-	
<i>Substantive ; plural of,</i> . . . . .	17 to 20	position, . . . . .	277
Gender of, . . . . .	11, 210	<i>Very,</i> . . . . .	29, 300
Number in, . . . . .	213, 214	<i>Vingt ; when it takes an s,</i>	34
Plural of compound, . . . . .	215	<i>Vivre ; remarks on,</i> . . . . .	173
<i>Superlative degree,</i> . . . . .	28	<i>Vowels,</i> . . . . .	7, 9
<i>Sur ; with and without accent,</i>	8		
<i>Syntax,</i> . . . . .	192	<b>W</b>	
<b>T</b>		<i>W ; when used,</i> . . . . .	7
<i>Take (to), prendre,</i> . . . . .	167	<i>Wait, wait for, attendre,</i> . . . . .	81
<i>Tel, telle, such,</i> . . . . .	54	<i>Who, which,</i> . . . . .	256
<i>Tell (to), dire,</i> . . . . .	156	<i>Whom, which,</i> . . . . .	256, 260
<i>Tenses ; formation of,</i> . . . . .	59, 67, 68	— (of), . . . . .	259
Syntax of, . . . . .	279 to 291	<i>Whose, of whom, of which,</i>	259
<i>Their, its,</i> . . . . .	42, 252	<i>Words alike in French and</i>	
<i>Thousand, mille,</i> . . . . .	34	<i>English,</i> . . . . .	36
<i>To ; how translated,</i> . . . . .	14, 272	<i>Worse,</i> . . . . .	30
When expressed by <i>pour,</i>	278	<i>Worst,</i> . . . . .	30
<i>Tout,</i> . . . . .	17, 26, 56	<i>Write (to), écrire,</i> . . . . .	157
<i>Tréma, or dièrèse,</i> . . . . .	10		
<i>Très ; its derivation,</i> . . . . .	29	<b>Y,</b> . . . . .	7, 50, 172

FINIS.



1  
The gift of God instruct us more  
His inspiration be thy guide  
Be heard thy hat from shore to  
shore  
Thy song's reward thy country  
pride

Now shall perch - write  
that word -  
In the blood that she hath spilt  
~~Perish~~ helpless and abhorred  
I see in ruin as in guilt  
The last rose of summer  
Lies bleeding alone  
Her lovely companions  
Are faded and gone  
For the moment of life gives one  
mystical lore,  
And coming events cast their  
shadows before.

months

Janvier

Fevrier

Mars

Avril

Mai

Juin

Juillet

Août

Septembre

Octobre

Novembre

Décembre

Says of the week  
Dumanch - 8 -

Lundi - m -

Mardi - 9 -

Mercredi

Jeudi -

Vendredi

Samedi

---

Recevoir & donner

Les uns & les autres

Les uns & les autres

